

DUBLIN	WILLIAM McGETT, 18, NASSAU STREET
EDINBURGH	T G STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET
GLASGOW	HUGH HOPKINS, ROYAL BANK PLACE
BERLIN	ASHER & CO, UNTER DEN LINDEN, 11.
NEW YORK	C SCRIBNER & CO, LEYPOLDT & HOLT
PHILADELPHIA	J B LIPPINCOTT & CO

# Monte Artane,



or

## The Death of Arthur.

EDITED FROM

ROBERT THORNTON'S MS

IN THE LIBRARY OF LINCOLN CATHEDRAL,

By

EDMUND BROCK.

[3. New Edition, 1871]

LONDON

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N TRUBNER & CO, 60, PATERNOSTER ROW

MDCCLXXV



# CONTENTS.

---

PREFACE	PAGE vii
ON THE METRE OF THE POEM	ix
NOTES	xiv
MORTE ARTHURE	1
INDEX OF NAMES	129
GLOSSARIAL INDEX	136





## P R E F A C E.

---

THE present version of the *Morte Arthure* or *Death of Arthur* is mainly an account of the great war with Lucius Iberius, Emperor of Rome, and its sequel, the war with the traitor Modred, who, being left in charge of the kingdom, during Arthur's absence usurped the throne and married Queen Guinevere. In his combat with Modred, whom he slays, Arthur receives his death-wound, and shortly after dies. Among the incidents in the story not forming part of the wars, we may note the great feast at Carlisle, the king's dream of the dragon and bear, the slaughter of the great giant on Michael's Mount, and Arthur's dream of Fortune's wheel and the Nine Worthies. The love of Lancelot for the queen finds no place in this work.

*Morte Arthure* was probably written in the latter part of the fourteenth century, or early in the fifteenth. Of the author nothing whatever is known, not even his name. This is the more to be regretted as he must certainly be considered a poet of no mean order, the freshness of his descriptions of scenery<sup>1</sup>, the touching pathos of some of his passages<sup>2</sup>, and the rapid flow and thundering force of his diction in others<sup>3</sup>, mark him out as one of the greatest writers of his time. What, beside him, are Occleve, Lydgate, Awdelay, Hylton, Hawes, Lonelich, and like poetasters? What even Chestre and Skelton?

<sup>1</sup> See ll 920—932, 2506—2512

<sup>2</sup> See ll 3790—3808, 3874—3894, 3949—3971

<sup>3</sup> See ll 2204—2217, 2541—2573, 2989—3000

The poem is printed from the Thornton MS, in the library of Lincoln Cathedral, no other copy is known. The MS is a collection of poems and treatises on various subjects, some in English, some in Latin, a list of the contents may be found in Sir Frederic Madden's *Syr Gawayne* (Bannatyne Club, 1839), or in the *Thornton Romances*, ed Halliwell (Camden Soc 1844). The MS is named after Robert Thornton, who penned a great part of it. At the end of *Morte Arthure* we find, "*R Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus Amen*" Thornton was "a native of Oswaldkirk in Yorkshire, and Archdeacon of Bedford, in the Diocese of Lincoln, about the middle of the fifteenth century. The date of Archdeacon Thornton and his connection with Lincoln Cathedral can be ascertained pretty accurately, as among the archives of the Cathedral there is preserved ~~an~~ instrument or deed of considerable importance, attested by him as Archdeacon, which bears date 1439"<sup>1</sup>

*Morte Arthure* was first printed in 1847, by J O Halliwell, but can hardly be said to have been published, since the impression was limited to 75 copies. In 1865 it was edited by the Rev George G. Perry, for the Early English Text Society. The present edition appears instead of a reprint of Mr Perry's, but differs from it in several respects, the text has been carefully read throughout with the MS at Lincoln, and corrections made, where needful, the side-notes are greatly altered, often replaced with new, a new Glossary has been written, and an index of names and some notes ~~added~~.

I am greatly indebted to the Rev W W Skeat for much valuable help, especially with the Glossary, also for kindly revising his paper on the metre of the poem.

E B

<sup>1</sup> From Mr Perry's Preface, p vii

## ON THE METRE OF THE POEM.

---

THE metre in which the "Morte Arthure" is written may best be understood by comparing it with "Piers Plowman," the accentuation and *swing* of the verse being much better marked in the last-mentioned poem. The principles which govern this peculiar metre may thus be more readily discerned, and, when once understood, may easily be applied to the present poem.

For a similar reason, it will be the simplest method to consider, first of all, a few lines (of "Piers Plowman") where the metre is most strongly marked, and, afterwards, some where it is, apparently, less regular.

It should first, however, be observed that each complete line in an alliterative poem consists generally of two *sections*, which were separated in old manuscripts by a dot, called the *metrical point* or *pause*, and which may conveniently be denoted by an inverted full stop, thus —

"Schelde vs firo schamesdede and synfulle werkes,"

or else by printing the lines thus —

"Schelde vs firo schamesdede,  
And synfulle werkes"

In reading aloud a pause may conveniently be made between the sections.

The two sections form, however, but one complete line, and, as the metrical point is more necessary when the poem is to be sung or recited than when it is merely to be read, it has not been thought necessary to insert it in this edition, since the reader, when he has

once caught the rhythm of the verse, may always be tolerably sure as to where it must occur

To begin, then, consider the line—

“Ac Lucifer lowest lith of hem alle”

*Piers Plowman* (ed Skeat), B. i 124

If we use an asterisk to denote a strongly accented<sup>1</sup> (or *loud*) syllable, the figure 1 to denote a *single* unaccented syllable, the figure 2 to mean *two* unaccented syllables immediately succeeding each other, and so on, we may represent the above line by the scheme,

1 \* 2 \* 1 \* 2 \* 1;

and this may be taken as a convenient type of alliterative lines, from which the scansion of very many others may be readily deduced. Some, however, as will be shewn presently, must be referred to a type somewhat different.

Now, we here observe (1) that each section contains two strong accents, (2) that, of the strongly-accented syllables, three begin with a common letter, which has been called the *rime-letter*, and (3) of these three, two occur in the first section, and one in the second. Such is the usual and normal arrangement. The *rime-letters* may be either consonants or vowels, and may consist of *single* letters, or of such combinations as *sc*, *ll*, *tr*, etc. If vowels, it is sufficient that they *are* so, they need not be the *same* vowels, and, in practice, are generally *different*.

Again, the last strongly-accented syllable in the line does *not* begin with the rime-letter. This also is the usual and more correct arrangement.

Having once this typical form to refer to, it is easy to enumerate most of the changes which may arise. Let us now take the line,

We have here the arrangement

1 \* 2 \* 1      1 \* 3 \* 1

which shews (1) that an unaccented syllable may be introduced at the beginning of the second section, and (2) that the number of intermediate unaccented syllables may be readily increased to *three*

Now herein lies the peculiar freedom and elasticity of alliterative verse, we shall soon find by observation that, under certain circumstances, as many as *four* short unaccented syllables (even if they contain among them one that *is* accented *slightly*) may be inserted at pleasure between the emphatic syllables without destroying the rhythm, for it is one addressed to the *ear* only, and not to the *eye*. The chief point which the poet has to take care of is that when he introduces a larger number of unaccented syllables, they should be capable of rapid enunciation, lest the verse seem clogged and unmusical. An example may be seen in the lines,

"Fayteden for here fôde    fouzten atte âle,"  
*Piers Plowman* B Prol 42

which may be denoted by

\* 4 \* 1      \* 3 \* 1

It would take up too much space to explain here the true method of scanning the lines by division into feet, it may suffice to say that the *general effect* of the metre is *dactylic*, supposing the term *dactyl* to be capable of application to an *English* foot, which, to speak strictly, it is not. Indeed, the nomenclature of English prosody is in sore need of alteration. Neither is there space to explain, and to account for, the curious variations which may further be made in the alliterative metre. The view here given is only an approximate one, which will be found useful in practice. A longer passage may exemplify it better—

"I lôked on my lêft half    as þe lādý me taúghte,  
And was wár of a wómman    wóρθeli yelóthed,  
Púrfiled with pélture    þe finest vpon érthe,  
Y-crounéde with a córone    þe kýng hath non bétter,  
Féshshoh hur fýngres    were frétted with gólde wyre"  
*Piers Plowman*, B, 11 2.

<i>Analysis</i>	1	*	3	*	1	2	*	2	*	1
	2	*	2	*	1		*	3	*	1
		*	3	*	1	1	*	3	*	1
	1	*	3	*	1	1	*	2	*	1
		*	3	*	1	1	*	2	*	1

One variation, however, found oftenest in the first section, is too important to be passed over. It is that we sometimes find in a section a *third* strongly-accented syllable, thus giving to the line a rather unwieldy length, as in,

"The móste mýschief on mólde is móúntyng wel fáste"  
*Piers Plowman*, B Prol 67

This third accent is often very awkwardly placed, as in the first line of "Morte Arthure,"

"Now grétt glórious Gódde ' thurgh gráce of hym seluene"

Other noticeable deviations from the strict type may be briefly indicated

(1) The syllable beginning with the rime-letter is sometimes unemphatic, as in "Morte Arthure," l 59,

"In Glamórgane with glée thare gládohupe was éuere"

(2) Sometimes there are but *two* rime-letters, as in l 95,

"At pryme of the daye in páyne of 3our lfyrys"

(3) Sometimes there is *no* alliteration, as in l 70 (4) Sometimes there are *four* rime-letters, as l 32, where all belong to accented syllables,

"Scóthylle Scóttlande by skýlle he skýftys as hym lýkys,"

or as in l 35, where one belongs to an unaccented syllable,

"Holaund and Hénawde they héilde of hyme bóthen"

It will now be sufficient, perhaps, to indicate what is probably the correct accentuation of the first fourteen lines, as this will enable the reader to perceive in them a certain vigorous *swing* (well suited for the ballad-reciter), which will suggest the scansion of most other lines, though there is always somewhat of difficulty in it, from the fact that we have now-a-days changed the accentuation of many words, and cannot be quite certain about the final *e*'s.

"Now grétt glórious Gódde thurgh gráce of hym séluene,  
 And the précyous práyere of hys prýs módyr  
 Schéldé vs ffro schámesdede and synfulle wérkes,  
 And gyffe vs grace to gýe and góueine vs hére 4  
 In this wréchyde wérldé thorowe vért[u]ous lýwyngé  
 That we may káyre til hys cóurte the kyngdome of hévyne,  
 Whene oure sáules schalle párté and súndye ffa the bódý  
 Ewyie to bélde and to býde in blýsse wyth hyme séluene, 8  
 And wysse me to wérpe owte some wórde at this týme,  
 That nothyre vóyde be ne váyne bot wýrchip tille hyme sclvyne,  
 Plésande and prófitabille to the pópule that theme hères  
 3e that liste has to lyth or lúffes for to hére 12  
 Off élders of álde tyme and of therre áwke dédys,  
 Hów they were léle in theire láwe and lóuede Gód Almýghty," etc

The accentuation of the last two lines is a little doubtful. There may have been an accent on the second *of* in l 13, owing to its position and the fact of its beginning with a rime-letter, while in l 14 we have the rather unusual number of six accents, unless *how* was slurred over.

After all, the best way of perceiving the rhythm is to read over some fifty lines several times till they seem quite familiar, and then to read them over once more *out loud*, with strong emphasis on the verbs, substantives, and adjectives, and with a natural and free pronunciation.

One peculiarity in this poem should be particularly noticed, viz that the same rime-letter is often continued throughout several successive lines. There is a remarkable instance of this in the passage beginning with l 1844, where we have in succession 4 lines founded on *s*, 2 on hard *c*, 2 on *f*, 6 on *s*, 6 on *b*, 4 on hard *c*, 2 on vowels, 2 on *s*, 2 on *ch*, 2 on *f*, and 2 on *r*. Other striking examples are 7 lines on vowels, 571—577, 8 on *s*, 3310—3317, 9 on *j* or soft *g*, 2889—2897, 10 on *f*, 3300—3309, and 11 on *f*, 2755—2765. Similar instances are rare in *Piers the Plowman*, though we find 5 successive lines founded upon *p* in the B-text, Pass xiv 190—194.

For further remarks, see the Essay on Alliterative Verse in the third volume of the *Percy Folio MS*, ed Hales and Furnivall, and the introduction to *Piers the Plowman*, Text A pp xxii and xxx.



## N O T E S.

---

Lines 212—215 Precious stones were supposed to keep off poison Compare the following —“ þe earn deð in his neste enne deorewurðe ȝimston þet hette achate Vor non attri þinc ne mei þene ston neihen, ne þeo hwile þet he is in his neste hermen his briddes þes deorewurðe ston, þet is Iesu Crist, ase ston treowe and ful of alle mihten, ouer alle ȝimstones He is þe achate þet atter of sunne ne neihede neuere Do hine riðine neste, þet is, riðine heorte þenc hwuch þinen he þolede on his flesche wiðuten, and hu swete he was iheorted, and hu softe wiðinnen, and so þu schalt driue ut euerich atter of þine heorte, and bitternesse of þine bodie þes ston, ase ich er seide, avlereð attri þinges Habbe þu þesne ston wiðine þine heorte, þet is Godes nest, ne þer-tu nout dreden þe attne neddie of helle þine briddes, þet beoð þine gode werkes, beoð al sker of his atter”—*The Ancren Riwle*, ed Morton, p 134—136 Compare also Piers the Plowman (ed Skeat, Clarendon Press Series), note to Pass 11 l 14

450 *Waillyng-strette*, “the Roman road leading from Dover to Cardigan Leland describes it thus Secunda via principalis dicitur *Watelingstreate*, tendens ab euro-austro in Zephyrum Septentrionalem Incipit enim a Dovaria, tendens per medium Cantiae, juxta London, per S. Albanum, Dunstaplum, Stratfordiam, Towcestriam, Litlebuine, per montem Gilberti juxta Salopiam, deinde per Stratton, et per medium Walliae, usque Cardigan Itin vol vi p 120, *edit Oxon 1744*.”—Bosworth’s Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, under *Wætlunga stræt*

793. *Brathelle* is purposely omitted from the Glossary, because it ought to have been printed *brayelle*, as it stands in the MS. It seems to mean the fur of the bear’s belly Compare the following —

“Brayeul m The parts, or feathers, about the Haukes fundament, called by our Faulconers the brayle in a short-wingd, and, the pannell in a long-wingd, Hauke”—*Cotgrave*

“The brayle, or pannell of a Hawke. *Le brayer d’un oiseau, le brayeul*”—*Sherwood*

“Braiel, *brayette* Partie de la culotte qui tenoit lieu de celle qu’on appelle à présent le pont”—*Roquefort*.

"Braioel, *brao el* Le haut de la culotte"—*Roquefort*

966 *Thow saymned the vnseely by* Thou blessedst thyself vnsafely,  
i e you did not cross yourself in a proper manner, so as to ensure your  
safety, otherwise you would not be here, in this perilous place If the  
sign of the cross was not made in the right way, it was considered of  
no avail

1195 Read *with [the] conquerour*

1270 *Or many lyghte salle laue* Or many shall light low, i e  
fall

1286 "Horns of elephants full loudly blown" Our fathers were  
remarkably ignorant of the nature and habits of foreign animals

1293 *Ewyne in the myddes* Right in the middle

1315 *That no mysse serues* Who deserve no ill

1364 *Fretted in salle* Read *sable*

1414 *Bretons* This is probably the verb, *bruttenes*, not the sub-  
stantive, *Britons*

1425 *Battailles* Restore the reading of the MS, it is right

1474 *He ryghtes theire brenez* More likely *he rites*

1485 The relative pronoun is omitted after *Boyce* This is a fre-  
quent ellipsis See line 1558, where *that* is omitted after *Henry*

1548 *Or sone delyuered*, i e soon to be delivered

1572 The alliteration would be improved by reading *bot [sw]*

*Ewagwe*

1588 *With mangere to lengene* Qu with *maugree*, ill-will

1653 *Lythe* The alliteration and sense require *lythe*

1698 *Borghie* A strange mistake for *Brute*, i e Brutus, the sup-  
posed founder of Britain

1717 "Whether we retire or appear (show ourselves), arrange as  
you please"

1736 *Wellyde alle gwyke* Boiled alive

1797 *Wyke his me wayfare* Qu me his wayfare

1840 *Lang ere* The MS reads *langere*, which may be right

1842 *At* = that = what

1899 *On lyfe* should be *of lyfe*

1911 The line is incomplete, add [many]

2070 *Reuersede it redelye* Turned it, the eagle, over quickly

2108 *Heyghe* = heythe, heath Compare *treughe* for *trewthe*

2128 *Handsomere*, not more handsome, but more handy or con-  
venient

2189 *3ife the wenle happyne* Qu welthe

2197 This line recurs at 4155

2245 "*Arthure!*" *askryes* Shouts "Arthur," but perhaps it  
should be simply *Arthure askryes*, Arthur shouts Compare l 1412

2250 *Beblede* at should certainly be *Beblede al*

2280 *Lyghte strandez* This should perhaps be *lythe strandez*, as  
at 1517

2295 *Heghe* = heath See note on 2108

- 2398 *I hope noghte to layne* I care not to conceal
- 2408 *Tuokayne* (so in MS) is certainly a mistake for *Tuskayne*, Tuscany. Correct the sidenote accordingly
- 2506 Insert [of] after *myste*, or else read *mysty*
- 2519 *With buenne my borne* This is corrupt, no doubt the right reading is, *With-outene my borne*
- 2565 *Alet* "Towards the close of the thirteenth century and not long after the commencement of the reign of Edward I, a new mode of protecting the neck was invented, which consisted of small plates of steel placed on the shoulders, sometimes called, from their resemblance to little standards, *Gonfanons*. They are likewise mentioned by the name of *aulettes*, or little wings, in that curious document of the sixth year of this monarch, relative to a tournament in Windsor Park, given in the XVIIIth volume of the *Archaeologia*, and in the *Statuta armorum in Tournamentis*, a few years after, by that of shoulder plates. They continued in fashion till the middle of the reign of Edward III. Their shape was . . . varied, they were square, round, pentagonal, and shieldlike, sometimes plain, but generally ornamented with the family arms, or the cross of St George"—Meyrick, in the *Archaeologia*, vol. xix, pp. 137, 138
- 2577 It is well known that in early times barbers practised blood-letting, they would therefore, of course, know how to staunch blood.
- 2578 *Blyne schalle he neuer* He shall never cease [to bleed]
- 2586 *Surgyone in Salarne* Compare l 4311 and *William of Pulerne*, ed Skeat, ll 964 and 1033
- 2616 *Cyrus wutrye* should be *cyrqwutrye*. The letter *q* is raised a little and looks very much like the usual contraction for *us*. *Cyrqwutrye* = surquidry, arrogance, pride
- 2675 This line is misplaced, it ought to follow line 2677
- 2771 *Breste* seems to be a mistake for *brethe*, breath
- 2934 *ffy a debles* seems to be meant for French *Fie*, (go) to the devil
- 3061 *Idene the* The alliteration, at first sight, would seem to be on the *d* of this *idene* and of *dout*, but there is no reason why it may not be on the *i* of *idene* and the *e* of *elles*. *Idene*, if not a miswriting, may be the same as *ipenli*, frequently, in the following lines —
- " þai þat war fild wit enst and hete  
 þat ipenli þair hertes ete,  
 þar wormes sal þam underwrote  
 In bale wituten hope and bote,  
 And for þi þai hei war wont to li  
 In þair stincand lichene,  
 Ne wald noght here bot þair delices  
 þat drogh þam until oþer vices  
 þai sal haf ipen stinc iwiss  
 þat þai sal never mar mis"—*Cursor Mundi*, as quoted by Dr Morris in the preface to *Hampole's Pricke of Conscience*, pp. x, xi

*The* may be the verb *thee*, to thrive, it was most likely mistaken for the article by the scribe, who wrote it with *ȝ*. The meaning of the line would be, "He shall frequently thrive full well, fear nought else." This accords with the statement, l 3056, that the king spoke to the duchess "myldly with fulle meke wordes"

3257 The word *With* clearly belongs to the line before *With bruchez*, &c

3282 *The two eyne* This is clearly an error for "the tone eye" = (the) one eye "One eye of the man was brighter than silver, the other was yellower than the yolk of an egg"

3439 *Nynne of the nobleste namede in erthe* These were the Nine Worthies The list agrees with that given in *Reliquæ Antiquæ*, vol 1 p 287

Saraceni	Judæi
Ector, Alex, Julius, David, Josue, Machabæus,	
Cristiani	
Artur cum Carolo, Galfridum inquare nolo	
Isti sunt ter tres trini fidei meliores	

See Shakespere, *Love's Labour Lost*, Act 5, sc 2

3937 *Guchede* I can make nothing of this word, the plain reading of the MS, unless it = gutted = *goutte*, dropped or spotted. At line 3759, we read that this king of Gothland "bare of gowles fulle gaye with gowces of syluere" *Gowces* I suppose to be miswritten for *gowtes*, drops, spots

# LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

<i>adj.</i> = adjective	O Fr = Old French
<i>adv</i> = adverb	O N = Old Norse
A S = Anglo-Saxon	p = page
<i>b</i> = back	<i>pl</i> = plural
col = column	2 <i>pl</i> = second person plural
<i>comp</i> = comparative form	pp = pages
Comp = compare	<i>pp</i> = past or passive participle
<i>conj</i> = conjunction	<i>prep</i> = preposition
ed = edited by	<i>pres</i> = present
E E T S = Early English Text Society	<i>pret</i> = preterite
Fr = French	<i>Prompt Paro</i> = Promptorium Pa- vulorum
<i>fut</i> = future	<i>pron</i> = pronoun
<i>gen</i> = genitive case	Qu = Query
Germ = German	<i>ref</i> = reflexive
Her = Heraldry	<i>s</i> = substantive
<i>imp</i> = imperative	1 <i>s</i> = first person singular
<i>impers v</i> = impersonal verb	2 <i>s</i> = second person singular
<i>ind</i> = indicative	3 <i>s</i> = third person singular
<i>inf</i> = infinitive	Sc = Scotch
<i>int</i> = interjection	<i>sg</i> = singular
<i>i p</i> = imperfect participle	Span. = Spanish
l = line	<i>subj</i> = subjunctive
Lat = Latin	<i>superl</i> = superlative form
ll = lines	tom = tomo
M Goth = Mæso-Gothic	<i>v</i> = verb
O E = Old English	vol = volume

The following works are indicated in the Index by their authors' names —

Bosworth's Anglo Saxon and English Dictionary.  
Brockett's Glossary of North Country Words  
Burguy's Glossary to his *Grammaire de la Langue d'Oïl*  
Ducange's Glossarium Mediæ et Infimæ Latinitatis, ed 1840  
Halliwell's Dictionary of Archæic and Provincial Words  
Jamieson's Etymological Dictionary of the Scottish Language  
Roquefort's Glossaire de la Langue Romane  
Stratmann's Dictionary of the Old English Language  
Verelius's Index linguæ veteris Seytho-Scandicæ sive Gothicæ, 1691

## CORRECTIONS.

---

- Page 2, sidenotes, for *Tours* read *Touraine*  
 „ 2 „ „ *Aniana* read *Aniane*  
 „ 2 „ „ *Naverne* read *Navarre*  
 „ 3 „ for the 2nd *Casileon* read *Carlisle*  
 „ 7 „ „ *hams* read *shoulders*  
 „ 7 „ „ *bustards* read *bitterns*  
 „ 28, line 913, for *grayuez* read *graynez*  
 „ 33, sidenotes, for *smoke* read *foam*  
 „ 78, strike out the footnote  
 „ 134, col 1, line 23, for *Apulia* read *Poland*



# Morte Arthure.

---

Here begynnes **Morte Arthure** In nomine Patris et  
Fili et Spiritus Sancti Amen pur charite Amen [leaf 53]

Now grett glorious Godde, thurgh grace of hym seluene,  
And the precyous prayere of hys prys modyr, The poet prays  
for grace,  
Schelde vs fro schamesdede and synfulle werkes,  
And gyffe vs grace to gye, and gouerne vs here, 4  
In this wrechyde werlde thorowe vertous lywynge,  
That we may kayre til hys courte, the kyngdome of hevyne,  
Whene oure saules schalle parte and sundyreffra the body,  
Ewyre to belde and to byde in blysse wyth hym seluene, 8  
And wysse me to werpe owte some worde at this tyme,  
That nothyre voyde be ne vayne, bot wyrchyp tille hym  
selvyne, and for power to  
write something  
profitable

Plesande and profitable to the popule that theme heres  
3e that liste has to lyth, or luffes for to here, 12 Ye that list to  
hear of elders  
of old tyme,  
Off elders of alde tyme and of theire awke dedys,  
How they were lele in there lawe, and louede God Al-  
myghty,

Herkynes me heyndly and holdys 3ow styll,  
And I salle telle 3ow a tale, that trewe es and nobyll, 16 hearken to a tale  
of the Round  
Table  
Off the ryealle renkys of the Rownde Table,  
That chefe ware of cheualrye and cheftans nobyll,  
Bathe ware in thire werkes and wyse mene of armes, These knights  
were noble, wise,  
and brave,  
Doughty in there doynge, and dredde ay schame, 20



kind, and courteous, and worshipful

They slew Lucius lord of Rome, and won his kingdom

Hear now the story

When King Arthur had won many kingdoms and countries,

Argyle, Orkney, and the isles,

Ireland and Scotland, Wales, Flanders, and France,

had made tributary Holland and Hainault, Burgundy, Brittany, Guienne, Gothland and Greece, he occupied Bayonne and Bordeaux, Tours and Toulouse

He was prince of Poitiers and [leaf 88, back] Provence, of Valence and Viennois, of Erugia and Aniana, of Navarre and Normandy

Of Germany, of Austria, and many other lands

He conquered all Denmark with his sword  
Then he dubbed his knights and gave them lands.

Created kings anointed,

Then rested the hero, and held the Round Table,

After solacing himself in Bri-

Kynde mene and courtoys, and couthe of courte thewes,  
How they whanne with were wylchuppis many,

Sloughe Lucius the lityre, that lorde was of Rome,  
And conqueryd that kyngayke thorowe craftys of armes,  
Herkenes now hedywande, and heys this storye 25

Qwenethat the kyng Arthur by conqueste had wonnyne  
Castelles and kyngdoms, and contices many,  
And he had couered the coroune of the kyth ryche, 28  
Of alle that Vter in eithe aughte in his tyme,  
Ongayle and Orkenay, and alle this owte-ales,  
Irelande vttrly, as Ouyane rynnys,

Seathyllr Scottlande by skylle he skyftys as hym lykys,  
And Wales of were he wane at hys wille, 33

Bathe flaundrez and flaunce he til hym seluynne,  
Hollaund and Henawde they helde of hyme bothen,  
Burgoyne and Brabane, and Bretayne the lesse, 36

Gyane and Gothelando, and Grece the ryche,  
Bayone and Burleux he heldytt fulle faire,  
Turoyne and Tholus with toures fulle hye,

Off Peyters and of Prouynce he was prynce holdyne, 40  
Of Valence and Vyenne, off value so noble,

Of Eruge and Anyone, thos erledoms ryche;  
By conqueste fulle cruelle they knewe hym fore lorde,  
Of Nauerne and Norweye, and Normaundye eke, 44

Of Almayne, of Estriche, and other ynowe;  
Danmarke he drysede alle by drede of hym seluynne,  
ffra Swynne vnto Swetherwyke, with his swerde<sup>1</sup> kene<sup>1</sup>

Qwenne he thes dedes had done, he doubbyd hys knyghtez,  
Dyuysyde dowcherys and delte in dyuerse remmes, 49

Mad of his cosyns kyngys ennoyntede,  
In kyth there they couaunte crounes to bere.  
Whene he thys<sup>2</sup> rewmes hade redyne and rewlyde the  
popule, 52

Then rystede that ryalle and helde the Rounde Tabyll;  
Suggeourns that sesone to solace hyme seluene,

In Bretayne the braddere, as hym beste lykys,

<sup>1</sup> MS swrede

<sup>2</sup> Or thes.

- Sythyne wente in-to Wales *with* his wyys alle, 56 tain, he goes into Wales,  
 Sweys in-to Swaldye *with* his snelle houndes, to hunt the hart  
 For to hunt at *the* hartes in thas hye lanndes, *with* his swift hounds,  
 In Glamorgane *with* glee, thare gladchipe was euee and in Glamorgan  
 And thare a citee he sette, be assentte of his lordys, 60 founds Caerleon  
 That Caerlyons was callid, *with* curius walles, upon Usk  
 On the riche reuare *that* rynnys so faire,  
 There he myghte semble his sorte to see whenne hym  
 lykyde,  
 Thane aftyre at Carlelele a Cristynnese he haldes, 64 At Caerleon he  
 This ilke kyde conquerour, *and* helde hym for lorde, holds high festa  
 Wyth dukez *and* dusperes of dyuers rewmes, val at Christmas  
 Eiles *and* ercheuesques, and *other* ynowe, tude with his lords  
 Byschopes *and* bachelers, *and* banerettes nobille, 68 and bishops,  
 That bowes to his banere, buske whene hym lykys  
 Bot on the Cristynmesdaye, whene they were allesemblyde,  
 That comlyche conquerour commaundez hym seluyne  
 That ylke a lorde sulde lenge, and no lefe take, 72 and bids none  
 To the tende day fully ware takyne to *the* ende depart from the  
 Thus one ryalle araye he helde his Rounde Table, feast till ten days  
 With semblant *and* solace *and* selcouthe metes, are expired  
 Whas neuer syche<sup>1</sup> noblay, in no manys tyme, 76 Never was so  
 Mad in mydwynter in *tha* veste marchys<sup>1</sup> noble a feast  
 known  
 Bot on the newzere daye, at *the* none euyne,  
 As the bolde at the borde was of brede seruyde,  
 So come in sodanly a senatour of Rome, 80 But on New  
 Wyth sextene knyghtes in a soyte, sewande hym one Year's day, as  
 He saluzed the souerayne *and* the sale aftyre, the knyghts were  
 Ilke a kyng aftyre kyng, *and* mad his enclines, feasting,  
 Gaynour in hir degré he grette as hym lykyde, 84 there came in  
 And syne agayne to *the* gome he gaffe vp his nedys suddenly a Sena  
 "Sir Lucius Iberius, the Empe<sup>r</sup>our of Rome, tor of Rome,  
 Saluz the as sugett, vndyre his sele ryche, [leaf 54]  
 It es credens, *sur* kyng, *with* cruelle wordez, attended by six  
 88 He salutes King  
 Arthur and his  
 knyghts,  
 84 and Guinevere  
 the Queen  
 Then, in the  
 name of Sir Lu-  
 cius Iberius, the  
 Emperor of  
 Rome,  
 88  
 Trow it for no truffles, his targe es to schewe<sup>1</sup>  
 Now in this newzers daye *with* notaries sygne,

<sup>1</sup> *swyche* struck out, and *syche* written instead

he summons Ar  
thur to appear at  
Rome on Lammes  
day,

to answer why  
he occupies his  
lands instead of  
paying homage  
to him,

and how he dare  
rebel against  
him

But if Arthur  
will not come,  
the Emperor will  
invade his land  
and take him  
captive,

and destroy him  
wherever he may  
fly

The Register of  
Rome declares  
that Arthur's fa-  
ther paid tribute,  
which was won  
by Julius Cesar  
and his gentle  
knights

Then did King  
Arthur look with  
ferocious glance  
on the Senator

[leaf 54, back]

So terrible was  
his face that the  
Romans quailed  
before him.

I make the somouns in sale to sue for *the* landys,  
That on Lammes daye there be no litle floundene, 92  
That thou bee redy at Rome with alle thi Rounde Table,  
Appere in his *presens* with thy price knyghtez,  
At pryme of the daye, in payne of 3000 lyrys,  
In *the* kydde Capytoile before the kyng selvyne, 96  
Whene he and his senatours bez sette as them lykes,  
To ansuere anely why thou occupyes the landez,  
That awe homage of alde tille hym *and* his eldyrs,  
Why thou has redyne and raymede, *and* raunsound the  
pople, 100  
And kyllyde doune his cosyns, kyngys ennoynttyde,  
Thare schalle thou gyfte rekkyngunge for alle thy Round  
Table,  
Why thou arte rebelle to Rome, and rentez theme  
wythholdez!  
3if thou theis somouns wythsaytte, he sendes thee theis  
wordes, 104  
He selle the seke ouer *the* see wyth sextene kynges,  
Bryne Bretayne *the* brade, and bryttyne thy knyghtys,  
And brynge the bouxsomly as a beste with brethe whare  
hym lykes,  
That thou ne schalle rowte ne ryste vndyr the heuene  
ryche, 108  
Thofe thou for reddour of Rome ryne to *the* erthe!  
ffor if thou flee in-to Fraunce or ffreselannnd owther,  
Thou selle be fchede with force, and ouersette fore euer!  
Thy fadyr mad fewtee, we fynde in oure rollez, 112  
In the regestere of Rome, who so ryghte lukez  
With-owttyne more trouflynge the trebute we aske,  
That Iulus Cesar wane wyth his ientille knyghttes!"  
The kyng blyschit one the beryne with his brodeeghne,  
That falle brymly for breth brynte as the gledys,  
Keste colours as kyng with crouelle lates, 118  
Luked as a lyone, and on his lyppe bytes!  
The Romaines for radnesse ruschte to *the* erthe,  
ffore ferdnesse of hys face, as they fey werc,

Cowchide as kenetez be-fore *the* kynge seluynē,  
 Be-cause of his contenance confusede them<sup>e</sup> semede !  
 Thene couer d vp a knyghte, *and* criede ful lowde,<sup>1</sup> 124  
 “ Kynge coroune of kynd, cuitays and noble,  
 Misdoō no messangere for menske of *this* seluynē,  
 Sen we are in thy mañrede, and *mercy the* besekes ,  
 We lenge *with sir* Lucius, that lorde es of Rome, 128  
 That es *the* meruelyousteste mane *that* on molde lengez ,  
 It es lefulle tille vs his luyngē tille wyrche ,<sup>2</sup>  
 We come at his commaundment , haue vs excusede ”  
 Then carpys *the* conquerour crewelle wordez,— 132  
 “ Haa ! cranaunde knyghte ! a cowarde *the* semez !  
 Thare [is] some segge in this sale, and he ware sare  
 greuede,  
 Thow durste noghte for<sup>3</sup> alle Lumberdye luke one hym  
 ones ”  
 “ Sir,” sais *the* senatour, “ so Crist mott me helpe, 136  
*The* route of *this* vesage has woundyde vs alle !  
 Thow arte *the* lordlyeste lede *that* eter I one luyde ,  
 By luyngē, *with*-owttyne lesse, a lyone the semys ! ”  
 “ Thow has me somonde,” *quod the* kynge, “ *and* said  
 what *the* lykes ,<sup>4</sup> 140  
 ffore sake of thy soueraynge I suffre *the the* more ,  
 Sen I corouñde in kyth wyth crysume enoyntede,  
 Was neuer creature to me *that* carpede so large !  
 Bot I salle tak concelle at kynges enoyntede, 144  
 Off dukes *and* duspers and doctours noble,  
 Offe peres of *the* parlement, prelates *and* other,  
 Off *the* richeste renkys of *the* Rounde Table ,  
 Thus schalle I take avisementē of valiant beryns, 148  
 Wyrke aftyre the wytte of my wyes knyghttes  
 To warpe wordez in waste no wyrchipe it were,  
 Ne wilfully in *this* wretthe to wrekene my seluene 151  
 ffor-*this* salle thow lenge here, *and* lugge wyth *these* lordes,

Then one of them  
humbly entreats  
mercy

Upon which Ar-  
thur upbraids  
him as a coward

But the Senator  
excuses him on  
the ground that  
Arthur's visage is  
very terrible

The King tells  
him that he will  
take counsel of  
his dukes, doc-  
tors, peers, and  
knights,

while the Ro-  
mans stay a week

<sup>1</sup> *hyghe* struck out, and *lowde* written instead

<sup>2</sup> *seheue* struck out, and *wyrche* written instead

<sup>3</sup> MS fulle      <sup>4</sup> *Luyde* struck out, and *lykes* written instead

to refresh them  
selves      This seuenyghte in solace, to suggourne *your* horses,  
To see whatte lyfe *that* wee leede in thees lawe lanndes "  
ffor by *the* realtee of Rome, *that* recheste was eueie,

Sir Cayous is bid  
to entertain the  
lords,      He commande *su* Cayous, "take kepe to thoos lordez, 156  
To styghtylle *tha* steryne mene as theire statte askys,  
That they bee herberde in haste in thoos heghe chambries,  
[leaf 55]      Sythine sittandly in sale *seruyde* ther-aftyr ,

and their horses      That they fynd na fawte of fude to thiere horsez, 160  
Nowthure weyne, ne waxe, ne welthe in *this* erthe ,  
Spare for no spycerye, bot spende what *the* lykys,  
He was not to  
spare, but to  
feast them liber  
ally      That there be largesce one lofte, and no lake foundene ,  
If *thou* my wyrchipe wayte, wy, be my trouthe, 164  
*Thou* salle haue gersoms fulle grett, *that* gayne salle *the*  
eueie ! "

Then were they  
quickly harboured  
within the high  
walls  
In chambers  
with chumneys  
they changed  
their weeds      **N**ow er they herberde in hey, *and* in oste holdene,  
Hastyly wyth hendemene *with-in* thees heghe wallez ,  
In chambyrs *with* chympnes *they* chaungene *theire* walez,  
And sythyne the chauncelere *thems* fecchede *with* che-  
ualrys<sup>1</sup> noble 169

The Senator sat  
at the King's  
table, and was  
served like him-  
self      Sone *the* senatour was sett, as hymes wele semyde,  
At *the* kynges owne borde, twa knyghtes hym *se*nede,  
Singulere sothely, as Arthure hym seluynne, 172  
Richely on *the* ryghte hannde at the Rounde Table ,  
Be resounne *that the* Romaynes whare so ryche holdene,  
As *of the* realeste blode *that* reynede in erthe 175  
There come in at *the* fyrste course, be-for *the* kynges seluene,  
Bareheuedys *that* ware bryghte, burnyste *with* syluer,  
Alle *with* taghte mene and towne in togers fulle ryche,  
Of saunke realee in suyte, sixty at ones ,  
fflesch flurste of fermysone *with* frumentee noble, 180  
Ther-to wyldre to wale, and wynlyche bryddes,<sup>2</sup>  
Pacokes and plouers in platers of golde,  
Pygges of porke despyne, *that* pasturedre neuer ,  
Sythene herons in hedoyne, hyled fulle faire ; 184  
Grett swannes fulle swythe in silueryne chargeours,

peacocks and plo-  
vers upon golden  
plates,      great swans in  
silver chargers,

<sup>1</sup> MS *cheualrys*.<sup>2</sup> *brēdes* struck out, and *bryddes* written instead

Tartes of Turkey, taste whame <i>theme</i> lykys ,		taits of turkey,
Gumbaldes graythely, fulle gracious to taste ,		
Seyne bowes of wyldre bores <i>with the</i> braune lechyde,		hams and brawn
Bernakes and botures in baterde dysches,	189	in slices, geese and bustards
Thareby braunchers in brede, bettyr was neuer,		
With brestez of barowes, <i>that</i> bryghte ware to schewe ,		
Seyne come <i>ther</i> sewes sere, <i>with</i> solace <i>ther</i> -after,	192	Then came 'sewes sere,
Ownde of azure alle ouer <i>and</i> ardant <i>them</i> semyde,		
Of ilke a leche <i>the</i> lowe launschide fulle hye,		
<i>That</i> alle ledes myghte lyke <i>that</i> lukyde <i>theme</i> apone ,		
Thane cranes <i>and</i> curlues craftyly roasted,	196	then cranes and curlues craftyly roasted,
Connygez in cretoyne colourede fulle faire,		
flesauntez enflureschit in flammande siluer,		pheasants upon flashing silver,
With danielles endordide, and daynteez ynewe ,		'driels and many other damnes
Thane clarett and Creette, cleigally rennene,	200	Wine e used to [loaf 55, back.] run skilfully in silver conduits
With condethes fulle curious alle of clene siluyre ,		
Osay a[n]d algarde, and <i>other</i> ynewe,		
Rynisch wyne and Rochelle, richere was ncuer ,		
Vernage of Venyce vertuouse and Crete ,	204	Rare sorts served in cups of fine gold
In faucetez of fyne golde, fonode who so lykes ,		
The kynges cope-borde was closed in siluer,		The King's cup board was glori- ous with plate
In grete goblettez ouergylte glorious of hewe ,		
There was a cheeffe buttlere, a cheualere noble,	208	
Sir Cayous <i>the</i> curtaise, <i>that</i> of <i>the</i> cowpe seruade ,		The chief butler was Sir Cayous,
Sexty cowpes of suyte fore <i>the</i> kyng seluyne,		
Crafty <i>and</i> curious, cornene fulle faire,		who served the wine in goblets decked with pre- cious stones,
In euer-ilk a party pyghte <i>with</i> precyous stones,	212	which hinder the deadly effects of poison
That nane enpoysons sulde goo preuely <i>ther</i> -vndyre,		
Bot <i>the</i> bryght golde for brethe sulde briste al to peces,		
Or ells <i>the</i> venyme sulde voyde thurghe vertue of <i>the</i> stones ,		
And the conquerour hymseluene, so clenly arayed, 216		
In colours of clene golde cleede, wyth his knyghttyis,		Arthur was clad in cloth of gold with his crown on, the doughti- est knight that dwelt on earth
Drissid <i>with</i> his dyademe one his deesse ryche,		
fforehe was demyde <i>the</i> doughtyeste <i>that</i> duellyde in erthe		
Thane <i>the</i> conquerour kyndly carpede to <i>those</i> lordes,		Then he spake courteous words to those lords
Rehetede <i>the</i> Romaynes <i>with</i> realle sneche,	221	

"Sir, be of good cheer we give you the best our barren country affords, which in deed is but poor

"Sir," says the Senator, "Rome itself can show nothing equal to this luxurious feast"

Then they washed and withdrew to the chamber

Sir Gawain leads Guinevere

Spiced drinks were served to all

Certain lords were assigned to attend upon the Senator

Arthur goes to council in the Giant's tower,

with his lords, justices, judges, and gentle knights

[leaf 56]  
First speaks Sir Cadur of Cornwall

The letters of Sir Lucius, he says, lighten his heart

They had too long lived a life of inglorious peace

"Sir, bez knyghtly of contenaunce, and comfurthes  
your seluynne,

We knowe noghte in *this* countré of curious metez,  
In thees barayne landez, bredes none *other*, 224  
fore-thy wythowttyne feynynge, enforce 3ow *the*<sup>1</sup> more  
To feede 3ow *with* syche feble as 3e be-fore fynde"

"Sir," sais *the* *senatour*, "so Criste motte me helpe!  
There ryngnede neuer syche realtee *with-in* Rome walles!  
There ne es *prelatte*, ne pape, ne prynce in *this* erthe,  
That he ne<sup>2</sup> myghte bewele payede of *thees* pryce metes!"

A ftyre theyre welthe *they* wesche, and went vn-to  
chambyre,

*This* ilke kydde conquerour *with* knyghtes ynewe, 232

Sir Gaywayne *the* worthye Dame Waynow he ledys,  
Sir Owghtreth on *the* tother syde, of Turry was lorde  
Thane spyces vn-sparyly *thay* spendyde there-aftyre,  
Maluesye and muskadelle, *thase* meruelous drynkes,  
Raykede fulle rathely in rossete cowpes, 237

Tille alle *the* riche on rawe, Romaines and *other*

Bot the soueraingne sothely, for solauce of hym seluene,  
Assingnyde to *the* *senatour* certaygne lordes,

To lede to his leueré, whene he leue askes, 241

*With* myrthe and *with* melodye of mynstralsy noble

Thane *the* conquerour to concelle cayres there-aftyre,

Wyth lordes of his lygeaunce *that* to hym selfe langys,  
To *the* geauntes toure iohly he wendes, 245

Wyth justicez and iuggez, and gentille knyghtes

Sir Cadur of Cornewayle to *the* kyngs carppes,  
Lughe one hyme luffly *with* lykande lates,— 248

"I thanke Gode of *that* thraa *that* vs *this* thretys!"

3ow moste be traylede, I trowe, bot 3ife 3e trett bettyre

*The* *lettres* of *sir* Lucius lyghttys myne herte!

We hafe as losels liffyde many longe daye, 252

Wyth delyttes in *this* lande *with* lordchepez many,

And forelytenede the loos *that* we are layttede

I was abaischite, be oure Lorde, of oure beste bernes,

<sup>1</sup> MS *the* 3ow

<sup>2</sup> MS *ne* ha.

- ffore gret dule of dedde of dedez of armes ! 256  
 Now wakkenyse *the* were ! wrychypide be Cryste !  
 And we salle wynne it ag[a]yne be wyghtnesse *and*  
 strenghe ! ”  
 “ Sir Cadour,” *quod the* kyng, “ thy concelle es noble,  
 Bot *thou* arte a meruailous mane with thi mery wordez !  
 ffor thow countez no caas, ne castes no forthire, 261  
 Bot hurles furthe appone heuede, as thi herte thynkes ,  
 I moste trette of a trew towchande *thuse* nedes,  
 Talke of thies tythdands *that* tenes myne herte , 264  
 Thou sees *that the* emperour es angerde a lyttalle ,  
 Yt semes be his sandismene *that* he es sore greuede ,  
 His senatour has sommonde <sup>1</sup> me, and said what hym  
 lykyde,  
 Hethely in my halle, wyth heynzous wordes, 268  
 In speche disspyszed me, *and* sparede me lyttalle ,  
 I myght noghte speke for spytte, so my herte trymblyde !  
 He askyde me tyrauntly tribute of Rome,  
 That tenefully tynt was in tyme of myne elders , 272  
 There alyenes, in absence of alle mene of armes,  
 Couerde it of commons, as cronicles telles ,  
 I haue title to take tribute of Rome,  
 Myne ancestres ware emperours, *and* aughte it *theme*  
 seluene, 276  
 Belyne *and* Bremyne, *and* Bawdewyne the thyrd,  
 They occupyde *the* empyre aughte score wynttyrs,  
 Ilkane ayere aftyre *other*, as awlde mene telles ,  
 Thai couerde *the* Capitoile, and keste doune the walles ,  
 Hyngede of *theire* heddys-mene by huñdredhes at ones ,  
 Seyne Constantyne, our kynsmane, conquerid it aftyre,  
 That ayere was of Ynglande, and emperour of Rome,  
 He *that* conquerid *the* crosse be crafter of armes, 284  
 That Criste was on crucifiede, *that* kyng es of heuene ,  
 Thus hafe we euydens to aske *the* emperour *the* same,  
 That *thus* regnez at Rome, whate ryghte *that* he  
 claymes ”

He rejoices to  
return again to  
deeds of arms

The king praises  
Sir Cadour for his  
bold words,

spoken from his  
heart without  
thought or care

He himself is  
grieved at these  
findings

He has been in-  
sulted in his own  
hall by heinous  
words,  
and insolently  
summoned to  
pay tribute to  
the emperor of  
Rome,

of whom he ought  
rather to demand  
tribute

His ancestors oc-  
cupied the Em-  
pire of Rome  
eight score  
winters

His kinsman,  
Constantine,  
afterwards sub-  
dued it—  
he who gained  
by conquest the  
true Cross

<sup>1</sup> O. somounde



Then answered  
King Aungers  
and said that Ar-  
thur ought to be  
supreme over all  
kings

[leaf 56, back]

The Romans had  
done many evil  
deeds in Scot-  
land,

for which he  
would have re-  
venge

He promises to  
bring 50,000 men  
to aid Arthur

The king of  
little Britain  
would have Ar-  
thur return a  
fierce answer

He fears the Ro-  
mans no whit

He promises to  
bring 30,000  
knights within a  
month.

Then answered kyng Aungers to Arthure hym seluynе,  
"Thow aughte to be ouerlynge ouer alle other  
kynges, 289

flore wyseste, and worthyeste, and wyghteste of hanndes,  
The knyghtlyeste of counsaile *that euer* corone bare ,  
I dare saye fore Scottlande, *that* we theme schathe  
lympyde, 292

Whene *the* Romaines regnede, *thay* raunsounde oure  
eldyrs,

And rade in theire ryotte, and rauyschett oure wyfes,  
With-owttyne resone or ryghte refte vs oure gudes ,  
And I salle make myne avowe deuotly to Criste, 296

And to *the* haly vernacle, vertuus and noble,  
Of this grett velany I salle be vengede ones  
On 3one venemus mene, wyth valiant knyghtes !  
I salle the forthure of defence fosterde ynewe, 300

fifty thowsande mene, wyth-in two eldes,  
Of my wage for to wende, whare so the lykes,  
To fyghte wyth thy ffaa mene, *that* vs unfaire ledes "

Thane the burelyche beryne of Bretayne *the* lyttlyle  
Counsayles sir Arthure, and of hym besokys 305

To ansuere *the* alyenes wyth austerene wordes,  
To entyce the emperour to take ouere the mounttes  
He said, "I make myne avowe verrelly to Cryste, 308  
And to *the* haly vernacle, *that* voide schalle I neuere,

ffor radnesse of na Romaine *that* regnes in ertlie ,  
Bot ay be redye in araye, and at areste ffoundene,  
No more dowtte the dynte of theire derfe wapyns, 312  
Than *the* dewe *that* es dannke, whene *that* it doune ffallas ,  
Ne no more schoune<sup>1</sup> fore *the* swape of theire scharpe  
suerddes,

Then fore *the* faireste flou *that*t on the folde growes !  
I salle to bataille the brynge, of brenyede knyghtes 316  
Thyrtyy thosanne he tale, thyrftye in armes,  
Wyth-in a monethe daye in-to whatte marche,  
*That* thow wylle sothelye assygne, whene *thys*elfe lykes "

<sup>1</sup> Or schonne.

"A ! A !" says *the Walsche* kynge, "wyrchipid be Criste!  
 Now schalle we wreke fulle wele *the* wrethe of oure  
 elders ! 321

Then Arthur ex-  
 claims Ah! ah!  
 Now shall we  
 have revenge

In West Walys i-wysse syche wonndyrs *that* wroghte,  
*That* alle for wandrethe may wepe, *that* one *that* were  
 thynkes

I salle haue the avanttwarde wytterly my seluene, 324

Tylle *that* I haue venquiste *the* Vicounte of Rome,

*That* wroghte me at Viterbe a velanye ones,

As I paste in pylgremage by the Pounte Tremble, 327

He was in Tuskayne *that* tyme, and tuke of oure knyghttes,

Areste theme vnryghttwyslye, and raunsounde *thame*  
 aftyre,

He himself would  
 fight at the head  
 of his army till  
 he had revenged  
 himself on the  
 Viscount of Rome  
 for a villany he  
 once wrought  
 him at Viterbo

I salle hym surelye ensure, *that* saghetylle salle we neuer,

Are we sadlye assemble by oure selfene ones,

And dele dynttys of dethe *with* oure derfe wapyns ! 332

And I salle wagge to *that* were of wyrchipfulle knyghtes,

Of Wyghte and of Walschelande, and of *the* Weste

Marches,

He would take  
 two thousand  
 worshipful  
 knights

Twa thosande in tale, horsede one stedys,

[leaf 57]

Of *the* wyghteste wyes in alle zone weste landys !" 336

Syre Ewane fytz Vryenee<sup>1</sup> *thane* egerly fraynez,

Was cosyne to *the* conquerour, corageous hymselfene,

"Sir, and we wyste *your* wylle, we walde wirke *ther-*

aftyre,

339

Then spoke Sir  
 Ewayne and said  
 that they would  
 all follow his  
 command gladly

3if *this* journee sulde halde, or be ajournede forthyre,

To ryde one zone Romaynes *and* ryott there landez,

We walde schape vs there-fore to schippe whene 3ow

lykys "

"Cosyne," quod *the* conquerour, "kyndly *thou* asches,

3ife my concelle accorde to conquere zone landez, 344

Then said Ar-  
 thur,

By *the* kalendez of Iuny we schalle encountre ones,

Wyth fulle creuelle knyghtez, so Cryste mot me helpe!

"We will be  
 ready by the ka-  
 lends of June,

There-to make I myne avowe devotily to Cryste,

And to *the* holy vernacle, vertuous and noble, 348

I salle at Lammesse take leue, to lenge at my large

and at Lammes  
 will enjoy our-

<sup>1</sup> Read Vryence

selves in Lorraine  
or Lombardy, In Lorayne or Lumberdye, whethire me leue thynkys ,  
Merke vn-to Meloyne, and myne doune *the wallez*,  
Bathe of Petyrsande, *and* of Pys, and of *the Pounte*  
Tremble, 352

sojourn six  
weeks in the  
Vale of Viterbo In *the* Vale of Viterbe vetaile my knyghttes,  
Suggourne there sex wokes *and* solace my selfene ,  
Send *prekers* to *the* price tounne, and plaunte there my  
segge,

Then Sir Ewayne  
swows vengeance  
against the Em-  
peror of Rome  
for occupying Ar-  
thur's heritage,  
Bot if *thay* profre me *the* pece be processe of tyme" 356  
"Certys," sais *sir* Ewayne, "and I avowe aftyre,  
And I *that* hathelle may see *euer* with myne eghn,  
*That* ocupies thine heritage, *the* empyere of Rome,  
I salle auntyre me anes hys egle to touche, 360  
*That* borne es in his banere of brighte golde ryche,  
And raas it frome his riche mene, and ryfe it in sondyre,  
Bot he be redily reschowede with riotous knyghtez ,  
I salle enforse 3owe in *the* felde with fresche mene of  
armes, 364

and promises  
50 000 men on  
four steeds  
ffyfty thosande folke apon faire stedys,  
On thi ffoo mene to foonde, there the faire thynkes,  
In ffraunce or in ffriselande, feghte whene *the* lykes !"  
Then Lancelot  
declares his satis-  
faction at the  
war  
"By oure Lorde," quod *sir* Launcelott, "now lyghttys  
myne herte ! 368

I loue Gode of *this* loue<sup>1</sup> *this* lordes has avowede !  
Nowe may lesse mene haue leue to say whatt theme lykes,  
And haue no lettyng be lawe, bot lystynnys *thuse* wordez,  
I salle be at journee with gentille knyghtes, 372  
On a jamby stede fulle jolyly graythide,  
Or any journee be-gane to juste with hym selfene,  
Emange alle his geauntez genyuers and *other*,  
Stryke hym styfflye fro his stede, with strenghe of myne  
handys, 376

ffor alle *tha* steryne in stour, *that* in his stale houys !  
Be my retenu arayed, I rekke bott a lyttill  
To make rowtte in-to Rome, with ryotous knyghtes !  
With-in a seuenyghte daye, with sex score helmes, 380

<sup>1</sup> Or perhaps, lone

[leaf 57, back]  
and to carry the  
war into Rome

I salle be seene on the see, saile whene *the* lykes "

Thane laughs *sir* Lottez, and alle one lowde meles,

*Sir Lottez laughs  
for joy,*

"Me likez *that sir* Lucius lannes aftyre sorowe ,  
Now he wylnez *the* were, hys wanedrethe begynnys, 384

It es owre weredes to wreke the wrethe of oure elders !

I make myne a-vowe to Gode, and to *the* holy vernacle,

And I may se *the* Romaynes, *that* are so ryche haldene,

*and hopes to see  
the rich Romans  
in their pomp,*

Arayede in *theire* riotes on a rounde felde, 388

I salle at *the* reuerence of *the* Rounde Table

Ryde throughte alle *the* rowtte, rerewarde *and* other,

*that he may cut  
his way through  
them and shed  
their blood*

Redy wayes to make, and renkkes fulle rowme,

Rynnande on rede blode, as my stede ruschez ! 392

He *that* folowes my fare, and fyrste commes aftyre,

Salle fynde in my fare-waye manye ffay leuyde ! "

Thane *the* conquerour kyndly comforthes *these* knyghtes,

Alowes *thame* gretly *theire* lordly a-vowes,— 396

*Then Arthur  
praises his  
knights for up  
holding his  
honour*

"Alweldande Gode wyrchipe 3ow alle !

And latte me neuere wantte 3ow, whylls I in werlde  
regne ,

My menske and my manhede 3e mayntene in erthe,

Myne honour alle vtterly in *othe* kyngys landes , 400

My wele and my wyrchipe, of alle *this* werlde ryche,

3e haue knyghtly conqueryde, *that* to my coroune langes,

Hym thare be ferde for no faees, *that* swylke a folke ledes,

Bot euer ffresche for to fyghte, in felde whene hym lykes

I acounte no kyng *that* vndyr Criste lyffes, 405

*While they re-  
main true to him  
he fears no king  
on earth*

Whilles I see 3owe alle sounde, I sette be no more "

Qwhene they tristly had tetryd, *thay* trumppede vp  
aftyre,

*Then the Council  
breaks up*

Descendyd doune *with* a daunce of dukes and erles , 408

*Music and  
dancing succeed,*

Thane *they* semblede to sale, and sowpped als swythe,

Alle *this* semly sorte, wyth semblante fulle noble

*and they are all  
feasted in the  
hall*

Thene the roy realle rehetes *thes* knyghttys,

Wyth reuerence and ryotte of alle his Rounde Table, 412

Tille seuen dayes was gone *the* senatour asks

*After seven days  
the Senator de-  
mande his answer  
for the Emperor*

Answer to *the* emperour *with* austeryne wordez

Aftyre *the* Epiphanye, whene *the* purpos was takyne

Of peris of *the parlement*, *prelates* and *other*. 416  
 The kyng in his concelle, curtaise and noble,  
 Vtters *the alenes*, and ansuers hym *seluene* —  
 Then Arthur bids him greet Lucius and tell him that he shall quickly see him in his country,  
 “Gret wele Lucius, thi lorde, and layne noghte *thise*  
*wordes*,  
 Ife *thow* be lygmane<sup>1</sup> lele, late hym wiet sone 420  
 I salle at Lammese take leue, and loge at my large  
 In delitte in his lanndez, wyth lordes ynewe,  
 Regne in my realtee, and ryste whene me lykes,  
 By *the* reyuer of Reone halde my Rounde Table, 424  
 ffanngge the fermes in faithe<sup>2</sup> of alle *tha* faire rewmes,  
 ffor alle *the* manace of hys myghte, and mawgree his  
 egfine’  
 [leaf 58] And merke sythens ouer the mounttez in-to his mayne  
 londez, 427  
 and mine down the walls of Milan,  
 To Meloyne the meruaylous, and myne doun the walles,  
 In Lorryne ne in Lumberdye lefe schalle I nowthire  
 Nokyne lede appone liffe, *that thare* his lawes ȝemes,  
 And turne in-to Tuschayne, whene me tyme thynkys,  
 Ryde alle *thas* rowme landes wyth ryotous knyghttes,  
 Byde hy[m] make reschewes foremenske of hymeseluen,  
 And mette me fore his manhede in *thase* mayne landes’  
 he will be found in France on the first of February,  
 I salle be foundyne in Fraunce, fraiste whene hym lykes,  
 The fyrste daye of Feuerȝere, in *thas* faire marches’ 436  
 Are I be fechyde wyth force, or fowfette my landes,  
 The flour of his faire folke fulle fay salle be leuyde’  
 I salle hym sekryly ensure, vndyre my seele ryche,  
 To seega *the* cete of Rome wyth-in seuene wyntyre, 440  
 And that so sekerly ensege apon sere halves,  
 and before seven winters are gone besiege Rome,  
 That many a senator salle syghe for sake of me one’  
 My sommons er certifiede and *thow* arte fulle sernyde  
 Of cundit and credense, kayre where the lykes: 444  
 I salle thi journaye engyste, enjoyne theme my seluene,  
 ffor this place to the porte, there *thou* salle passe ouer,  
 The messenger may depart as soon as he pleases,  
 He must travel to Sandwich in seven daye,  
 Seuene dayes to Sandewyche, I sette at the large,  
 Sixty myle on a daye, *the somme* es bott lyttalle’ 448

<sup>1</sup> Or leygmane<sup>2</sup> Or, fatthe

Thowe moste spede ~~at the~~ spurs, and spare noghte thi fole,  
 Thow weynde by Watlyng-strette, and by no waye elles  
 Thare thou nyghttes one nyghte, nede moste *thou* lenge,  
 Be it foreste or felde, found *thou* no forthire , 452  
 Bynde thy blonke by a buske with thy brydille euene,  
 Lugge *thū* selfe vndyre lynde, as *the* leefe thynkes,  
 There awes none alyenes to ayere appone nyghttys,  
 With syche a rebawdous rowtte to ryot thy seluene 456  
 Thy lycence es lemete in presence of lordys,  
 Be now lathe or lette, ryghte as *the* thynkes,  
 For bothe *thū* lyffe and *thū* lyme lygges *ther*-appone,  
*Thofe* *sir* Lucius had laide *the* lordchipe of Rome , 460  
 ffor be *thow* foundene a fute with-owte *the* fiode merkes,  
 Aftyr *the* aughtende day, whene vndroune es rungene,  
*Thou* salle be heuedede in hye, and with horsse drawene,  
 And seyne heyly be hangede, houndes to gnawene ' 464  
 The rente ne rede golde, *that* vn-to Rome langes,  
 Salle noghte redily, renke, raunsone thyne one !"  
 "Sir," sais *the* senatour, "so Crist mot me helpe !  
 Might I with wirchipe wyne awaye ones, 468  
 I sulde neuer fore emperour, *that* on erthe langes,  
 Efte vnto Arthure ayere one syche nedys ,  
 Bot I am sengilly here, with sex sum of knyghtes ,  
 I be-seke *zow*, *sir*, that we may sounde passe 472  
 If any vnlawefulle lede lette vs by *the* waye,  
 With-in thy lycence, lorde, thy loosse es enpeyrede "  
 "Care noghte," quod the kyng, "thy countye es  
 knawene [leaf 58, back]  
 ffro Carlelele to *the* coste, there thy cogge lengges , 476  
*Thoghe* thy cofers ware fulle, cramede with syluer,  
 Thow myghte be sekyre of my sele sixty myle forthire "  
 They enclined to *the* kyng, and counge *thay* askede,  
 Cayers owtt of Carlelele, catchez one *theire* horsez , 480  
 Sir Cadore *the* curtayes kende theme *the* wayes,  
 To Catrike *theme* curvayede, and to Crist *theme*  
 bekennyde  
 So *they* spede at *the* spoures, *they* sprangene *theire* horses,

going by Wat-  
 ling street,  
 stopping at night  
 wherever he may  
 chance to be,  
 tying his horse  
 to a bush by the  
 bridle.

If after undern  
 of the eighth day  
 he is found in the  
 country, he shall  
 be hanged up for  
 dogs to gnaw

Then the Senator  
 declares that if  
 he could only get  
 well away once  
 he would never  
 again go on such  
 an errand

He prays that his  
 retinue may be  
 protected on their  
 way

Then Arthur tells  
 him that if his  
 coffers were  
 crammed full of  
 silver he would  
 be safe with his  
 passport.

Then the Romans  
 depart with all  
 speed.

- Hyres *theme* hakenayes hastily *there* aftyre , 484  
 So fore reddour *they* redene, and risted *theme* neuē,  
 and never rest till they reach Sand- Bot 3if they luggede vndire lynd, whills *theme* lyghte  
 wich by the time prescribed. failede ,
- Bot euere *the* senatour for-sothe soghte at *the* gayneste  
 Never were they so glad of any By *the* seuende day was gone *the* cetee *that* rechide , 488  
 thing as of the sound of the sea Of alle *the* glee vndire Gode so glade ware *they* neuē,  
 and Sandwich bells As of *the* sounde of *the* see and Sandwyche belles '  
 Wythowttyne more stownntyngs they schippide *theire*  
 horsez,
- Wery to *the* wane see *they* went alle att ones , 492  
 With *the* mene of *the* walle they weyde vp *theire* ankysr,  
 They cross the sea to Flanders, And fleede at *the* fore flude, in Flaundiez *they* rowede,  
 And thorughe Flaundres *they* founde, as *theme* faire  
 thoghte,<sup>1</sup>
- Tille Akyne in Almayne, in Arthur landes , 496  
 Gosse by *the* Mount Goddarde fulle greuous wayes,  
 and over Mount St Gothard into Lombardy,  
 And so in-to Lumberddye, lykande to schewe ,  
 through Tuscany They turne thurghe Tuskayne, with towres fulle heghe,  
 to Rome In pris apparelles *theme* in precious wedez , 500  
 The Sonondaye in suters *that* suggourne *theire* horsez,  
 And sekis *the* Seyntez of Rome, be assente of knyghtes ,  
 Sythyne prekes to *the* pales with portes so ryche,  
 Then the Senator seeks an audience with the Emperor Lucius, *Thare* sir Lucius lenges with lordes enowe , 504  
 Lowttes to hym luffy, and *lettres* hym bedes  
 Of credence enclosyde, with knyghtlyche wordes
- Thene *the* emperour was egree, and enkerly fraynes,  
 who asks eagerly for Arthur's answer, and on what ground he resists the power of Rome  
 The answeere of Arthure he askes hymne sone, 508  
 How he arayes *the* rewme, and rewlys *the* pople ,  
 3if he be rebelle to Rome, whate ryghte *that* he claymes
- His ambassador ought to have seized his sceptre and sat above him  
 Arthur, he says, ought himself to have served the Senator  
 "Thow sulde his ceptre haue sesede, and syttyne aboune,  
 ffore reuerence and realtee of Rome *the* noble 512  
 By sertes *thow* was my sandes, and senatour of Rome,  
 He sulde fore solempnitee hafe seruede *the* hym seluene "
- <sup>1</sup> *hkyde* struck out, and *thoghte* written instead by the same hand

"That wille he neuer for no waye<sup>1</sup> of alle *this* werlde  
ryche, 515

Then answers the  
Senator, that Ar  
thur is too great  
to do that for  
any one

Bot who may wynne hym of werre, by wyghtnesse of  
handes,

Many fey schalle be fyrste appone *the* felde leuyde,

Are he appere in this place, profre whene *the* likes

I saye the, *su*, Arthure es thyne enmye fore euer, 519

He claims no less  
than the Emper  
or of Rome

And ettelles to bee ouerlynge of *the* empyre of Rome,

That alle his ancestres aughte, bot Vtere hym selfe

[leaf 59]

Thy nedes this newe jere, I notifiede my selfene,

I Be-fore *that* noble of name *and* neynesome of kynges,<sup>2</sup>

He tells the Em-  
peror how he  
had delivered his  
message,  
and that he was  
never so fright-  
ened since he was  
born

In the moste reale place of *the* Rounde Table, 524

Isomounde hym solempnylye, one-seeande his knyghtez,

Sene I was formyde in faythe so ferde was I neuere,

In alle *the* placez ther I passede of pryncez in erthe<sup>1</sup>

I wolde fore-sake alle my suyte of segnourry of Rome,

Or I este to *that* soueraygne wharesente onesuyche nedes<sup>1</sup>

He may be chosyne cheftayne, cheefe of alle *othe*r, 530

Arthur is worthy  
to be king of men  
for his wisdom  
and valour

Bathe be chauncez of armes and cheuallrye noble,

fforwhyseste, *and* worthyeste, and wyghteste of hanndez

Of alle the wyes *thate* I watte in this werlde ryche,

The knyghtlyeste creatoure in Cristyndome haldene,

He is the most  
famous knight in  
Christendom

Of kyng or of conquerour, crownede in erthe,

Of countenaunce, of corage, of crewelle lates, 536

The comlyeste of knyghtehode *that* vndyre Cryste lyffes<sup>1</sup>

He maye be spokene in dyspens, despysere of syluere,

To him gold and  
silver are as no  
thing,

That no more of golde gyffes *thane* of grette stones,

No more of wynethane of watyre, *that* of *the* welle rynnys,

and wine no more  
than water

Ne of welthe of *this* werlde bot wyrchipe allone 541

Syche contaunce was neuer knowene in no kythe ryche,

As was *with that* conquerour in his courte haldene,

I countede at this Crystynmesse, of kynges enoyntede,

Ten kings anoint-  
ed feast at his  
table

Hole tene at his table, *that* tyme *with* hym selfene,

He wyлле werraye i-wysse, be ware 3if *the* lykes, 546

Wage many wyghtemene, and wache thy marches,

<sup>1</sup> ? wye.

<sup>2</sup> Substituted for *knyghtez*



Good need is  
there of zealous  
preparation,

and that soldiers  
should be dis-  
patched to the  
mountains forth  
with

"By Paster,"  
says the Emperour,  
"I undertake to  
be in Germany  
with an army,

and will send  
many giants and  
mighty men to  
meet him in the  
mountains

A watch tower  
shall be reared on  
Mount St Goth-  
ard, with a beacon  
ready to light,

and another on  
Mount St  
[leaf 59, back]  
Bernard

He shall not be  
suffered to enter  
Pavia."

Then Lucius  
sends letters into  
the East,

to demand aid of  
all the kings and  
lords.  
Quickly they all  
come, for fear of  
his might

That they be redye in araye, and at areste foundyne,  
ffor ȝife he reche vn-to Rome, he raunsouns it for euere!  
Irede *thow* dresce the *thei*-fore, and drawe no lyttel angere,  
Be sekyre of *this* sowdeours, and sende to *the* mowntes,  
Be *the* quartere of *this* ȝere, and hym *quarte* stannde,  
He wyll wyghtlye in a qwhyle one his wayes hye" 553

"Be *Estyre*," says *the* emperour, "I ettylle my selfene,  
To hostaye in Almayne with armede knyghtez,  
Sende freklye in-to Fiaunce, *that* flou es of rewmes,  
ffande to fette *that* freke, and forfette his landez, 557  
ffor I salle sette kepers, fulle couaunde and noble,  
Many geaunte of geene, justers fulle gude,  
To mete hym in the mountes, and martyre hys knyghtes,  
Stryke *theme* doune in strates, and struye *theme* fore euere,  
There salle appone Godarde a garette be rerede, 562  
That schalle be garneschte and kepyde with gude mene  
of armes,

And a bekyne abouezn to brynne whene *theme* lykys,  
*That* nane enmye with hoste salle entre the mountes,  
There schalle one Mounte Bernarde be beyldede another,  
Buschede with banerettes and bachelers noble 567  
In at the portes of Pavye schalle no prynce passe,  
Thurgh the perelous places, for my pris knyghtes"

Thane *sir* Lucius lordlyche *lettres* he sendys  
To one in-to *the* Oryente, with austeryne knyghtez,  
Tille Ambyganye and Orcage, and Alysaundyre eke, 572  
To Inde and to Ermony, as Ewfrates rynnyngs,  
To Asye, and to Affrike, and Ewrope *the* large,  
To Irritayne, and Elamet, and alle *thase* owte ilez,  
To Arraby and Egipt, tille erles and *other*, 576  
That any erthe occupyes in *thase* este marches

Of Damaske and Damyat, and dukes and eyles,  
ffor drede of his daungere they dresside *theme* sone,  
Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kyngys 580  
Come at his commandmente, clenly at ones,  
To Tartary and Turky, whene tythynngez es comene,  
Thy *turne* in by Thebay, terauntez fulle hugge,

The flour of *the faire folke*, of *Amazonnes landes* , 584  
*Alle* thate *ffaillez on the felde* be *forfette fore euere* !  
 Of *Babyloyn*e and *Baldake* the *burlyche knyghtes*,  
*Bayous with theire baronage* bydez no *langere* ,  
 Of *Perce*, and of *Pamphile*, and *Preter Iohne landes*, 588  
*Iche prynce with his powere* appertlyche *graythede* ,  
 The *Sowdane of Surrye* assemblez his *knyghtes*,  
*ffra Nylus to Nazareth*e, *nommers fulle huge* ,  
 To *Garyere and to Galelé they* gedyre *alle at ones* , 592  
 The *Sowdanes* that ware *sekyre sowdeours* to *Rome*,  
 They gadyrede ouer *the Grekkes See with greuous wapyns*,  
 In *theire grete galays*, *wyth glete ande schelde*z ,  
 The *kyng*e of *Cyprys* *one the see the Sowdane* habydes,  
 With *alle the realles* of *Roodes*, *arayede with hyme* one ,  
 They *sailede with a syde wynde oure the salte strandez*  
*Sodanly the Sarezene*s, as *theme selfe lykede*,  
 Craftyly at *Cornett* the *kynges* are *aryefede*, 600  
*ffra the ceté* of *Rome* *sexti myle large*  
 Be that the *Grekes* ware *graythede*, a *fulle gret nombyre*,  
 The *myghtyeste* of *Macedone*, *with mene of tha marches*,  
*Pulle* and *Pruyslande* *presses with other*, 604  
 The *lege-mene*s of *Lettow* *with legyons ynewe*  
 Thus they *semble in sortes*, *summes fulle huge*,  
*Sowdanes* and *Sarezene*s owt of *sere landes*,  
 The *Sowdane* of *Surry* and *sextene kynges*, 608  
 At the *cetee* of *Rome* *assemblede at ones*  
 Thane yschewes *the emperour* *armede at ryghtys*,  
 Arayede *with his Romaynes* *appone ryche stedys* ,  
*Sexty geauntes* be-fore, *engenderde with fendez*, 612  
 With *weches* and *warlaws* to *wacchene* his *tenty*s,  
 Ay-ware *whare* he *wendes*, *wyntrez* and *zeres*  
 Myghte no *blonkes* *theme* *bere*, *thos bustous churles*,  
 Bot *couer de camellez* of *tourse*, *enclosyde* in *maylez* ,  
 He *ayerez oute with alyenez*, *ostes fulle huge*, 617  
 Ewyne in-to *Almayne*, *that Arthure* *hade wonnyne* ,  
 Rydes in by *the ryuere*, and *ryottez hyme seluene*,  
 And *ayerez with a huge wylle alle thas hye landez* , 620

All that fail are  
 to forfeit their  
 lands

From all the East  
 they come sailing  
 across the Greek  
 Sea in their  
 mighty ships  
 armed for war,

and assembled at  
 Corneto, sixty  
 miles from Rome

There were of  
 Greeks a vast  
 number, and men  
 of Italy, with  
 Saracens from  
 many lands

Then goes forth  
 the emperor with  
 his knights,

headed by  
 sixty giants  
 Witches and war-  
 locks watch his  
 tents.

[leaf 60]  
 No horse might  
 carry those churls.  
 They ride upon  
 camels bearing  
 towers

The emperor  
 marches into  
 Germany

Alle Westwale of werre he wynnys as hym lykes,  
 Drawes in by Danuby, and dubbez hys knyghtez,  
 In the contré of Colome<sup>1</sup> castelles ensoggez, 623  
 And suggeournez *that* sesons wyth Sarazencs ynewe

Meanwhile Ar-  
 thur commands  
 his knights to  
 gather their  
 forces, and to be  
 ready to meet  
 him

At the vtas of Hillary, Syr Arthure hym seluene  
 In his kydde councelle *commande the* lordes,—  
 “Kayere to *your* cuntrez, and semble *your* knyghtes,  
 And kepys me at Constantyne clenlyche arayede, 628  
 Byddez me at Bareflete apone *the* blythe stremes,  
 Baldly *with-in* borde *with* *your* beste beryns,  
 I schalle menskfully *your* mete in thos faire marches”  
 He sendez furthe sodaynly *sergeantes* of arnes, 632

The fleet assem-  
 bles at Sandwich

To alle hys mariners on rawe, to areste hym schuppys,  
 Wyth-in sextene dayes hys fleet whas assemblode,  
 At Sandwyche on *the* see, saile whene hym lykes

He holds a par-  
 liament at York,

In the palez of Jorke a parlement he haldez, 636  
 With alle *the* perez of *the* rewme, prelates and *other*,  
 And aftyre *the* prechyng in presence of lordes,  
 The kyng in his concelle carpys *thes* wordes,—

“I am in *purpos* to passe *perilous* wayes, 640  
 To kaire *with* my kene mene, to conquere *your* landes,  
 To owttiaze myne enmy, *if* auenture it schewe,  
 That occupyes myne heritage, *the* empyre of Rome

and appoints as  
 viceroy Sir Mor-  
 dred, his nephew.

I sett *your* here a *soueraynge*, ascende *if* *your* lykys,  
 That esmesybb, my systersone, Sir Mordrede hym seluene,  
 Salle be my leutenante, *with* lordchipez ynewe, 646  
 Of alle my lele lege-mene, *that* my landez *your* mes.”

He carpestille his cosynethane, in counsaile hym seluene,—  
 “I make the kepare, *sir* knyghte, of kyngrykes manye,  
 Wardayne wyrcchipfulle, to welde al my landes, 650

He bids him take  
 care of Queen  
 Guinever,

That I haue wonnene of werre, in alle *this* werlde ryche,  
 I wyll *that* Waynour, my weife, in wyrcype be holdene,  
 That hire wantte noo wele, ne welthe *that* hire lykes,  
 Luke my kydde castells be clenlyche arrayede, 654

and of his castles  
 and foreste,

There cho maye suggourne hire selfe, wyth semlyche  
 berynes

<sup>1</sup> Or Colone.

ffinde my fforestez be ffrytheda, o frenchepe for eue<sup>e</sup>,  
 That nane werreye my wylde, botte Waynou<sup>r</sup> hir seluene, The queen alone  
is allowed to hunt  
in his absence  
 And *that* in *the* sesone whene grees es assignyde, 658  
 That cho take hir solauce in certayne tymms  
 Chauncelere and chambyrleyne chaunge as *the* lykes,  
 Audytours and offycers ordayne thy seluene,— 661 All officers are  
to be completely  
under his com-  
mand  
 Bathe jureez, and juggez, and justicez of landes,  
 Luke thow justyfy theme wele that injurye wyrkes [leaf 80, back]  
 If me be destaynede to dye at Dryghtyns wylle, 664  
 I charge the my sektour, cheffe of alle *other*,  
 To mynystre my mobles, fore mede of my saule,  
 To mendynantez<sup>1</sup> and mysese in myschefe fallene  
 Take here my testament of tresoure fulle huge, 668  
 As I trayste appone the, be-traye thowe me neuer<sup>1</sup> He bids him be  
faithful to his  
trust,  
 As *thow* wille answere be-fore the austeryne jugge,  
 That alle *this* werlde wynly wysse as hyme lykes,  
 Luke *that* my laste wylle be lelely *perfour*nede<sup>1</sup> 672  
 Thow has clenly *the* cure that to my coroune langez,  
 Of alle my werdez wele, and my weyffe eke,  
 Luke *thowe* kepe the so clere, there be no cause fondene,  
 Whene I to contré come, if Cryste wille it thole, 676  
 And thow haue grace gudly to gouerne thy seluene,  
 I salle coioune *the*, knyghte, kyng with my handez "  
**T**han *ser* Modrede fulle myldly meles hym seluene,  
 Knolyd to *the* conquerour, and carpes *thuse* wordez,—  
 "I be-seke 3ow, *ser*, as my sybbe lorde, 681 But Mordred de-  
sires to be ex-  
cused,  
 That 3e wille for charyté cheese 3ow a-nother,  
 ffor if 3e putte me in *this* plytte, 3owré poplees dyssauiye,  
 To presente a prynce astate my powere es symple 684  
 Whene *other* of werre wysse are wyrchypide here-aftyre,  
 Thane may I for-sothe be sette bott at lyttille  
 To passe in 3ow<sup>r</sup> presance my purpos es takyne,  
 And alle my purueaunce apperte fore my pris knyghtez "  
 "Thowe arte my neuewe fulle nere, my *nurree* of olde,  
 That I haue chastyede and chosene, a childe of my  
 chambyre; 690 But Arthur bids  
him, as his near-  
est of kin, to  
undertake the  
office

<sup>1</sup> MS *mendynantez*

ffor the sybredyne of me, fore-sake noghte *this* offyce  
That thow ne wyrk my wille, thow watte whatte<sup>1</sup> it  
menes "

Then Arthur  
takes leave of  
his queen

Nowe he takez hys leue, and lengez no langere, 693  
At lordez, at lege-mene, *that* leues hyme by-hyndene  
And seyne *that* worthilyche wy went in-to chambyre,  
ffor to comfurthe *the* qwene, *that* in caie lenges, 696  
Waynour waykly wepande hym kyssiz,  
Talkez to hym tenderly *with* teres ynewe,—

Guinever laments  
his departure,

"I may wery the wye, thatt this werie mouede,  
That warnes me wyrchippe of my wedde lorde, 700  
Alle my lykyng of lyfe owte of lande wendez,  
And I in langour am lefte, leue 3e for eueie "

and would rather  
die in his arms

Whyne myghte I, dere lufe, dye in *your* aimes, 703  
Are I *this* destanye of dule sulde drye by myne one "

But Arthur bids  
her not to grieve,

"Grefe *the* noghte, Gaynour, fore Goddes lufe of hewene,  
Ne gruche noghte my ganggyng, it salle to gude turne!  
Thy wonrydez and thy wepyng woundez myne herte,  
I may noghte wit of *this* woo, for alle *this* werlde ryche,  
I haue made a kepare, a knyghte of thyne awene, 709

and tells her that  
he has made Mor-  
dred, a knight  
of her own, his  
deputy

Ouerlyng of Ynglande vndyre thy seluene,  
And thates *sir* Mordrede, *that* *thow* has mekylle *praysede*,  
Salle be thy dictour, my dere, to doo whatte the lykes "

[leaf 61]

Then he kisses  
the ladies, and  
takes leave of  
them.  
But Guinever  
swoons when he  
asks for his  
sword.

Thane he takes hys leue at ladys in chambyre, 713  
Kysside them kyndlyche, and to Criste be-tches,  
And then cho swounes fulle swythe, whe[n] he hys  
swerde aschede,

The king then  
departs hastily  
with his knights

Twys in a swounyng, swelte as cho walde ! 716  
He pressed to his palfray, in presance of lordes,  
Prekys of the palez with his prys knyghtes,

Wyth a realle rowte of *the* Rounde Table, 719  
Soughte to-warde Sandwyche, cho sees hyme no more !  
Thare the grete ware gederyde, wyth galyarde knyghtes,  
Garneschit one *the* grene felde and graythelyche arayede,  
Dukkes and duzseperez daynttehely rydes,  
Erlez of Ynglande with archers ynewe . 724

At Sandwich all  
the lords and  
their followers  
assemble

<sup>1</sup> MS whatte watte.

Schirreues scharply schiftys the comouns,  
 Rewlys be-fore *the* ryche of the Rounde Table,  
 Assingnez ilke a contree to certayne lordes, 727

In the southe one *the* see banke saile whene *theme* lykes  
 Thane bargez *theme* buskez, and to *the* bannke rowes,  
 Bryngez blonkez one bourde, and bullyche helmes,  
 Trussez in tristly trappyde stedes,

Horses, arms,  
 tents, and other  
 things are  
 shipped

Tentez,<sup>1</sup> and othire toylez, and targez fulle ryche, 732  
 Cabanes, *and* clathe-sekkes, and coferez fulle noble,  
 Hukes, and haknays, and horsez of armez,  
 Thus they stowe *in* the stuffe of fulle steryne knyghtez

Qwene alle was schyppede that scholde, they schounte  
 no lengere, 736

Bot ventelde *theme* tyte, as *the* tyde rynnez,  
 Coggez and crayers *than* crossez *thaire* mastez,  
 At the commandment of *the* kyng, vncouerde at ones

Then the ships  
 at the word of  
 command cross  
 their yards,

Wyghtly one *the* wale *thay* wye vp *thaire* ankers, 740  
 By wytt of *the* watyre-mene of *the* wale ythez,  
 ffrekes one *the* forestayne fakene *theire* coblez,

weigh their an  
 chors,  
 the well skilled  
 sailors hoist the  
 sails and steer the  
 vessels

In floynes, and fercostez, and Flemesche schyppes,  
 Tytt saillez to *the* toppe, and turnez *the* lufe, 744  
 Standez appone stere-bourde, sterynly *thay* songene,

The pryce schippeze of the porte prouene *theire* depnesse,  
 And fondez wyth fulle saile ower *the* fawe ythez,

Holly *with*-owttyne harme *thay* hale in bottles, 748  
 Schipe-mene scharply schotene *thaire* portez,  
 Launchez lede apone lufe, lacchene *thei*r depez,

Then they haul  
 in the boats shut  
 the ports, heave  
 the lead, look well  
 to the guiding  
 star, and skil  
 fully shape their  
 course with the  
 needle and the  
 stone

Lukkes to *the* lade-sterne, whene *the* lyghte faillez,  
 Castez coursez be crafte, whene *the* clowde rysez, 752

*With the* nedylle and *the* stone one *the* nyghte tydez,  
 ffor drede of *the* derke nyghte *thay* drecchede a lyttille,  
 And alle *the* steryne of *the* streme strekyne at onez

After a little de  
 lay on account of  
 darkness, they all  
 sail at once

The kyng was in a gret cogge, *with* knyghtez fulle many,  
 In a cabane enclosede, clenlyche arayed, 757

The king is in a  
 large vessel with  
 many knights

*With-in* on a ryche bedde rystys a littylle,  
 And *with the* swoghe of *the* see in swefnyng he felle

Resting himself  
 in his cabin, he  
 falls asleep,

<sup>1</sup> Or teinttez

and dreams of a dreadful dragon  
 [leaf 61, back]  
 His head and neck are blue,  
 his shoulders covered with silver scales,  
 his belly and wings of various hues,  
 his feet are black, and out of his mouth comes fire  
 Then comes against the dragon a fierce black bear,  
 with huge paws and poisonous claws,  
 his sharp legs, and foaming his  
 He prepares to fight  
 roaring and raging for the strife  
 Then the dragon assails him,  
 fighting like a falcon with beak and claws  
 The bear bites him with baleful teeth, and causes the blood to flow  
 He had killed the dragon but for

Hym dreamyd of a dragone, dredfullc to be-holde, 760  
 Come dryfande ouer *the* depe to dienschene hys pople,  
 Ewene walkande owte of the weste landez,  
 Wanderaunde vnworthyly ouere the wale ythez,  
 Bothe his hede and hys hals ware halely alle ouer 764  
 Oundyde of azure, enamelde fulle faire  
 His scoulders ware schalyde alle in clene syluer,  
 Schreede ouer alle *the* schrympe with schrinkande poyntez,  
 Hys wombe and hys wenges of wondyrfulle hewes, 768  
 In meruaylous maylys he mountede fulle hye,  
 Whayme *that* he towchede he was tynt for euer!  
 Hys feete ware floreschede alle in fyne sabyllie,  
 And syche a vennyymous flayre flowe fro his lyppez  
 That the flode of *the* flawez alle one fyre semyde! 773  
 Thane come of *the* Oryente, ewyne hyme agayne,  
 A blake bustous bere abwene in the clowdes,  
 With yche a pawe as a poste, and paumes fulle huge,  
 With pykes fulle perlous, alle plyande *thane* semyde,  
 Lothene and lothely, lokkes and othier,  
 Alle with lutterde legges, lokerde vnfaire,  
 filtyrde vnfrely, wyth fomannde lypepez, 780  
 The foulleste of fegure that fourmede was euer!  
 He baltyrde, he bleryde, he braundyschte *ther*-after,  
 To bataile he bounnez hym with bustous clowez  
 He romede, he rarede, that roggede alle *the* erthe! 784  
 So ruydly he rappyd at to ryot hym seluene!  
 Thane the dragone on dreghe dressede hyme a-aynez,  
 And with hys dutezhym drafe one dreghe by *the* walkyne  
 He fares as a fawcone, frekly he strykez, 788  
 Bothe with feete and with fyre he feghttys at ones!  
 The bere in the bataile *the* bygger hym semyde,  
 And byttes hyme holdlye wyth balefulle tuskez,  
 Syche buffetez he hym rechez with hys brode klokes,  
 Hys brest and his brathelle whas blodye alle ouer! 793  
 He rawmpyde so ruydly that alle *the* erthe ryfez,  
 Rynnande one reede blode as rayne of *the* heuene!  
 He hade weryede the woime by wyghtnesse of strenghte,

Newareit fore *the* wylde fyre *that* he hyme wyth defendez

the fire which he  
breathes

Thane wandrys *the* woime awaye to hys heghttez,

Commes glydande fro *the* clowddez, and cowpez fulle  
eueue , 799

Then the dragon  
flies aloft, and  
comes swooping  
down,

Towchez hym wyth his talounez, and terez hys rigge,

Be-twyx *the* taile and the toppe tene fote large !

tearing a vast  
rent in the back  
of the bear,

Thus he brittenyde the bere, and broghte hyme olyfe,

Lette hyme falle in the fode, fleete whare hyme lykys

and lets him drop  
into the water

So they brynge *the* bolde kyng bynne *the* schippe-burde,

*That* nere he bristez for bale, one bede whare he lyggez

Thane waknez *the* wyese kyng, very fore-trauaillede,

Then Arthur  
awaking is  
[leaf 62]  
troubled at the  
dream, and sends  
for his two philo-  
sophers, men very  
learned in the  
seven sciences

Takes hyme two phylozophurs, that folowede hyme euer,

In the seuyne scyence the suteleste fondene, 808

The cony[n]geste of clergye vndyre Criste knowene ,

He tolde *theme* of hys tourmente, *that* tyme *that* he  
slepede,

“Drechede *with* a dragone, and syche a derfe beste,

Has mad me fulle very , 3e telle me my swefene, 812

Ore I mone swelte as swythe, as wysse me oure Lorde !”

“Sir,” saide *they* sone thane, thus sagge philosopherse,

These wise men  
tell him that by  
the dragon is  
meant himself

“The dragone *that* thow dremyde of, so dredfulle to schewe,

That come dryfande ouer *the* deepe, to drynchene thy pople,

Sothely and certayne thy seluene it es, 817

That thus saillez ouer *the* see with thy sekyre knyghtez

The colurez *that* ware castyne appone his clere wengez,

May be thy kyngrykezalle, that thow has ryghte wonnyne,

And the tachesesede taile, with tonges so huge, 821

Be-takyns thus faire folke, that in thy fleet wendez

The bere that bryttenede was abowene in *the* clowdez,

The bear signi-  
fies the tyrants  
who torment his  
people, or else  
some giant whom  
Arthur is des-  
tined to over-  
throw in battle

Be-takyns the tyrauntez *that* tourmentez thy pople ,

Or elles with somme gyaunt some journee salle happyne,

In syngulere batelle by 3oure selfe one ,

And thow salle hafe *the* victorye thurghe helpe of oure

Lorde,

As thow in thy visione was opynly schewede ! 828

Of this dredfulle dreame ne drede the no more, -

Ne kare noghte, si<sup>3</sup> conquerow, bot comforth thy seluene,

Arthur is exhort-  
ed to be of good  
courage



And thise *that* saillez ouer *the* see, with thy sekyre  
knyghtez "

With trumpppez thene trustly, they tuisene vpe *thaire*  
saillez, 832

They speed on  
their way, and ar-  
rive on the coast  
of Normandy  
At Barflete they  
find a fleet of  
friends,

the flower of fif-  
teen realms

And rowes ouer the ryche see, this rowite alle at once ,  
The comely coste of Normandye they cachene fulle euene,  
And blythely at Barflete theis bokle are airyfede,  
And fyndys a flete there of fiendez ynewe, 836  
The floure and *the* faire folke of fyftene rewmez ,  
ffore kynges and capytajnez kepyde hyme fayre,  
As he at Carelele commaundyde at Cristymesse hym  
seluene 839

When they had  
disembarked and  
pitched their  
tents a Templar  
comes to the  
king,

and tells him of  
a ferocious knight  
who feeds upon  
men and chil-  
dren,

Be they had taken the lande, and tencez vpe ierde,  
Comez<sup>1</sup> a templere tyte, and towchide to *the* kyng—  
"Here es a tesaunt be-syde that tourmentez thi people,  
A grett geaunte of geene, engenderde of fundez ,  
He has fretyne of folke mo thane fyfe hondretre, 844  
And als fele fawntekyns of freeborne chuldre !  
This has bene his sustynaunce alle this seuene wynter es,  
And ȝitt es that sotte noghte sadde, so wele hyme it lykez !  
In *the* contree of Constantyne no kynde has he leuede,  
With-owttyne kydd castelles enclosid wyth walles, 849  
That he ne has clenly dystroyede alle the knaue chuldre,  
And theme caryede to *the* cragge, and clenly deworyde !

and who had that  
day captured the  
[leaf 62 back]  
Duchess of Brit-  
tany, and carried  
her to the  
mountain.

The duchez of Bretayne to daye has he takyne, 852  
Be-side Reynes as scho rade with hire ryche knyghttes,  
Ledd hyre to *the* mountayne, thare *that* lede lengez,  
To lye by that lady, aye whyls hir lyfe lastez  
We folowede o ferrome moo thene fyfe hundrethe, 856  
Of beryns, and of burgeys, and bachelers noble,  
Bot he couerde the cragge , cho cryede so lowde,  
The care of *that* creatoure couer salle I neuer !  
Scho was flouir of alle Fraunce, or of fyfe rewmes, 860  
And one of the fayreste that fourmede was euere,  
The gentileste jowelle a-juggede with lordes,  
ffro Geene vn-to Gerone, by Ihesu of heuene !

She was the  
flower of all  
France  
and the fairest  
lady on earth,

Scho was thy wyfes cosyne, knowe it if *the* lykez, 864 cousin of Ar  
thui s queen  
Comene of *the* rycheeste, that *rengnez* in erthe  
As thow arte ryghtwise kyngrewe on thy pople,  
And fande for to venge theme, that thus are rebuykyde !"

"Allas !" sais *sir* Arthure, "so lange haue I lyffede, Then Sir Arthur  
bitterly laments  
her fate,  
Hade I wytene of this, wele had me chefe, 869  
Me es noghte fallene faire, bot me es foule happynede,  
That thus this faire ladye this fende has dystroyede !  
I had leue, e thane alle Fraunce, this fyftene wynter,  
I hade bene be-fore thate freke, a furlange of waye, 873 and wishes he  
had been there  
to aid her  
Whene he that ladye had laghte and ledde to *the* montez  
I hadde lefte my lyfe are cho hade harme lymppye !  
Bot walde *thow* kenemet to *the* crage, thate *that* kenelengez, He desires to  
know where the  
giant liues,  
I walde cayre to *that* coste, and carpe wythe hyme seluene,  
To trette w~~ith~~ that tyraunt fore tresone of loñdes,<sup>1</sup>  
And take trewe for a tyme, tille it may tyde bettyre "

"Sire, see 3e 3one farlande, w~~ith~~ 3one two fyrez, 880 and is directed  
by the Templar  
how to find his  
abode,  
Thai filnez<sup>2</sup> *that* fende, fraiste whene the lykes,  
Appone the creste of the cragge, by a colde welle,  
That enclosez *the* clyfe w~~ith~~ *the* clere strandez,  
Ther may thow fynde folke fay wyth-owt~~tyne~~ nowmer, where there are  
many captives,  
Mo florenez in faythe thane Fraunce es in aftyre, 885  
And more tresour vn-trewely that traytour has getyne, and vast treasure  
stored up  
Thane in Troye was, as I trowe, *that tyme that it was wonne* "

Thane romyez the ryche kyngre for rewthe of *the* pople, Then Arthur is  
greatly excited  
Raykez ryghte to a tente, and restez no lengere ! 889  
He welterys, he wristeles, he wryngez hys handez !  
Thare was no wy of *this* werlde, *that* wyste whatt he  
menede !

He calles *sir* Cayous *that* of *the* cowpe serfede, 892 and bids Sir  
Cayous and Sir  
Bedevere attend  
him at evening,  
And *sir* Bedvere *the* bolde, *that* bare hys brande ryche,—  
"Luke 3e aftyre euensange be armyde at ryghttez,  
On blonkez by 3one buscayle, by 3one blythe stremez,  
flore I wille passe in pilgremage preuely here-aftyre,  
In the tyme of suppere, whene lordez are seruede, 897 pretending that  
he is going on a  
pilgrimage  
[leaf 63]  
ffor to sekene a saynte be 3one salte stremes,

<sup>1</sup> Originally lordez<sup>2</sup> O, filnez

In seynt Mighelle mounyt, there myraclez are schewede "  
 Then Arthur pro- Aftyre euesange, sir Arthure hyme se[lf]ene 900  
 ceeds to dress  
 and arm himself, Wente to hys wardrope, and warpe of hys wedez,  
 Armede hym in a actone with orfraeez fulle ryche,  
 Abouen *that* a jeryne of Acres owte ouer,  
 Abouen *that* a jesseraunt of jentylle maylez, 904  
 A jupone of Ierodyne jaggede in schrede, z,  
 He brayedez one a bacenett burneschte of syluer,  
 The beste *that* was in Basille, wyth bordurs ryche,  
 The creste and *the* coronalle, enclosed so faire 908  
 Wyth clasppis of clere golde, couched wyth stones,  
 The vesare, *the* aventaille, enarmede so faire,  
 Voyde with-owttyne vice, with wyndowes of syluer,  
 His gloues gaylyche galte, and grauene at *the* hemmez,  
 With *grayuez* and gobelets, glorious of hewe, 913  
 He bracez a brade schelde, and his brande aschez,  
 and mounting a Bounede hyme a broune stede, and one *the* bente houys,  
 brown steed, rides He sterte tille his sterepe and strdez one lofte, 916  
 to the spot where  
 his knyghts await  
 him Streynez hyme stowttly, and sterys hyme faire,  
 Brochez *the* baye stede, and to *the* buske rydez,  
 And there hys knyghtes hyme kepede fulle clenlyche  
 arayede  
 Thane theyroode by *that* ryuer, *that* rynnyd so swythe,  
 There is a grove Thare *the* rynde, ouerrechez with realle bowghez, 921  
 by the side of the  
 river full of game  
 and decked with  
 flowers The roo and *the* rayne-dere reklesse thare romnene,  
 In ranez and in rosers to ryotte *thame* seluene,  
 The fnthez ware florescite with flourez fulle many,  
 Wyth fawcouns and fesantez of ferlyche hewez, 925  
 Here all birds  
 abound, Alle *the* feulez thare fleschez, that flyez with wengez,  
 ffore thare galede *the* gowke one greuez fulle lowde,  
 Wyth alkyne gladchipe *thay* gladdene *thame* seluene  
 and nightingales Of *the* nyghtgale notez *the* noizez was swette, 929  
 make sweet  
 music They threpe wyth the throstilles, thre hundreth at ones!  
 That whate swowyng of watyre, and syngyng of byrdez,  
 It myghte salue hyme of sore, *that* sounde was neuere!  
 Thane ferkez this folke, and one fotte lyghttez, 933  
 Here they leave  
 their horses, and ffestenez thare faire stede, o ferrome by-tweñe,

And thene the kyng kenely comandyde hys knyghtez  
ffor to byde *wit* theare blonkez, and bowne no forthyre,—

the king bids his  
knights to await  
his return

“ffore I wille seke this seynte by my selfe one, 937  
And melle *wit* this mayster mane, *that* this monte zemez,  
And seyne salle 3e offyre, aythyre aftyre *other*,  
Mensfully at Saynt Mighelle fulle myghtty *wit* Criste!”

The kyng coueris *the* cragge *wit* cloughes fulle hye,  
To the creste of the clyffe he clymbez one lofte,  
Keste vpe hys vmbrere, and kenly he lukes, 943  
Caughte of *the* colde wynde to comforthe hym seluene,  
Two fyrez he fyndez fflawmande fulle hye,

The king alone  
ascends the  
[leaf 63, back]  
mountain,

The fourtedele a furlange be-twene *thus* he walkes,  
The waye by *the* welthe strandez he wandyrde hyme one,  
To wette of *the* warlawe, whare *that* he lengez, 948

He ferkez to *the* fyrste fyre, and euene there he fyndez  
A wery wafulle wedowe, wryngande hire handez,  
And gretande on a graue grysely teres,  
Now merkyde one molde, sene myddaye it semede 952

and going to a  
fire which he sees  
he finds a woeful  
widow wringing  
her hands

He saluzede *that* sorowfulle *wit* sittande wordez,  
And fraynez aftyre the fende fairely there-aftyre.

He asks her con-  
cerning the giant.

Thane this wafulle wyfe vū-wynly hym gretez,  
Couerde vp on hire kneesse, and clappyde hire handez;  
Said, “carefulle caremane, thow carpez to lowde! 957  
May 3one warlawe wyt, he worows vs alle!”

She answers with  
terror, and warns  
him that he can  
not hope to con-  
tend with so ter-  
rible a monster.

Weryd worthe *the* wyghte ay, that *the* thy wytt refede,  
That mase the to wayfe here in *thise* wylde lakes! 960  
I warne *the* fore wyrchiþe, *thou* wynlez aftyr sorowe!  
Whedyre buskes *thou* berne? vnblysside *thow* semes!  
Wenez thow to brittene hyme *wit* thy brande ryche?  
Ware thow wyghttere thane Wade or Wawayne owthire,  
Thow wynnys no wyrchiþe, I warne the be-fore! 965  
Thow saynned the vnsekyrly to seke to *these* mountez,  
Siche sex ware to symple to semble *wit* hyme one,  
ffor and thow see hyme *wit* syghte, the seruez no herte,  
To sayne the sekerly, so semez hym huge! 969

Thow arte frely and faire, and in thy fyrste flourez,  
Bot thowarte fay be my faythe, and *that* me for-thynnkys!

Fifty such as Ar-  
thur he could fell  
with his list.

The poor duchess  
has been ravished  
and murdered by  
him, and the dole-  
ful widow, her  
foster mother,  
has buried her,

and will remain  
there till death to  
bemoan her

[leaf 64]  
Then Arthur says  
that he comes  
from the great  
King Arthur on  
a mission to  
treat with the  
giant

The old wife tells  
him that he cares  
nothing for laws  
or treaties, that  
he regards not  
gold or treasure,

only he has a  
famous kirtle  
covered with hair,

which is bordered  
with the beards  
of mighty kings

The tribute of  
fifteen realms is  
sent to him on  
each Easter-eve

Ware syche fyfty one a felde, or one a fane erthe, 972  
The freke walde with hys fyste felle þow at ones !

Loo ! here the duchez dere,—to daye was cho takyne,—  
Depe doluene and dede, dyked in moldez, 975  
He hade morthurede this mylde be myddaye war rongene,  
With-owttyne mercy one molde, I not watte it ment  
He has forsedde hir and fylede, and cho es fay leuede,  
He slewe hir vn-slely, and slitt hir to the nauyll !  
And here haue I bawmede hir, and beryede ther-aftyr,  
ffor bale of the botelesse, blythe be I neuer ! 981  
Of alle the frendez cho hade, there folowede none aftyre,  
Bot I, hir foster modyr of fyftene wynter !

To ferke of this farlande, fande salle I neuer, 984  
Bot here be foundene on felde, till I be fay leuede !”

Thane answers sir Arthure to that alde wyf,  
“ I am comyne fra the conquerour, curtaise and gentille,  
As one of the hathelest of Arthur knyghtez, 988  
Messenger to this myx, for mendemente of the pople,  
To mele with this maister mane, that here this mounte  
þomez,

To trete with this tyraunt for tresour of landez,  
And take trew for a tyme, to bettyr may worthe ” 992

“ 3a, thure wordis are bot waste,” quod this wif thane,  
“ ffor bothe landez and lythes ffulle lyttill by he settes,  
Of rentez ne of rede golde rekkez he neuer, 995  
ffor he wille lenge owt of lawe, as hym selfe thynkes,  
With-owtene licence of lede, as lorde in his awene,

Bot he has a kyrtille one, kepide for hyme seluene,  
That was sponene in Spayne with specyalle byrdez,  
And sythyne garnescht in Grece ffulle graythly to-gedirs ;  
It es hydede alle with hare hally al ouere, 1001

And bordyrde with the berdez of burlyche kynges,  
Crispid and kombide, that kempis may knawe  
Iche kyng by his colour, in kythe there he lengez,  
Here the fermiez he fangez of fyftene rewmez, 1005

ffor ilke Esterne ewyne, how-euer that it falle,  
They send it hyme sothely for saughte of the pople,

Sekerly at *that* sesone with certayne knyghtez, 1008

And he has aschede Arthure alle *this* seuene wyntter  
ffor-thy hurdez he here, to owtraye hys pople,

He has long  
wished for the  
beard of Arthur

Tille *the* Bretones kyngs haue burneschte his lyppys,  
And sent his berde to that bolde wyth his beste berynes,  
Bot thowe hafe broghte *that* berde, bowne the no forthire,  
ffor it es butelesse bale, thowe biddez oghte elles, 1014

ffor he has more tresour to take whene hyme lykez,  
Thane euere aughte Arthure, or any of hys elders,

If thowe hafe broghte *the* berde, he bese more blythe  
Thane *thowe* gafe hym Burgoyne, or Bretayne *the* more,

If he has brought  
the beard, the  
giant will be  
blithe

Bot luke nowe for charitee, *thow* chasty thy lyppes,  
That the no wordez eschape, whate so be-tydez, 1020

But he must ap-  
proach him with  
due caution,

Luke *thi* presante be priste, and presse hym bott lytalle,  
ffor he es at his sowper, he wille be sone greuyde

And *thow* my concelle doo, *thow* dosse of thy clothes,  
And knele in thy kyrtylle, and calle hym thy lorde

and had better  
doff his clothes  
and kneel to him

He sowppes alle *this* sesone with seuene knaue childre,  
Choppid in a chargour of chalke whytt syluer, 1026

He sups at this  
season on seven  
male children  
chopped in a  
charger of chalk-  
white silver

With pekille and powdyre of precious spycez,  
And pyment fulle plenteuous of Portyngale wynes,

Thre balefulle birdez his brochez *they* turne, 1029  
*That* byddez his bedgatt, his byddyng to wyrche;

Three wretched  
women turn his  
spits for him

Siche foure scholde be fay with-in foure hourez,  
Are his fylth ware filled, that his flesch zernes "

[leaf 64, back]

"3a, I haue broghte *the* berde," quod he, "the bettyre  
me lykez, 1033

"Yes," says Ar-  
thur, "I have in-  
deed brought this  
beard, but show  
me where I shall  
find him "

ffor-thi wille I bounne me, and bere it my seluene,  
Bot, lefe, walde *thow* lere me whare *that* lede lengez,  
I salle alowe *the* and I liffe, oure Lorde so me helpe "

"fferke fast to *the* fyre," quod cho, "that flawmez so hye,  
Thare fillis *that* fende hyme, fraist whene the lykez,  
Bot thow moste seke more southe, sydlyngs a lytalle,  
ffor he wille hafe sent hym selfe sex myle large " 1040

Then she directs  
him to approach  
the great fire

To *the* sowre of *the* reke he soghte at *the* gayneste,  
Sayned hyme sekerly with certeyne wordez,  
And sydlyngs of *the* segge the syghte had he rechide,

Arthur goes to  
the fire, and finds  
the giant lying  
extended with  
his back to the  
fire, picking the  
thigh of a man

Roasts of the  
flesh of men  
and cattle are  
spitted together

Then Arthur's  
heart bleeds for  
the woes inflicted  
by this wretch  
He fastens on  
his shield and  
brandishes his  
bright sword,

and right boldly  
addresses the  
giant

He upbraids  
him with his vile  
crimes and his  
unclean meat

For his horrible  
murders of Chris-  
tian children,

he would now  
take vengeance  
on him by the  
aid of St Michael

Then the giant  
stared with  
amazement, and  
gnashed his teeth  
with fury

How vn-semly *that* sott satt sowpande hym one, 1044  
He lay lenand one lange, lugande vn-faue,  
*The* thee of a manns lymme lyfte vp by *the* haunche,  
His bakke, and his bewschers, and his brode lendez,  
He bekez by *the* bale-fyre, and breklesse hymme semede,  
*Thare* ware rostez fulle ruyde, and rewfulle bredez, 1049  
Beerynes and bestaile brochede to geders,  
Cowlefulle cramede of crysmede chilydre,  
Sum as brede brochede, and bierdez *thame* tourmede

And *thane* this comlych kyng, by-cause of his pople,  
His herte bledez for bale, one bent ware he standez '  
Thane he dressede one his schelde, schuntes no lengere,  
Braundesche his bryghte swerde by *the* bryghte hilter,  
Raykez to-warde *the* renke reghte w<sup>th</sup> a ruyde wille,  
And hyely haulsez *that* hulke w<sup>th</sup> hawtayne wordez,—

“Now, alle-weldand Gode, *that* wys, bepez vs alle,  
Giff the sorowe and syte, sotte, there thou rygges, 1060  
ffor the fulsomete freke that fourmede was eue'e '  
ffouly thou fedys the, *the* fende haue thi saule '  
Here es cury vn-clene, carle, be my trowthe,  
Caffe of creatours alle, thou curssede wriche ' 1064

Be-cause that *thow* killide has *thuse* cresmede chilydre,  
Thow has marters made, and broghte oute of lyfe,  
*That* here are brochede one bente, and brittenede w<sup>th</sup>  
thi handez, 1067

I salle merke *the* thy mede, as *thou* has myche serfede,  
Thurghe myghte of seynt Mighelle, *that* *this* monte zemes '  
And for this faure ladye, *that* *thow* has fey leuyde,  
And *thus* forcede one foulde, for fylth of *thi* selfene '  
Dresse the now, dogge-sone, the deuelle haue *thi* saule '  
ffor *thow* salle dye this day, thurghe dynt of my handez '”

Thane glonede *the* glotone and glorede vn-faire,  
He grewnede as a grewhounde, w<sup>th</sup> grysly tuskes,  
He gapede, he groned faste, w<sup>th</sup> grucchande latez, 1076  
ffor grefe of *the* gude kyng, *that* hymme w<sup>th</sup> grame gretez '  
His fax and his foretoppe was filterede to-geders,

And owte of his face fome ane halfe fote large ,  
 His frount and his forheuede, alle was it ouer, 1080  
 As *the felle* of a froske, and fraknede it semede,  
 Huke-nebbyde as a hawke, and a hoie berde,  
 And herede to *the hole eyghne* with hyngande browes ,  
 Harske as a hunde-fisch, hardly who so lukez, 1084  
 So was *the hyde of that hulke* hally al ouer !  
 Erne had he fulle huge, and vgly to schewe,  
 With eghne fulle horrible, and ardaunt for sothe ,  
 flatt-mowthede as a fluke, with fieryande lypmys, 1088  
 And *the flesche* in his fortethe fowly as a bere  
 His berde was brothy and blake, *that tille* his brest  
 rechede,  
 Grassede as a mereswyne with corkes fulle huge,  
 And alle falterde *the flesche* in his foule lypmys, 1092  
 Ilke wrethe as a wolfe-heuede, it wraythe owtt at ones !  
 Bullenekkyde was *that bierne*, and brade in the scholders,  
 Brok-brestede as a brawne, with brustils fulle large,  
 Ruyd armes as an ake with rusclede sydes, 1096  
 Lyme and leskes fulle lothyne, leue 3e for sothe  
 Schouelle-fotede was *that schalke*, and schaylande hyme  
 semyde,  
 With schankez vn-schapy, schowande to-gedyrs ,  
 Thykke theese as a thursse, and thikkere in *the hanche*,  
 Greesse growene as a galte, fulle grylych he lukez ! 1101  
 Who *the lenghe of the lede* lelly accountes,  
 fro *the face to the fote*, was fyfe fadome lange !  
 Thane stertez he vp sturdely one two styffe schankez,  
 And sone he caughte hyme a clubb alle of clene yryne !  
 He walde hafe kyllede *the kyng* with his kene wapene,  
 Bot thurgh *the crafte of Cryste* 3it *the carle* failede ,  
 The creest and *the coronalle*, *the claspes of syluer*, 1108  
 Clenly with his clubb he crasschede doune at onez !  
 The kyng castes vp his schelde, and couers hym faire,  
 And with his burlyche brande a box he hyme reches ;  
 fulle butt in *the frunt the fromonde* he hittez, 1112

Out of his mouth  
came smoke

His forehead was  
like the fell of a  
frog

He was hook-  
nosed like a  
[leaf 65]  
hawk, with hair  
up to his eyes, and  
beetle brows

His skin was hard  
as that of a dog-  
fish, his ears  
huge and ugly  
his eyes horrible  
and burning

Flat mouthed,  
with grinning  
lips, and jaws  
like a bear

A black beard  
reached to his  
breast, with  
mighty bistles

The flesh of his  
lips was in un-  
even folds, each  
fold, like an out-  
law, twisted it  
self out

He was bull  
necked and broad  
in the shoulders,  
breasted like a  
boar with huge  
bristles, his arms  
like an oak, his  
limbs and flanks  
loathly, shovel  
footed and scaly,  
with unshapely  
shanks,

of gigantic thick-  
ness in his  
haunches

In height, full  
five fathoms

Up starts this  
fell giant, and  
seizing an iron  
club, aims a blow  
at Arthur.

The king catches  
it on his shield,  
and returns the  
blow with his  
sword right upon  
the forehead



The bright blade  
pierces to the  
brain  
The giant wipes  
his face with his  
hands, and strikes  
fiercely at the  
king  
Arthur draws  
back,

and then drives  
his sword into the  
giant's haunch

The monster  
roars and strikes  
at random  
So mighty is his  
stroke that it  
pene rates a  
sword's length  
into the ground  
The king nearly  
swoons at the  
noise of the blow,  
but quickly  
strikes him with  
his sword  
His entrails and  
blood gush out.

[leaf 65, back]  
Then throwing  
away his club, the  
giant seizes Ar-  
thur in his arms

The baleful birds  
pray for the suc-  
cess of Arthur

They have a  
fearful wrestling  
match, and fall  
from the top of  
the cliff down to  
the shore

That the burnyschit blade to the brayne rynnez,  
He feyede his fysnamye with his foule hondez,  
And frappez faste at hys face feisely *ther*-aflyre !  
The kyng chaungez his fote, eschewes a lyttille, 1116  
Ne had he eschapede *that* choppe, cheuede had euylle,  
He folowes in fersly, and festenesse a dynte  
Hye vpe one *the* hanche, with his haide wapayne,  
That he billid *the* swerde halfe a fote large, 1120  
The hott blode of *the* hulke vn-to *the* hylte rynnez,  
Ewyne in-to jumette the gyaunt he hyttez,  
Iust to *the* gentales,<sup>1</sup> and jaggede *thame* in sondre !

Thane he romyede and iarede, and ruydly he strykez  
fulle egerly at Arthure, and one the erthe luttez 1125  
A swerde lenghe with-in *the* swarthe, he swappez at ones,  
That nere swounes *the* kyng for swoughe of his dynttez !  
Bot ȝit the kyng sweperly fulle swythe he by-swenkez,  
Swappez in with the swerde *that* it *the* swange brystedde,  
Bothe *the* guttez and the gorre guschez owte at ones,  
That alle englaymez *the* gresse, one grounde *ther* he  
standez ! 1131

Thane he castez the clubb, and the kyng hentez,  
On *the* creeste of *the* cragg he caughte hyme in armez,  
And enclosez hyme clenly, to cruschene hys rybbez,  
So harde haldez he *that* hende, *that* nere husherte brystez !  
Thane *the* balefulle bierdez bowner to *the* erthe, 1136  
Kneland and cryande, and clappide *theire* handez,—  
“Criste comforthe ȝone knyghte, and kepe hym fro  
sorowe,

And latte neuer ȝone fende felle hyme olyfe !”

ȝitt es *the* warlow so wyghte, he welters hyme vnder,  
Wrothely *thai* wrythyns and wrystille to-gederz, 1141  
Welters and walowes ouer with-in *thase* buskez,  
Tumbellez and turnes faste, and terez *thaire* wedez,  
Vn-tenderly fro *the* toppe *thai* tiltine to-gederz, 1144  
Whilome Arthure ouer, and *other*-while vndyre,  
fro *the* heghe of *the* hylle vn-to *the* harde roche .

<sup>1</sup> MS genitates

They feyne neuer are they falle at *the* flode merkes,  
 Bot Arthur *with* ane anlace egerly smyttez, 1148 Arthur stabs the  
giant,  
 And hittez euer in the hulke vp to *the* hultez  
*The* theeffe at *the* dede-thrawe so throlly hyme thyngez,  
*That* three rybbys in his syde he thyrstez in sundere ' who in his death  
struggle breaks  
three of Arthur's  
ribs  
 Thene *sir* Kayous *the* kene vn-to *the* kynge styrtetz,—  
 Said, "allas ! we are lorne, my lorde es confundede,  
 Ouer-fallene *with* a fende ! vs es fulle hapnede ! 1154  
 We mone be forfeted in faith, and flemyde for euer !"  
*Thay* hafe vp hys hawberke *thane*, and handilez *ther*- His knights find  
him lying ex-  
hausted  
 vndyre,  
 His hyde and his haunche eke, one heghte to *the*  
 schuldrez,  
 His flawnke and his feletez, and his faire sydez, 1158  
 Bothe his bakke and his bieste, and his bryghte armez  
*Thay* ware fayne *that they* fande no flesche entamede,  
 And for *that* journee made joye, *thir* gentille knyghttez  
 "Now, certez," saise Sir Bedwere, "it semez, be my  
 Lorde ! 1162 Sir Bedever  
speaks face-  
tiously of this  
saint whom Ar-  
thur had sought.  
 He sekez seyntez bot seldene, *the* sorere he grypes,  
*That thus* clekys this corsaunt owte of *thir* heghe clyffez,  
 To carye forthe siche a carle at close hym in siluere,  
 Be Myghelle, of syche a makk I hafe myche wondyre  
 That euer owre soueraygne Lorde suffers hyme in heuene,  
 And alle seyntez be syche, *that* seruez oure Lorde, 1168 If all saints are  
like him no saint  
would he be  
 I salle neuer no seynt bee, be my fadyre sawle !"  
 Thane bouredez *the* bolde kynge at Bedvere wordez,—  
 "This seynt haue I soghte, so helpe me owre Lorde !  
 ffor-thy brayd owtte *this* brande, and broche hyme to *the*  
 herte , 1172 Arthur bids him  
stab the monster  
to the heart, to  
make sure of him,  
for only once be-  
fore had he met  
with such a ter-  
rible foe  
 Be sekere of this sergeaunt, he has me sore greuede !  
 I faghte noghte wyth syche a freke *this* fyftene wyntyrs,  
 Bot in *the* montez of Araby I mett syche another,  
 He was *the* forcyere be ferre *that* had I nere fundene,  
 Ne had my fortune bene faire, fey had I leuede ! 1177  
 Onone stryke of his heuede, and stake it there-aftyre,  
 Gife it to thy sqwyere, fore he es wele horsede ,  
 He bids them cut  
off his head,

and bear it first  
to Sir Hoel,  
[leaf 66]

then to Barflete,  
and set it on the  
barbican

His sword and  
shield and the  
giant's club are  
to be fetched from  
the hull

They may take  
what treasure  
they will all Ar  
thur desires is the  
kirtle and the  
club

The affair was  
kept a secret till  
break of day

Then the people  
kneel before Ar  
thur, and thank  
and praise him  
for slaying the  
giant

Arthur ascribes  
all to God.

He bids his fol  
lowers distribute

Bere it to *sir Howelle*, *that* es in harde bandez, 1180  
And byd hym herte hym wele, his enemy es destruede !

Syne bere it to Barflete, and brace it in tryne,  
And sett it on the barbycane, biernes to schewe

My brande and my brode schelde apone *the bent lygge*,  
On *the creeste of the cragge*, thare fyrste we encontiede,  
And *the clubb thar-by*, alle of clene irene,

*That* many Cristene has kyllde in *Constantyne landez*,  
fferke to the farlande, and fetche me *that wapene*, 1188  
And late founde tille oure flete, in flode *thare* it lengez

If thow wylle any tresour, take whate the lykez,  
Haue I the kyrtylle and *the clubb*, I couerte noghte elles ! "

Now *they* caue to *the cragge*, *thuse* comlyche knyghtez,  
And broghte hym *the brade schelde*, and his bryghte  
wapene, 1193

*The clubb* and *the cotte aHs*, Syr Kayous hym seluene,  
And kayres with conquerour, the kynggez to schewe,  
That in couerte *the kyng* helde close to hym seluene,  
Whilles clene day fro *the clowde* clymbyd on loft

Be that to courte was comene clamour fulle huge,  
And be-foie *the comlyche kyng* they knelyd alle at  
ones,— 1199

" Welcome, oure hege lorde, to lang has thow duellyde !  
*Gouernour* vndyr Gode, graytheeste and noble,  
To whame grace es graunted, and gyffene at his wille !  
Now thy comly come has comforthede vs alle !

Thow has in thy realtee reuengyde thy pople ! 1204  
Thurghe helpe of thy hande, thyne enemye are stryede,  
That has thy renkes ouer-ronne, and reffe them there  
childyre !

Whas neuer rewme owte of araye so redyly releuede ! "  
Thane *the conquerour* cristenly carpez to his pople,

" Thankes Gode," quod he, " of *this* grace, and no gome  
elles, 1209

ffor it was neuer manns dede, bot myghte of Hym selfene,  
Or myracle of hys modyre, *that* mylde es tille alle ! "

He somond than *the schippemeue* scharpely *ther*-aftyre,

To schake furthe with *the* schyre mene to schifte *the* the grūt a treasure among the clergy and people  
gudez ,

“ Alle *the* myche tresour that traytour had wonnene,

To comouns of the contré, clergy and *other*,

Luke it be done and delte to my dere pople, 1216

That none pleyne of theire parte, o peyne of *your* lyfez ”

He comande hys cosyne, with knyghtlyche wordez,

To make a kyrke on *the* cragg, thei the corse lengez,

And a couent there-in, Criste for to serfe, 1220

In mynde of *that* martyre, *that* in *the* monte rystez

Qwen Sir Arthur the kyng had kylled *the* gyaunt,

Than blythely fro Barefflete he huskes one *the* morne, When the giant is slun, Arthur moves from Barefflete to Castle Blanc

With his batelle one brede, by *tha* blythe stremes , 1224

To-warde Castelle Blanke he chesez hym the waye,

Thurghe a faire champayne, vndyr schalke hyllis ,

The kyng fraystez a furth ouer the fresche strandez,

ffoundez with his faire folke ouer as hym lykez 1228 [leaf 66, back]

ffurthe stepez that steryne, and strekez his tentis

One a strenghe by a streme, in *thas* straytt landez

Onone aftyre myddaye, in the mene while,

Thare comez two messangers of tha fere marchez, 1232 Then come two messengers from the Marshal of France, who acquaint Arthur

ffa *the* marschalle of Fraunce, and menskfully hym gretes,

Be-soghte hyme of sucour, and saide hyme *thuse* wordez,—

“ Sir, thi marschalle, *thi* mynstre, thy *me*cy be-sekez,

Of thy mekille magestee, fore mendement of thi pople,

Of *thuse* marchez-mene, that thus are myskaryede,

And thus merrede amange, maugree theire eghne ,

I witter *the the* emperour es entirde in-to Fraunce,

With osten of enmyse, orrible and huge , 1240

Brynnez in Burgoyne thy burghes so ryche,

And brittenes thi baronage, that bieldez *thare*-in ,

He encrochez kenely by craftez of armez,

Cowntrese and castelles *that* to thy coroun lañgez , 1244 seizing castles,

Confoundez thy comouns, clergy and *other* , confounding the commons,

Bot thow comfurth theme, *sir* kyng, couer salle they

neue !

He fellez forestez fele, forrayse thi landez,

felling forests,

- ffyrsthez no fraunchez, bot fraisez the pople , 1248  
 taking goods, *Thus* he fellez thi folke, and fangez theire gudez !  
 ffremedly the Franche tunge fey es be-lefede  
 He drawes in-to douce Fraunce, as Duche-men tellez,  
 Dresside *with* his dragouns, dredfulle to schewe , 1252  
 Alle to dede they dyghte *with* dynttys of swerdder,  
 killing dukes and douze peers Dukez and dusperes, *that* dreches thare-me ,  
 ffor-thy the lordez of the lande, ladys and *other*,  
 Prayes the for Petyr luffe, *the* apostylls of Rome,  
 Sen thow arte present in place, *that* thow wille profyre  
 make  
 Therefore they desire Arthur s help  
 To *that* perulous prynce, be processe of tyme 1258  
 He ayers by 3one hilles, 3one heghe holtez vndyr,  
 Hufes thare *with* hale strenghe of haythene kynges ,  
 Helpe nowe for His lufe, that heghe in heuene sittez,  
 And talke trustly to theme, *that* thus vs destroyes ! ”  
 He sends some of his knights to the emperour,  
 The kyng biddis *sir* Boice, “ buske the be-lyfe !  
 Take *with* the *sir* Berille, and Bedwere the ryche, 1264  
*Sir* Gawayne and *sir* Gryme, these galyarde knyghtez,  
 And graythe 3owe to 3one grene wode, and gose ouer  
*ther* nedes ,  
 Saise to *sir* Lucius, to vn-lordly he wyrkez,  
 Thus letherly agaynes law to lede my pople , 1268  
 I lette hyme or oghte lange, 3if me *the* lyffe happene,  
 Or many lyghte salle lawe, *that* hyme ouere lande folowes  
 Comande hym kenely wyth crewelle wordez,  
 to bid him depart out of his kingdom, or meet him in battle  
 Cayre owte of my kyngryke *with* his kydd knyghtez ,  
 In caase that he wille noghte, *that* cursede wreeche,  
 Come for his curtaisie, and countere me ones ! 1274  
 Thane salle we iekkene fulle rathe, whatt ryghte *that* he  
 claymes,  
 Thus to ryot *this* rewme and raunsone the pople !  
 Thare salle it derely be delte *with* dynttez of handez  
 The Dryghttene at Domesdaye dele as hyme lykes ! ”  
 The knights go on their errand glittering in gold upon great steeds  
 Now *the* graythe theme to goo, *the*s galyarde knyghttez,  
 Alle gleterande in golde, appone grete stedes, 1280  
 To-warde *the* grene wode, *that* *with* growndene wapyne,

To grete wele the grett lorde, that wolde be grefede sone

Thise hende houez on a hille by *the* holte eynes,

Be-helde *the* howsyng full of hethene kynges—

They herde in there herbergage hundrethz fulle many,

Hoinez of olyfantez fulle helych blawene—

They see the luxurious camp of the heathen kings,

Palaisez proudliche pyghte, *that* palyd ware ryche,

Of palle and of purple, wyth pycyous stones, 1288

Pensels and pomelle of ryche prynee armez,

Fighte in *the* playne mede, *the* pople to schewe

And thane the Romayns so ryche had arayed their

and the rich tents of the Romans

tentez,

On rawe by *the* ryuere, vndyr *the* round hillez, 1292

The emperour for honour ewyne in the myddes,

Wyth egles al ouer ennelled so faire

And saw hyme and *the* sowdane, and senatours many,

Seke to-warde a sale with sextene kynges, 1296

The Roman emperor and the sultan are going to banquet toge-ther

Syland softly in, swettly by theme selfene,

To sowpe withe *that* soueraygne, ffulle selcouthe metez

Nowe they wende ouer the watyre, *thise* wychchipfulle

knyghttez,

Thurghe *the* wode to *the* wone, there the wyese rystez,

Reght as *they* hade weschene, and went to *the* table,

Sir Wawayne *the* worthethy vn-wynly he spekes,—

“The myghte *and the* maíste, *that* menskes vs alle,

The knights present themselves Sir Gawaine delivers the message,

That was merked and made thurghe *the* myghte of Hym

seluene,

1304

Gyffe þow sytte in þowr sette, Sowdane and *othe*r,

That here are semblede in sale, vn-sawghte mott þe

worthe !

And *the* fals heretyke, *that* emperour hym callez,

That occupyes in erreure the empyre of Rome, 1308

Sir Arthure herytage, *that* honourable kyng,

That alle his auncestres aughte bot Vtere hyme one,

That ilke cursyng *that* Cayme kaghte for his brothyre,

Cleffe one *the*, eukewalde, with croune ther thow lengez,

and upbraids with haughty words the Roman emperor,

ffor the vnlordlyeste lede *that* I on lukede euer ! 1313

My lordemervantes hym mekylle, mane, be my trouthe,

Why thow morthires his mene, *that* no mysse serues,  
 Comouns of *the* countré, clergye and *other*, 1316  
*That* are noghte coupable *ther-in*, ne knawes noght in  
 armez

bids him depart,  
 or do battle with  
 [leaf 87, baci]  
 the king

ffor-thi the comelyche kyng, curtays and noble,  
 Comandez *the* kenely to kaire of his landes,  
 Ore elles for thy knyghthede encontre hyme ones, 1320  
 Sen *thow* couettes the coroune, latte it be declarede '  
 I hafe dyschargide me here, chalange whoo lykez,  
 Be fore alle thy cheualrye, cheftaynes and *other*

Then he asks for  
 an answer

Schape vs an ansuere, and schunte *thow* no lengere,  
*That* we may schifte at *the* schorte, and schewe to my  
 lorde " 1325

The emperor  
 replies,

The *emperour* ansuerde wyth austeryne wordez,  
 " 3e are with myne enmy, sir Arthure hyme seluene '  
 It es none honowr to me to owtray lys knyghttez,  
 Thoghe 3e bee nous mene, *that* ayres one his nedez,  
 Bot say to thy soueraygne, I send hyme thes wordez,  
 Ne ware it for reuerence of my ryche table,  
 Thou sulde repent fulle rathe of *this* ryde wordez ' 1332  
 Siche a rebawde as *thowe* rebuke any lordez,  
 Wyth theire retenuz arrayede, fulle realle *and* noble '

threatening the  
 knights for their  
 audacity

He will stay in  
 Arthurs land as  
 long as he pleases,

Here wille I suggourne, whilles me lefe thynkes,  
 And sythene seke in by Sayne with solace *ther-aftere* ,  
 Ensege all *tha* cetese be *the* salte strandez, 1337  
 And seyne ryde in by Rone, *that* rynnez so faire,  
 And of alle his ryche castelles rusche doun *the* wallez ,  
 I salle noghte lefe in Paresche, by processe of tyme,  
 His parte of a pechelyne, proue whene hyme lykes ' "

and destroy his  
 cities and castles

Whereupon Sir  
 Gawaine desires  
 himself to fight  
 with him,

"Now, certez," sais sir Wawayne, "myche wondyre  
 haue I, 1342  
*That* syche an alfyne as *thow* dare speke syche wordez '  
 I had leuer thene alle Fraunce, *that* heuede es of rewmes,  
 ffyghte with the faythefully one felde be oure one "

but Sir Gayous,  
 uncle to the  
 Roman emperor,  
 answers and  
 charges the Brit-  
 ish knights with  
 being braggarts

Thane answers *su* Gayous fulle gobbede wordes,—  
 Was eme to *the* *emperour*, and erle hyme selfene,—  
 "Euere ware *thes* Bretouns braggers of olde ! 1348

Loo ! how he blawles hyme for hys bryghte wedes,  
 As he myghte bryttyne vs alle *wit* his brande ryche '  
 3itt he berkes myche boste, 3one boy *there* he standes !"

Thane greuyde *sir* Gawayne at his grett wordes, 1352  
 Graythes to-warde *the* gome *wit* grucchande herte ,  
*Wit* hys stelyne brande he strykes of hys heuede,  
 And sterlttes owtte to hys stede, and *wit* his stale  
 wendes !

On this Sir Ga-  
 waine rushes at  
 him and strikes  
 off his head

Thurgh *the* wacches *they* wente, thes wirchipfulle  
 knyghtez, 1356

Then the British  
 knights fly with  
 all speed

And fyndez in theire fare-waye wondyrlyche many ,  
*Oue* *the* watye *they* wente by wyghtnesse of horses,  
 And tuke wynde as *they* walde by *the* wodde hemmes  
 Thane folous frekly one fote frekkes ynewe, 1360

And of *the* Romayns arrayed appone ryche stedes,  
 Chasede thurgh *a* champayne oure cheualrous knyghtez,  
 Tille *a* cheefe forest, *one* schalke whitte horses  
 Bot *a* freke alle in fyne golde, and fretted in salle, 1364  
 Come *forther*maste on *a* fresone, in flawmande wedes ,  
*A* faire floreschte spere in fewtyre he castes,  
 And folowes faste *one* owre folke, and freschelye ascryez,

The Romans give  
 chase

Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude appone *a* graye stede,  
 He gryppes hym *a* grete spere, and graythely hyme hittez ,  
 Thurgh *the* guttez in-to *the* gorre he gyrdes hyme ewyne,  
 That the groundene stele glydez to his herte ! 1371

[leaf 68]  
 The foremost of  
 the pursuers is  
 slain by Sir Ga-  
 waine

The gome and *the* grette horse at *the* grounde lyggez,  
 ffulle gryselyche gronande, for grefe of his woundez  
 Thane presez *a* preker ine, fulle proudly arayede,  
 That beres alle of *pourpour*, palyde *wit* syluer  
 Byggly on *a* broune stede he poffers fulle large 1376

He was *a* paynyme of Perse *that thus* hyme persuede  
 Sir Boys vn-abaaste alle he buskes hyme *a*-gaynes,  
*Wit* *a* bustous launce he berez hyme thurgh *e*,  
*That the* breme and *the* brade schelde appone *the* bente  
 lyggez ! 1380

Another knight,  
 a paynim of  
 Persia, is thrust  
 through by Sir  
 Bois

And he bryngez furthe the blade, *and* bownez to his  
 felowez



- Sir Feltemour  
seeks to avenge  
Sir Gayous,  
Thanes! Feltemour of myghte, a man mekylle praysede,  
Was mouede one his manere, and manacede fulle faste,  
He graythes to sir Gawayne graythely to wyrche, 1384  
ffor grefe of sir Gayous, *that es one grounde leuede*  
Thane sir Gawayne was glade, agayne hyme he rydez,  
Wyth Galuth his gude swerde graythely hyme hyttez,  
The knyghte one *the* coursere he cleuede in sondyre, 1388  
Clenlyche fro *the* croune his corse he dyuysyde,  
And *thus* he killez *the* knyghte with his kydd wapene!
- but Sir Gawayne  
cleaves him  
asunder  
Than a ryche mane of Rome relyede to his byerns,—  
“It salle repent vs fulle sore and we ryde forthure!  
3one are bolde bosturs, *that* syche bale wyrkez, 1393  
It be-felle hym fulle foule, *that thame* so fyrste namede”
- The rich Romans  
return,  
Thane *the* riche Romayns retou nes *thaire* bryddilles  
To *thaire* tentis in tene, telles theme lordez  
How sir Manschalle de Mowne es on *the* monte lefede,  
ffore-justyde at that journee, for his grett japez  
Bot thare chazez one oure mene cheualhous knyghtez,  
but five thousand  
horsemen still  
pursue the  
knights,  
ffyfe thosande folke appone faire stedes, 1400  
ffaste to a foreste ouer a felle watyr,  
That fillez fro *the* falow see fyfty myle large
- and fell upon  
an ambush of  
Britons,  
Thare ware Bretons enbuschide, and banarettez noble,  
Of *the* cheualrye cheefe of *the* kynges chambyre, 1404  
Seese theme chase oure mene, and changene *theire* horsez,  
And choppe doune cheftaynes, that they moste chargyde
- who break out  
suddenly on  
them,  
Thane *the* enbuschement of Bretons brake owte at ones,  
Brothely at banere, and Bedwyne knyghtez, 1408  
Arrestede of *the* Romayns, *that* by *the* fyrthe rydez,  
Alle *the* realeste renkes *that* to Rome lengez,  
Thay iche on *the* enmyse and egerly strykkys,
- with shouts of  
“Arthur.”  
Eries of Inglande, and “Arthure!” ascryes, 1412  
Thrughe bines and bryghte schelde, bretez they thyrl,  
Bretons of the boldeste with *theire* bryghte swerde
- [leaf 68, back]  
The Romans are  
defeated and  
driven back,  
Thare was Romayns ouer-redyne, and ruydly wondyde,  
Arrestede as rebawdez, with ryotous knyghttez! 1416  
The Romaynes owte of araye remouede at ones,  
And rydes awaye in a rowtte, for reddoure it semys!

To *the* *senatour* Petyl a sandes-mane es *commyne*,  
 And saide, "*sir*, sekyrly, *your* seggez are suppryssid!"  
 Than tene thowsande mene he semblede at ones,  
 And sett sodanly one oure seggez, by *the* salte strandez,  
 Than ware Bretons abaiste, and greuede a lyttile,  
 Bot 31t the banerettez bolde, and bachellers noble, 1424  
 Brekes that battailles<sup>1</sup> with brestez of stedes,  
 Sir Boice and his bolde mene myche bale wyrkes!  
 The Romaynes redyes *thane*, arrayez *thane* better,  
 And al to-ruscheez oure mene withe theire ryste horsez,  
 Arestede of the richeste of *the* Rounde Table,  
 Ouer-rydez oure rerewaide, and grette rewthe wyrkes!

but the Senator  
 Peter sends ten  
 thousand men

Thane the Bretons on *the* bente habyddez no lengere,  
 Bot fleede to *the* foreste, and the feelde leuede, 1432  
 Sir Beryll es borne downe and *sir* Boice taken,  
 The beste of oure bolde mene vnblythely wondyde,  
 Bot 31t oure stale one a strenghe stotais a lyttile,  
 Alletostonayedewith<sup>2</sup> thestokes<sup>2</sup> of *the* steryneknyghtez,  
 Made sorowe fore theire soueraygne, *that* so *there* was  
 nomene,

The Britons are  
 repulsed, and  
 fly to the forest

Sir Beryll is borne  
 down and Sir  
 Boice taken,

but agun they  
 make a little  
 stand,

grieving for the  
 loss of their  
 leader, and pray  
 for succour

Be-soughte Gode of socure, sende whene hym lykyde!

Than *commez* *sir* Idrus, armede vp at alle ryghttez,  
 Wyth fyue hundrethe mene appone faure stedes, 1440  
 ffrayne faste at oure folke freschely *thane*-aftyre,  
 3if *ther* frendez ware ferre, *that* one *the* feldes foundide  
 Thane sais *sir* Gawayne, "so me God helpe!"  
 We hafe bene chased to daye, and chullede as hares,  
 Rebuyked with Romaynes appone *theire* ryche stedes,  
 And we lurkede vndyr lee as lowrande wreches! 1446  
 I luke neuer one my lorde *the* dayes of my lyfe,  
 And weso lytherly hym helpe, *that* hymeso welelykede!"

Sir Idrus comes  
 to their aid with  
 five hundred  
 men

Sir Gawaine la-  
 ments the check  
 which Arthur's  
 men had re-  
 ceived.

Thane the Bretons brothely brochez theire stedeze,  
 And boldly in batelle appone *the* bent rydes, 1450  
 Alle *the* ferse mene be-fore frekly ascryes,  
 fferkand in *the* foreste, to freschene *thane* selfene.  
 The Romaynes thane redyly arrayes *thane* bettyre,

The British re-  
 turn to the fray

The Romans pre-  
 pare themselves  
 against them

<sup>1</sup> MS. batailles

<sup>2</sup> strokes

One rawe on a rowm felde, reghttez theire wapyns,  
By *the* ryche reuare, and rewles *the* pople,  
And with reddour *sir* Boice es in areste haldene 1456

Now thei semblede vnsaughte by *the* salte strandez,  
Saddly theis sekere menn settys *theire* dynttez,  
With lufly launcez one lofte they luyshene to-gedyes,  
In Lorayne so lordlye on leppande stedes 1460

A fierce battle  
ensues

Thare ware gomes thurghe-gurde with grundyne wapynes,  
Grisely gayspande with grucchande lotes<sup>1</sup>

Grete lordes of Greke greffede so hye,

[leaf 69]

Swyftly with swerdes, they swappene there-aftyre, 1464  
Swappez doune ffulle sweperlye swelltande knyghtez,<sup>1</sup>  
That alle swellttez one swarthe, that they ouer-swyngene,  
So many sweys in swoghe swounande att ones<sup>1</sup>

Sir Gawaine does  
mighty deeds of  
valour

Syr Gaweayne the gracyous ffulle graythelye he wyrkkes,  
The gretteste he grettez with grieslye wondēs,  
With Galuth he gyrdez doune ffulle galyarde knyghtez,  
fore greefe of *the* grett lorde so grymlye he strykez<sup>1</sup>  
He rydez furthe ryallye and redely there-aftyre, 1472

Thare this realle renke was in areste haldene,  
He ryfez *the* rannke stele, he ryghttez *theire* brenez,  
And reftethem *the* ryche mane, and radeto his strengthes

The Senator Peter  
comes against  
him,

The senatour Peter thane persewede hyme aftyre, 1476  
Thurghethe presse of *the* pople, with his pryce knyghttes,  
Appertly fore *the* prysonere proues his strengthes,  
With prekers the proudeste that to *the* presse lengez,  
Wrothely on *the* wrange hande *sir* Gawayne he strykkes,  
With a wapene of were vnwynly hyme hittez, 1481

but in spite of  
him Sir Gawaine  
rescues Sir Boice

The breyn one *the* bakhalfe he brystez in sondyre<sup>1</sup>  
Bot ȝit he broghte forthe *sir* Boyce, for alle *theire* bale  
biernes<sup>1</sup>

Rejoiced at this  
the British press  
on more boldly

Thane *the* Bretones boldely braggene *theire* tromppez,  
And fore blysse of *sir* Boyce was broghte owtte of bandez,  
Boldely in batelle they bere doune knyghtes, 1486  
With brandes of broune stele *they* brettene maylez,  
Thay stekede stedys in stoure with stelene wapynes,

<sup>1</sup> MS knyghtez

And alle stewe de wyth stienghe, *that stode theme agaynes* <sup>1</sup>

Sir Idrus fitz Ewayne *thane* "Arthure <sup>1</sup>" ascryeez,

Assemblez *one the* *senatour* wyth sextene knyghttez,

Of *the* *sekereste mene that* to oure syde lengede 1492

Sodanly in a soppe they sett in att ones,

ffoynes faste att *the* fore breste wth flawmande swerdez,

And feghttes faste att *the* fronte freschely *thare*-aftyre,

ffelles fele on *the* felde appone *the* ferrere syde, 1496

ffey on *the* faire felde by *tha* fresche strandez

Bot *sir* Idrus fytz Ewayne *anters* hyme seluene,

And *enters* in anly, and egyrly strykez,

Sekez to *the* *senatour* and sesez his brydille, 1500

Vnsaughtely he saide hyme *these* sittande wordez,—

"3elde *the, sir,* 3apely, 3ife *thou thi* lyfe 3ernez,

fforegyftez *that thou* gyffe may, *thou* 3eme now *the* selfene,

ffoie dredlez dreche *thow,* or droppe any wylez, 1504

Thow salle dy *this* daye thorowe dyntt of my handez!"

"I ascente," *quod the* *senatour,* "so me Criste helpe <sup>1</sup>

So *that* I be safe broghte be-fore *the* kynge selucne,

Raunsons me resonabullye, as I may ouer-reche, 1508

Aftyre my renttez in Rome may redly forthire"

Thane answers *sir* Idrus with austeryne wordez,

"Thow salle hafe condycyone, as *the* kynge lykes,

Whene thow comes to *the* kyth there the *courte* haldez,

In caase his concelle bee to kepe the no langere, 1513

To be killyde at his commandment his knyghttez be-fore"

Thay ledde hyme furthe in *the* rowte, and lached ofe

his wedes,

Lefte hym wyth Lyonelle and Lowelle hys brothire

O-lawe in *the* launde *thane,* by *the* lythe strandez,

Sir Lucus lygge-mene <sup>1</sup> loste are fore euer <sup>1</sup>

The *senatour* Peter es prysoner takyne <sup>1</sup>

1519

Of Perce and of Porte Iaffe fulle many puce knyghtez,

And myche pople wyth alle *perischede thame* selfene <sup>1</sup>

ffor presse of *the* passage, they plungeded <sup>2</sup> at onez <sup>1</sup>

Thare myghte mene see Romainez rewfully wondyde,

<sup>1</sup> Or legge-mene

<sup>2</sup> MS repeats they plungeded

Sir Idrus, with sixteen knights, attacks the senator,

and takes him prisoner

The senator desires to be brought to the king

Sir Idrus answers him roughly

[leaf 69, back]

He gives the senator into the charge of Sir Lionel and Sir Lowell

Many of the Romans are slain

Ouer-redyne with renkes of the Round Table ' 1524  
 In the raikes of the furthe they rightene theire brenys,  
 That iame alle one reede blode redylle alle ouer ,  
 They raughte in the rerewarde fulle ryotous knyghtez,  
 ffor raunsone ' of rede golde and realle stedys , 1528  
 Radly relayes, and restez theire horsez,

The knights ride  
 back towards the  
 king, and send  
 him the news of  
 their success

In rowtte to the ryche kynge they rade al at onez  
 A knyghte cayrez be-fore, and to the kynge telles,—  
 “Sir, here commez thy messangerez with myrthez fro  
 the mountez, 1532

Thay hafe benemachede to daye with mene of the marchez,  
 ffore-maglade in the marras with merualous knyghtez ' 1532  
 We hafe foughtene in faithe, by zone fresche strandez,  
 With the frekkeste folke that to thi foo langez , 1536  
 ffyfty thosannde one felde of ferse mene of armez,  
 Wyth-in a furlange of waye, fay ere by-lefede ' 1536  
 We hafe eschewede this chekke, thurghe chance of oure

They tell him  
 that they have  
 slain fifty thou-  
 sand men,

Lorde,

Of tha cheualrous mene that chargede thy pople ' 1540  
 The cheefe chauncelere of Rome, a cheftayne fulle noble,  
 Wille aske the chartyre of pesse for charitee hym selfene,  
 And the senatour Petire to presoner es takyne

and taken pri-  
 soners the chief  
 chancellor and  
 the senator Pe-  
 ter, as well as  
 many paynms

Of Perse and of Porte Iaffe paynymmez ynewe 1544  
 Commezprekande in the presse, with thy prysseknyghttez,  
 With pouerte in thi presone theire paynez to drye  
 I be-seke 3ow, sir, say whate 3owe lykes,  
 Whethire 3e suffyre theme saughte, or sone delyuerde

Arthur may de-  
 mand sixty  
 horse loads of  
 silver for the  
 senator,  
 and for the chan-  
 cellor chariots  
 full of gold.

3e may haue fore the senatour sextie horse chargede  
 Of siluer be Seterdaye, fulle sekryly payede,  
 And for the cheefe chauncelere, the cheualere noble,  
 Charottes chokkefulle charegyde with golde , 1552  
 The remenaunt of the Romainez be in areste haldene,  
 Tille there renttez in Rome be rightewissly knowene  
 I be-seke 3ow, sir, certyfye 3one lordez,  
 3if 3e wille send thame ouer the see, or kepe thame 3our  
 selfene 1556

The other pri-  
 soners may be  
 kept until their  
 rents are known.



ARTHUR REJOICES AT THE TIDINGS

Alle *3ow* sekyre mene for sothe sounde are by-leuyde,  
Saue *sir* Ewayne fytz Henry es in *the* side wonddede "

All Arthur's men  
have escaped,  
save Sir Ewayne,  
who is wounded

"Crist be thankyde," *quod* the kynge, "and hys clere  
modyre,

[leaf 70]  
The king rejoices

That *3owe* comforthede and helpede be crafte of hyme  
selfene , 1560

Skilfulle skomfyture he skiftez as hym lykez,  
Is none so skathlye may skape, ne skewe fro his handez ,  
Desteny and doughtynes of dedys of armes,  
Alle es demyd and delte at Dryghtynez wille ' 1564

The fate of battle,  
he says, is in the  
hands of God

I *kwe* the thanke for thy come, it comfortes vs alle '  
Sir knyghte," saie *the* conquerour, "so me Criste helpe '  
I *3if* the for thy thyzandez Tolouse *the* riche,  
The tolle and *the* tachmentez, tauernez and *other*, 1568  
*The* towne and *the* tenementez with towrez so hye,  
That towchez to *the* temporaltee, whilles my tyme lastez

He thanks the  
knight for his  
tidings, and gives  
him for reward  
the city of To-  
louse

Bot say to *the* senatour I sende hyme *thes* wordez,  
Thare salle no siluer hym saue, bot Ewayne recouere ,  
I had leuer see hym synke one the salte strandez,  
Than the seegge ware seke, *that* es so sore woundede ,  
I salle disseuere that sorte, so me Criste helpe ' 1575  
And sett theme fulle solytarie, in sere kynges landez  
Salle he neuer sownde see his seynowres in Rome,

The senator shall  
not be ransomed  
save Sir Ewayne  
recovers

Ne sitt in *the* assemblé, in syghte wyth his feris ,  
ffor it comes to no kyng *that* conquerour es holdene,  
To comone with his captifis fore couatys of siluer 1580  
It come neuer of knyghthede, knawe it *3if* hyme lyke,  
To carpe of coseri, whene captyfis ere takyne ,  
It aughte to no presoners to prese no lordez,  
Ne come in presens of prynce, whene *partyes* are mouede

The others shall  
be divided into  
different coun-  
tries

Comaunde *3one* constable, *the* castelle *that* *3emes*,  
That he be clenlyche kepede, and in close haldene ,  
He salle haue maundement to-morne or myddaye be  
roungene, 1587

Arthur holds that  
to accept ransom  
becomes not a  
king

They are to take  
the senator to  
the constable and  
bid him keep him  
safe

To what marcheth *thays* salle merke, with manger to lengene "

*Thay* conuaye this captyfe with clene mene of armez,  
And kend hyme to *the* constable, as *the* kyng byddez ,

The knights  
obey, and then

return to Arthur  
to give him the  
emperor's mes-  
sage

Arthur greatly  
commends his  
knights for their  
boldness, and  
promises them  
rewards

In the morning  
Sir Cadore and his  
knights are bid  
to take the pri-  
soners

[leaf 70, back]  
to Paris, and to  
give them into  
the care of the  
provost

The British  
knights depart  
towards Chartres

But the emperor  
had dispatched a  
chosen band to  
intercept them

And seyne to Arthure *they* ayre, and egerly hym towchez  
The answer of *the* emperour, nows of dedez 1592  
Thane *sir* Arthure, one erthe atheliste of *othere*,  
At euene at his awene borde auantid his lordez,—

“Me aughte to honowr theme in erthe ouer alle *other*  
thynggez,

*That thus* in myne absens awnters *theme* selfene, 1596  
I salle theme luffe whylez I lyffe, so me our Lorde helpe!  
And gyfe *them* landysfulle laige, whare theme beste lykes,  
Thay salle noghte losse, one *this* layke, 3if me lyfe happene,  
*That thus* are lamede for my lufe be *this* lythe strandez”  
Bot in the clere daweyng, *the* dere kyngge hym selfene  
Comaundyd *sir* Cadore with his dere knyghttes,  
*Sir* Cleremus, *sir* Cleremonde, with clene mene of armez,  
*Sir* Clowdmur, *sir* Clegis, to conuaye theis lordez, 1604  
*Sir* Boyce and *sir* Berelle with baners displayede,  
*Sir* Bawdwyne, *sir* Bryane, and *sir* Bedwere *the* ryche,  
*Sir* Raynalde and *sir* Richere, Rawlaunde childeyre,  
To ryde with *the* Romaynes in rowtte wyth theire feres

“Prekez now preualye to Parys the ryche,  
Wyth Petr the pryssonere and his price knyghttez,  
Be-teche *tham the* proueste, in presens of lordez,  
O payne and o perelle that pendes there-too, 1612  
That they be weisely wachede and in warde holdene,  
Wardede of warantizez with wyrchpfulle knyghttez,  
Wagge hyme wyghte mene, and woonde for no siluyre,  
I haffe warnede *that* wy, be ware 3ife hyme lykes!”

NOW bownes *the* Bretones, als *the* kyngge byddez, 1617  
Buskez theire batelles, theire baners displayez,  
To-wardez Chartres they chese, thescheualrous knyghttez,  
And in the champayne lande fulle faire *thay* eschewede  
ffor *the* emperour of myghte had ordande hym selfene  
*Sir* Vtolfe and *sir* Ewandyre, two honowrable kynggez,  
Erles of *the* Oriente, with austeryne knyghttez,  
Of *the* awntrouseste mene *that* to his oste lengede, 1624  
*Sir* Sextynour of Lyby and senatours many,

The kyng of Suriye hym selfe with Sarzynes ynowe,  
 The senatour of Sutere wyth sowmes fulle huge, 1627  
 Whas assygnede to *that* courte be sent of his peres,  
 Traise to-waide Troys *the* tresone<sup>1</sup> to wyrke,  
 To hafe be-trappede with a trayne oure *trauelande*  
 knyghttez,

That hade persayfede *that* Peter at Parys sulde lenge,  
 In *presonne* with *the* prouoste, his paynez to drye 1632  
 ffor-thi they buskede theme bownne with baners dis-  
 playede,

In the buskayle of his waye, on blonkkes fulle hugge,  
 Planttez theme in the pathe with powere arrayede,  
 To pyke vp *the* presoners fro oure pryse knyghttez.

They take up a  
 position in the  
 path of Arthur's  
 men

Syr Cadore of Cornewalle comaundez his peris, 1637  
 Sir Clegis, *sir Cleremus, sir Cleremownnde* *the* noble,  
 "Here es *the* close of Clyme with clewes so hye,  
 Lokez the contree be clere, the corners are large, 1640  
 Discoueres now sekerly skrogges and *othei*,  
 That no skathelle in *the* skroggez skorne vs here-aftyre,  
 Loke 3e skyfte it so *that* vs no skathe lympe,  
 ffor a skomfitoure in skoulkery is skomfite euer" 1644

Sir Cadore keeps  
 a sharp look out,

Now *they* hye to *the* holte, thes harageous knyghttez,  
 To herkene of *the* hye mene to helpene theis lordez,  
 fyndez theme helmede hole and horsesyde on stedys,  
 Houande one *the* hye waye by *the* holte hemmes 1648  
 With knyghttly contenaunce Sir Clegis hym selfene  
 Kryes to *the* compagne, and carpes thees wordez,—

and discovers the  
 enemy, armed  
 and mounted,  
 waiting by the  
 skirts of a wood.

"Es there any kyde knyghte, kaysere or *other*,  
 Wille kyth for his kyngs lufe craftes of armes? 1652  
 We are comene fro *the* kyng of *this* lythe ryche,  
 That knawene es for conquerour, corownde in ertlie,  
 His ryche retennuz here alle of his Round Table,  
 To ryde with *that* realle in rowtt where hyme lykes,  
 We seke justynge of werre, 3if any wille happyne, 1657  
 Of *the* jolyeste mene ajuggede be lordes,

Sir Clegis chal-  
 lenges any knight  
 among them to  
 the combat,

<sup>1</sup> MS *the treke ne the tresone*



[leaf 71]  
 An earl of the  
 Roman party up  
 braids Arthur  
 and his knights

If here be any hathelle mane, erle or *other*,  
 That for *the emperour* lufe wille awntere hym selfene "  
 And ane erle *thane* in angere answeres hym sone,—  
 "Me angers at Arthure, and att his hathelle bierns,  
 That thus in his *errour* occupyes theis rewmes,  
 And owtrayes *the emperour*, his erthely lorde ! 1664  
 The araye and *the ryalltez of the Rounde Table*  
 Es wyth rankour rehersed in rewmes fulle many,  
 Of oure renttez of Rome syche reuelle he haldys,  
 He<sup>1</sup> salle 3ife resoune fulle rathe, 3if vs reghte happene,  
 That many salle repente that in his rowtte rydez, 1669  
 ffor the reklesse roy so rewlez hym selfene ! "

Sir Clegis  
 answers him,

"A ! " sais *sir Clegis thane*, " so me Criste helpe !  
 I knowe be thi carpynge a cowntere *the semes* !  
 Bot be *thou auditoure*, or erle, or *emperour* thi selfene,  
 Appone Arthurez by-halue I answer the sone 1674  
 The renke so realle, *that* rewllz vs alle,  
 The ryotous mene and *the ryche of the Rounde Table*,  
 He has araysede his accownte, and redde alle his rollez,  
 ffor he wyll gyfe a rekenyng that rewe salle aftyre,  
 That alle *the ryche* salle repente *that* to Rome langez,  
 Or *the rereage* be requit<sup>2</sup> of renttez *that* he claymez !  
 We crafe of *3our curtaisie* three coursez of werre, 1681  
 And claymez of knyghthode, take kepe to *3our* selfene !  
 3e do bott trayne vs to daye wyth trefelande wordez !  
 Of syche *trauaylande* mene trecherye me thynkes ! 1684  
 Sende owte sadly certayne knyghttez,  
 Or say me sekerly sothe, for-sake 3if 3owe lykes "

The king of Syria  
 insinuates that  
 Sir Clegis may  
 not be of noble  
 ancestry

*T*thane sais the kyng of Surry, "Alls saue me oure  
 Lorde !  
 3if *thow* hufe alle *the* daye, *thou* bees noghte delyuere,  
 Bot *thow* sekerly ensure wyth certeyne knyghtez, 1689  
 That *thi* cote and thi breste be knowene wyth lordez,  
 Of armes of ancestrye, entyrde wyth londez "

Sir Clegis replies  
 scornfully

"Sir kyng," sais *sir Clegys*, "fulle knyghttly *thow* askez  
 I trowe it be for cowardys *thow* carpes thes wordez

<sup>1</sup> MS Ne<sup>2</sup> Looks like requiter in MS

Myne armez aie of ancestrye enueryde with lordez,  
 And has in banere bene borne sene *sir* Brut tyme,  
 At the cité of Troye *that* tymme was ensegede, 1696  
 Ofte seene in asawtte with certayne knyghttez,  
 ffor *the* Boughte bioghte vs and alle oure bolde elders,  
 To Bretayne *the* braddere, with-in chippe-burdez "

that his ancestors  
 were at the siege  
 of Troy

"Sir," sais *sir* Sextenour, "saye what *the* lykez,  
 And we salle suffyre the, als vs beste semes, 1701  
 Luke thi troumppez be trussede, and trofulle no lengere,  
 ffor *thoghe thou* tarye alle *the* daye, the tyddes no bettyr !  
 ffor there salle neuer Romaine, *that* in my rowtt rydez,  
 Be with rebawdez rebuykyde, whills I in werlde regne !"

Sir Sextenour  
 declares that the  
 Romans are  
 ready for the  
 fray

Thane *sir* Clegis to *the* kynge a lyttlle enchnede,  
 Kayres to *sir* Cadore, and knyghtly hym tellez,— 1707  
 "We hafe foundene in 3one firthe, floreschede with leues,  
*The flou* of *the* faireste folke *that* to *thi* foo langez,  
 fifty thosandez of folke of ferse mene of armez,  
 That faire are fewteride on fiounte vndyr 3one fre bowes,  
 They are enbuschede one blonkkes, with baners dis-  
 playede, 1712

Sir Clegis tells  
 Sir Cador that a  
 vast number of  
 the enemy are  
 drawn up in the  
 wood,

[leaf 71, back]

In 3one bechens wode appone the waye sydes  
 Thay hafe the furthe for-sette alle of *the* faire watyre,  
 That fayfully of force feghte vs byhowys,  
 ffor thus vs schappes to daye, schortly to telle, 1716  
 Whedyre we schone or schewe, schyft as *the* lykes "  
 "Nay," *quod* Cador, "so me Criste helpe !  
 It ware schame *that* we scholde schone for so lytyle !  
 Sir Lancelott salle neuer laughe, *that* with *the* kyng  
 lengez, 1720

and suggests a  
 retreat

Sir Cador scorns  
 to retreat

Never shall Sir  
 I ancelot laugh  
 at him

That I sulde lette my waye for lede appone erthe,  
 I salle be dede and vndone ar I here dreche,  
 ffor drede of any doggesone in 3one dyme schawes !"

He will die be-  
 fore he turn back  
 for any dog's son  
 of them all.

Syr Cador thane knyghtly comfortes his pople, 1724  
 And with corage kene he karpes *thes* wordes,—  
 "Thynk one *the* valyaunt prynce *that* resettez vs euer,  
 With landez and lordcheppez, where vs beste lykes,  
 That has vs ducherés delte, and dubbyde vs knyghttez,

Sir Cador exhorts  
 his men, and tells  
 them of the good  
 deeds of Arthur

Gifene vs gersoms and golde, and gardwynes many,  
 Grewhoundez and grett horse, and alkyne gamnes,  
 That gaynez tille any gome, that vndyre God leuez,  
 Thynke one riche renoun of *the* Rounde Table, 1732  
 And late it neuer be refte vs fore Romayne in erthe,  
 ffeyne 3ow noghte feyntly, ne frythes no wapyns,  
 Bot luke 3e fyghte faythefully, frekes 3our selfene,  
 I walde be wellyde alle qwyke, and quarterde in sondre,  
 Bot I wyrke my dede, whils I in wrethe lenge" 1737

He dubs some of  
 them knyghts

**T**han this doughtty duke dubbyd his knyghttez,  
 Ioneke and Askanere, Aladuke and *other*,

That ayerez were of Esex, and alle *thase* este maichez,  
 Howelle and Hardelfe, happy in armez, 1741

Sir Herylle and sir Herygalle, *thuse* harageouse knyghttez  
 Than the souerayne assignede certayne lordez,

To certein of  
 them he gaves  
 the prisoner in  
 charge

Sir Wawayne, sir Vryelle, sir Bedwere *the* ryche, 1744  
 Raynalde and Richeere, and Rowlandez childeyre,—  
 "Takez kepe one this prynce *with* 3oure price knyghtez,

If he is defeated,  
 they are to con-  
 vey him to some  
 castle, or to Ar-  
 thur

And 3ife we in *the* stour withstondene the better,  
 Standez here in this stede, and stirrez no forthire, 1748  
 And 3if *the* chaunce falle *that* we bee ouer-charggede,  
 Eschewes to some castelle, and chewyse 3our selfene,  
 Or ryde to *the* riche kynge 3if 3ow roo happyne, 1751  
 And bidde hym come redily to rescewe hys biernez"

The British pre-  
 pare for the fight

And than the Bretons brothely enbrassez *theire*  
 scheldez,

Braydez one bacenetez, and buskes *theire* launcez  
 Thus he fitez his folke, and to *the* felde rydez,  
 fff hundredth one a frounte fewtrede at onez ! 1756

With trompes *thay* trine, and trappede stedes,  
 With cornettes and clarions, and clergialle notes,

The fight begins

Schokkes in *with* a schakke, and schontez no langere,  
 There schawes ware scheene vndyr *the* schire eynez  
 And thane the Romayne rowtte remowes a lyttile,  
 Raykes *with* a rerewarde *thas* realle knyghttez, 1762  
 So raply *thay* ryde thare, that alle *the* rowte rynggez,  
 Of ryues and rannke stole, and ryche golde maylez

- Thane schotte owtte of *the* schawe schilttrounis many,  
 With scharpe wapynns of were schotande at ones  
 The kynges of Lebe be fore the wawarde he ledez,  
 And alle his lele lige mene o laundone ascriez 1768 The king of Lebe  
leads on the  
enemy
- Thane this cruelle kyng castis in fewtire,  
 Kaghte hym a couerde hoise, and his course haldez,  
 Beris to *sir* Berille, and brathely hym hittes,  
 Throwghe golet and gorgere he hurtez hym ewyne ! He attacks Sir  
Berill and slays  
him
- The gome and *the* grette horse at *the* grounde liggez,  
 And gretez graythely to Gode, and gyffes hym *the* saule !  
 Thus es Berelle the bolde broghte owtte of lyue,  
 And byddez aftyre beryelle, *that* hym beste lykez 1776
- And thane *sir* Cador of Cornewayle es carefuller in heite, Sir Cador is over  
whelmed with  
grief for his loss  
 Be-cause of his kynyse-mane, *that thus* es myscaryede ,  
 Vmbeelappes the cors, and kyssez hyme ofte,  
 Gerte kepe hym couerte with his clere knyghttez 1780
- Thane laughs the Lebe kyng, and alle on lowdemeles,— The king of Lebe  
ridicules him  
 “3one lorde es lyghttede ! me lykes the bettyre !  
 He salle noghte dere vs to daye, the deuylle haue [his]  
 bones !”
- “3one kyng,” said Cador, “karpes fulle large, 1784  
 Be-cause he killyd *this* kene, Criste hafe *this* saule !  
 He salle hafe corne bote, so me Criste helpe !  
 Or I kaire of *this* coste, we salle encontre ones ! Sir Cador vows  
vengeance
- So may *the* wynde weile turne, I quytte hym or ewyne,  
 Sothely hym selfene, or summ of his ferez !” 1789
- Thane *sir* Cador the kene knyghtly he wyrkez,  
 Cryez, “A ! Cornewale,” and castez in fewtere,  
 Gurdez streke thourghe *the* stour on a stede ryche !  
 Many steryne mane he sterde by strenghe of hyme one ! He performs  
great deeds of  
valour
- Whene his spere was sprongene, he spede hym fulle 3erne, When his lance  
is broken he  
flights with his  
sword  
 Swappede owtte with a swerde, that swykede hym neuc ,  
 Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, and wounded knyghttez ,  
 Wyrkez his ine wayfare fulle werkand sydez, 1797
- And hewes of *the* hardieste halsez in sondyre,  
 That alle blendez with blode thare his blanke rynnez !  
 So many biernez the bolde broghte owt of lyfe, 1800

Tittez tirauntez doune, and temez<sup>1</sup> theire sadilles,  
 And turnezowte of *the* toile, whene hym tyme thynkkez !  
 Thane the Lebe kyng emez fulle lowde  
 One *sir* Cador the kene, with cruelle worder, 1804

Then the king of  
 Lebe ironically  
 prunes his deeds

[leaf 72, back]

"Thowe hase wyrchipe wonne, and wondyde knyghttez !  
 Thowe wenes fore thi wightenez the werlde es thy  
 nowene !

I salle wayte at thyne honnde, wy, be my trowthe !  
 I haue warnede *the* wele, be ware ȝif the lykez !" 1808

The new made  
 knights, with  
 sound of trum-  
 pets and spears  
 in rest, rush to  
 the fray

With cornuse and clariones *theis* newe made knyghttez  
 Lythes vn-to *the* crye, and castez in fewture,  
 fferkes in one a ffrounte one fferaunte stedez,  
 ffellede at *the* fyrste come fyfty att ones ! 1812

Schotte thorowe the schiltrouns, and scheuerede launcez,  
 Laid doune in *the* lumppe lordly biernez !  
 And thus nobillyoure newe mene notez *theire* strenghez  
 Bot new notte es onone *that* noyes me sore 1816

The king of Lebe  
 comes agunst  
 them

The kyng of Lebe has laughte a stede *that* hym lykede,  
 And comes in lordely in lyonez of siluere,  
 Vmbelappez *the* lumpe, and lattes in sondre,  
 Many lede with his launce *the* liffe has he refede ! 1820

He makes great  
 havoc among the  
 new men

Thus he chaces *the* childre of *the* kynges chambue,  
 And killez in *the* champanyse cheualrous knyghttez !  
 With a chasyng spere he choppes doune many ! 1823

Thare was *sir* Alyduke slayne, and Achinow wondyde,  
 Sir Origge and *sir* Ermyngalle hewene al to pecez !  
 And ther was Lewlyne laughte, and Lewlyns brothire,  
 With lordes of Lebe, and lede to *theire* strenghez

Had not Sir  
 Clegis and Sir  
 Clement come,  
 the new men had  
 gone to nought

Ne hade *sir* Clegis comene, and Clemente *the* noble,  
 Oure newe mene hade gone to noghte, and many ma  
 other

Then Sir Cador  
 puts his lance in  
 rest, and strikes  
 the king of Lebe  
 far on the hel-  
 met.

Thane *sir* Cador *the* kene castez in fewture 1830  
 A cruelle launce and a kene, and to *the* kyng rydez,  
 Hittez hym heghe one *the* helme with his harde wapene,  
 That alle *the* hotte blode of hym to his hande rynnez !

The heathen king  
 falls to the

The hethene harageous kyng appone *the* hethe lyggez,

<sup>1</sup> MS repeats and temez

And of his hertly hurte helyde he neuer !  
 Thane *syn* Cador *the* kene cryez fulle lowde,— 1836

ground mortally  
wounded

“Thow has corne botte, *sir* kyng, *thare* God gyfe *the*  
 sorowe,

Sir Cador tri-  
umphs over him

Thow killyde my cosyne, my kare es the lesse !  
 Kele the nowe in the claye, and comfoithe thi selfene !  
 Thow skornede vs lang ere *with* thi skornefulle woidez,  
 And nowe has *thow* cheuede soo, it es thyne awene  
 skathe !

Holde at *thow* hente has, it harmez bot lyttle,  
 ffor hethynge es hame holde, vse it who so wille ”

The kyng of Surry *thane* es sorowfulle in herte, 1844  
 ffor sake of this soueraygne, *that thus* was suppressede,  
 Semblede his Sarazenes, and senatours manye

The king of  
Syrri full of  
grief assembles  
his barons for  
vengeance

Vnsaughtly *they* sette *thane* appone ouresere knyghttez,  
 Sir Cador of Cornewaile he cownterez *them* sone, 1848  
 With his kydde companye clenlyche arrayede,  
 In the frount of *the* fyrthe, as *the* waye forthis,  
 ffyfty thosande of folke was fellide at ones !

Sir Cador and his  
men slay fifty  
thousand of them  
at once

There was at *the* assemblé certayne knyghttez, 1852  
 Sore wondede sone appone sere halves,  
 The sekereste Sarzanez that to *that* sorte lengede,

Certain knights  
are sorely wound-  
[leaf 73]  
ed by the Sara-  
cens

Be-hynde the sadylls ware sette sex fotte large,  
 They scherde in the schiltrone scheldyde knyghttez,  
 Schalkes they schotte thrughe schrenkande maylez,  
 Thurghe brenys browdene brestez they thullede,

The fight rages  
furiously

Brasers burnyste bristez in sondyre,  
 Blasons blode and blankes they hewene, 1860  
 With brandez of browne stele brankkand stedez !

The field runs  
blood

The Bretones brothely brittenez so many,  
 The bente and *the* brode felde alle one blode rynnys !  
 Be thane *si* Cayous *the* kene a capitayne has wonnene,

Sir Clegis clynges in, and clekes *another*, 1865  
 The capitayne of Cordewa, vndire *the* kyng selfene,

Sir Clegis takes  
prisoner the cap-  
tain of Cordova.

That was keye of *the* kythe of alle *that* coste ryche,  
 Vtolfe and Ewandre, Ioneke had nommene, 1868  
 With *the* erle of Affryke and *othe*r grette lordes

Sir Cador takes  
the king of Syria.

The Romans fly  
into the forest

Arthur's men  
slay many of  
them there

A few escape to  
a castle

Arthur's knights  
seek for their  
companions who  
are slain

Sir Cador bids  
them carry them  
to the king

He goes to Paris  
with the pri-  
soners, and  
quickly returns  
to Arthur

Then he tells him  
of the case that  
has befallen

They have fought  
and slain many

[leaf 73, back]

Divers of their  
best knights are  
taken prisoners,

The kyng of Surry the kene to *sir* Cador es *zeldene*,<sup>1</sup>  
*The* synechalle of Sotere to Segramoure hym selfene  
 When *the* cheualrye saw theire cheftanes were *nommene*,  
 To a cheefe foreste they chesene theire wayes, 1873  
 And felede theme so feynthe, they falle in *the* greues,  
 In the ferynne of *the* fyrthe, fore ferde of oure pople  
 Thare myght mene see the ryche ryde in the schawes,  
 To rype vpe the Romayne ruydlyche wondyde, 1877  
 Schowttes aftyre mene, harageous knyghttez,  
 Be hundrethez they hewede doune be *the* holte eynys!  
 Thus oure cheualrous mene chasz *the* pople, 1880

To a castelle they eschewede a fewe *that* eschappede  
 Thanc relyez *the* renkez of *the* Rounde Table,  
 ffor to ryotte *the* wode, *then* *the* duke restez,  
 Ransakes the ryndez alle, raughte vp theire faies, 1884  
 That in *the* fightynge be-fore fay ware by-leuyde  
 Sir Cador garte chare theym, and couere theme faire,  
 Kariede theme to *the* kyng with his beste knyghttez,  
 And passez vn-to Paresche with prisioners hym selfene,  
 Be-toke theyme the proueste, pryncez and *other*; 1889  
 Tase a sope in the toure, and taryez no langere,  
 Bot tournes tytte to *the* kyng, and hym wyth tunge telles

“*Syr*,” sais *sir* Cador, “a caas es be-fallene, 1892  
*S* We hafe cownterede to day, in 3one coste ryche  
 With kynges and kayseres, krouelle and noble,  
 And knyghtes and kene men clenlych arayed!  
 Thay hade at 3one foreste forsette vs *the* wayes, 1896  
 At the furthe in *the* fyrthe, with ferse mene of armes,  
 Thare faughtte we in faythe, and foynede with speyrs,  
 One felde with thy foo-mene, and fellyd theme on lyfe  
 The kyng of Lebe es laide, and in *the* felde leuyde,  
 And manye of his lege mene *that* yare to hym langede!  
*Other* lordez are laughte of vncouth ledes, 1902  
 We hafe lede them at lenge, to lyf whittes *the* lykez  
 Sir Vtere and *sir* Ewaynedyre, theis honourable  
 knyghttez,

<sup>1</sup> 3oldene

Be a nawntere of armes Ioneke has nommene,  
 With erlez of *the* Oryentte, and austerene knyghttez,  
 Of awncestrye *the* beste mene *that to the* oste langede,  
 The senatour Barouns es kaughte with a knyghtte,  
 The capitayne of Cornette, that crewelle es haldene,  
 The syneschalle of Sutare vnsaughte wyth *thes other*,  
 The kyng of Surry hym selfene, and Sarazenes 1911

the senator  
 Barouns, the  
 king of Syria, the  
 seneschal of  
 Suter

**B**ot fay of ours in *the* felde a fourtene knyghttez,  
 I willenoghte feynene forbere, bot faythfullytellene,

But of Arthur's  
 knights fourteen  
 are slain

Sir Berelle es one, a banerette noble,  
 Was killyde at *the* fyrste come with a kyng rychen,  
 Sir Aldoyke of Towelle, with his tende knyghtez, 1916  
 Emange *the* Turkys was tynte, and in tyme fondene,  
 Gude sir Mawrelle of Mauncez, and Mawrene his brother,  
 Sir Meneduke of Mentoche, with merualous knyghttez "

Sir Berill was  
 killed at the  
 beginning of the  
 fray

**T**hane the woithy kyng wrythes, and wepede with  
 his eghne<sup>1</sup>, 1920

Then Arthur is  
 grieved,

Karpes to his cosyne sir Cador theis wordez,—

"Sir Cador, thi corage confunde vs alle !

and speaks to his  
 cousin Sir Cador  
 bitter words.

Kowardely thou castezt owte alle my beste knyghttez !  
 To putte mene in perille, it es no pryce holdene, 1924  
 Bot *the* partyes ware purnayede, and powere arayede,  
 When they ware stode on a strenghe, *thou* suldest hafe  
 with-stondene,

Bot ȝif thou woldest alle my steryne stroye fore *the* nonys !"

"Sir," sais sir Cador, "ȝe knowe wele ȝour selfene,  
 ȝe are kyng in *this* kythe, karpe whate ȝow lykys !  
 Salle neuer vpbrayde me, *that to thi* burde langes, 1930  
 That I suldest blyne fore theire boste, thi byddyng to  
 wyrche,

Sir Cador replies  
 with dignity

Whene any stuttez to stale, stuffe *thane the* bettere,  
 Ore thei wille be stonayede, and stroyede in ȝone straye  
 londre 1933

I dide my delygens to daye, I doo me one lordez,  
 And in daungere of dede fore dyuerse knyghttez,  
 I hafe no grace to *thi* gree, bot syche grett wordez, 1936

He has only done  
 his duty,

but is ill repaid  
 by such hard  
 words

<sup>1</sup> MS eughne



- 3if I heuen my herte, my hape es no bettyre "
- Then Arthur retracts  
He acknowledges  
Cador has done  
his duty
- 3ofe s<sup>ir</sup> Arthure ware angeide, he ansuers faine,  
" Thow has doughttily donne, s<sup>ir</sup> duke, with thi handez,  
And has donne thy deuer with my dere knyghttez,  
ffor-thy thow arte demyde, with dukes and eilez, 1941  
ffor one of *the* doughtyeste *that* dubbede was euer !  
Thaie es none ischewe of vs, on this erthe sprongene ,  
Thow arte appaiant to be ayere, are one of thi chldyre ,  
Thow arte my sister sone, for-sake salle I neuer ! " 1945
- He is one of the  
bravest of the  
biave,  
and heir apparent  
to the throne  
[leaf 74]
- Thane gerte he in his awene tente a table be sette,  
And tryede in with tromppez t<sup>o</sup> auaillede biernez ,  
Serfede them solempnely with selkouthe metez, 1948  
Swythe semly in syghte with syluer ene dischees  
Whene the senatours harde saye *that* it so happenede,  
They saide to *the* emperour, " thi seggez are suppyssede !  
Sir Arthure, thyne enmy has owterayed *thi* lordez,  
That rode for *the* rescowe of 3one riche knyghttez ! 1953  
Thow dosse bot tynnez *thi* tyme, and turmenttez *thi* pople,  
Thow arte be-trayed of *thi* mene, that moste thow on  
traystede  
That schalle turne the to tene and torfere for euer " 1956
- But the senators  
of Rome tell the  
emperor of the  
defeat of his men
- He has been be-  
trayed by those  
he trusted most.
- Than the emperour irus was angerde at his herte,  
ffor oure valyant biernez siche prowesche had wonnene  
With kynge and with kaysere to consayle they wende,  
Souerayngez of Sarazenez, and senatours manye , 1960
- Then the em-  
peror is very  
wroth
- Thus he semblez fulle sone certayne lordez,  
And in the assemble thane he sais them theis wordez,—  
" My herte sothely es sette, assente 3if 3owe lykes,  
To seke in-to Sexone, with my sekyre knyghttez, 1964  
To fyghte with my foo-mene, if fortune me happene,  
3if I may fynde the freke with-in the foure haluez ,  
Or enture in-to Awguste awnters to seke, 1967  
And byde with my balde mene with-in *the* burgher ryche ,  
Riste vs and reuelle, and ryotte oure selfene,  
Lende *thare* in delytte in lordechipez ynewe,  
To sir Leo be comene with alle his lele knyghttez, 1971  
With lordez of Lumberdye, to lette hyme *the* wayes "
- He assembles a  
council of war
- He tells them his  
purpose to go  
into Saxony,
- and enter into  
Augusta,
- to riot and revel  
till the arrival of  
Sir Leo and the  
lords of Lom-  
bardy

**B**ot owre wyese kyng es warie to wayttene his renkes, King Arthur, getting intelligence of this, with draws his men secretly by the woods,  
 And wyesly by *the* woddez voydez his oste ,  
 Gerte felschene his fyrez, flawmande fulle heghe,  
 Trussene fulle traystely, and tieunt there-aftyre 1976  
 Sethene in-to Sessoyne, he soughte at the gayneste, takes the shortest road into Saxony,  
 And at the surs of *the* sonne disseuerez his knyghttez  
 fforsette theme the cité appone sere halfez,  
 So-daynly on iche halfe, with seuene grett stales 1980 suddenly besets the city with seven bands  
 Anely in the vale a vawewarde enbusches ,  
 Sir Valyant of Vylerns, with valyant knyghttez, Sir Valiant makes a vow to vanquish the viscount of Rome  
 Be-fore *the* kynggez visage made sicke avowez,  
 To venquyse by victorie the rescownte of Rome ! 1984 The king gives him command of the vanguard,  
 ffor-thi the kyng chargez hym, what chaunce so be-falle,  
 Cheftayne of *the* cheekke, with cheualrous knyghttez, he himself directs the centre  
 And sythyne meles with mouthe, *that* he moste traistez ,  
 Demenys the medylwarde menskfully hym selfene, 1989  
 ffittes his fote-mene, als hym faire thynkkes ,  
 On frounte in the fore breste, the flow of his knyghttez, He arranges the archers on either flank, [leaf 74, back]  
 His archers on aythere halfe he orlaynede *ther*-aftyre  
 To schake in a sheltroñe, to schotte whene *thame* lykez , places renowned knights for a rearguard  
 He arrayed in *the* rerewarde fulle rialle knyghttez,  
 With renkkes renownnd of *the* Rounde Table,  
 Sir Raynalde, sir Richere, that rade was neuer,  
 The riche duke of Rowne wyt[h] ryders ynewe , 1996  
 Sir Cayous, sir Clegis, and clene mene of armes,  
 The kyng castes to kepe be *thaa* clere strandes  
 Sir Lott and sir Launcelotte, *thuse* lordly knyghttez,  
 Salle lenge on his lefte hande, with legyones ynewe,  
 To mene in *the* morne-while, 3if *the* myste happynne , Sir Lott and Sir Lancelot command a band on the left hand, which is to move in the mist of early morning  
 Sir Cadour of Cornewaile, and his kene knyghttez, Sir Cadour and his men are to keep guard over the passes  
 To kepe at *the* karfuke, to close in *ther* *othere*  
 He plantez in sicke placez pryncez and erlez, 2004  
 That no powere sulde passe be no preué wayes  
**B**ot the emperour onone, with honourable knyghttez  
 And erlez, enteres the vale, awnters to seke, The emperor and his knights quickly enter the vale in search of adventures  
 And fyndez sir Arthure with hostez arayede , 2008 He finds Arthur's host drawn up in battle array,  
 And at his in-come, to ekkene his sorowe,

- Our burlyche bolde kynge appone the bente howes,  
 With his bataile one brede, and baners displayede  
 He had *the* ceté for-sett appone sere halfes, 2012  
 Bothe the clewez and *the* clyfez with clene mene of armez!  
 The mosse and *the* marrasse, the mounttez so hye,  
 With gret multytude of mene, to maire hym in *the*  
 wayes  
 When *sur* Lucius sees, he sais to his lordez, 2016  
 "This traytowr has treunt this tresone to wyriche!  
 He has the ceté forsett appone sere halfes,  
 Alle *the* clewez and the cleyffez with clene mene of armez!  
 Here es no waye i-wys, ne no wytt elles, 2020  
 Bot feghte with oure foo-mene, for flee may we neuer!  
 Thane this ryche mane rathe arayes his byenez,  
 Rewlede his Romayne, and realle knyghtez,  
 Buschez in the awawmeward the vescounte of Rome,  
 ffio Viterbe to Venyse, theis valyante knyghtez 2025  
 Dresses vp dredfully the dragone of golde,  
 With egles aloues, enamelede of sable,  
 Drawene dreghely the wyne, and drynkyn thare-aftyre,  
 Dukkez and dusseperez, dubbede knyghtez, 2029  
 ffor dauncesyng of Duche-mene, and dynnyng of pypez,  
 Alle dynned fore dyne that in *the* dale houede  
 And thane *sur* Lucius on lowde said lordlyche woidez,  
 "Thynke one the myche renownne of *you* ryche  
 fadyrs, 2033  
 And the riators of Rome, *that* regnede with lordez,  
 And the renkez ouer-rane alle that regnede in erthe,  
 Encrochede alle Cristyndome be craftes of aimes,  
 In eueriche a viage the victorie was haldene, 2037  
 In sette alle *the* Sarazenes with-in sevene wyntte,  
 The parte ffor the porte Iaffe to Paradyse zatez!  
 Thoghe a rewme be rebeffe, we rekke it bot lyttile!  
 It es resone and righte the renke be restreynede! 2041  
 Do dresse we thare-foie, and byde we no langere,  
 ffore dredlesse with-owttnye dowtte, the daye schalle be  
 ourez!"
- and all the posi-  
 tions occupied
- Then Sir Lucius  
 declares with  
 wrath th it thure  
 is no way else but  
 to fight, for fly  
 he may not
- He arrays his  
 rich Romans
- The viscount is  
 in the van
- He hosts his  
 standard, the  
 golden dragon  
 enamelled with  
 scales  
 They drink and  
 make merry
- Sir Lucius ex-  
 horts them to  
 think on the  
 great renown of  
 Rome—how it  
 had conquered all  
 Christendom,
- [Deaf 75]
- and all the land  
 of the Saracens,  
 from Jaffa to the  
 gates of Paradise
- Without doubt  
 they will quickly  
 reduce these  
 rebels

Whene *these* wordes was saide, the Walsche kyng  
hym selfene 2044

Whas warre of this wyderwyne, *that* werrayed his  
knyghttez

Brothely in the vale *with* voyce he ascryez,—

“Viscownte of Valewnce, enuyous of dedys,

The vassallage of Viterbe to daye schalle be reuengede !

Vnuenquiste for *this* place voyde schalle I neuer !”

Arthur calls upon  
the viscount of  
Valence, and  
threatens him  
with vengeance

Thane the vyscownte valiante, *with* a uoyse noble,  
Auoyeddyde the awawewarde, enuerounde his horse,  
He drissede in a derfe schelde, endenttyd *with* sable,

The viscount  
boldly prepares  
for the fray

With a dragone engowschede, dredfulle to schewe, 2053  
Deuorande a dolphyne *with* dolefulle lates,

His device is a  
dragon deuour-  
ing a dolphin

In seyne that oure soueraygne sulde be distroyede,  
And alle done of dawez *with* dynttez of swerddez,<sup>1</sup>  
ffor thare es noghte bot dede thare the dragone es raissede !

Thane the comlyche kyng castez in fewtyre, 2058  
With a crewelle launce cowpez fulle euene

A-bowne *the* spayre<sup>2</sup> aspanne, emange *the* schortte rybbys,

The king lays  
his lance in rest,  
and pierces him  
through the short  
ribs

That the splent and the spleene on the spere lengez !

The blode sprente owtte and sprede as *the* horse sprynggez,

And he sproulez fulle spakely, bot spekes he no more !

And thus has sir Valyant haldene his a-vowez, 2064

And venqwyste *the* viscownte, *that*e victor was haldene !

And thus has Sir  
Valiant kept his  
vow

Thane *sir* Ewayne *sir* Fytz Vrieneffulle enkerlye rydez

Onone to the *emperour* his egle to towche ,

Sir Ewain makes  
a bold attempt to  
reach the em-  
peror

Thrughe his brode bataile he buskes be-lyfe, 2068

Braydez owt his brande *with* a blyth chere,

Reuerssede it redelye, and awaye rydys ,

fferkez in *with* the fewle in his faire handez,

And fittiez in freely one frounte *with* his feris 2072

Now buskez *sir* Launcelot, and braydez fulle euene

Sir Lancelot slays  
the lord Lucius

To *sir* Lucius the lorde, and lothelye hyme hyttez ,

Thurgh e pawnce *and* platez he percede the maylez,

That the prowde penselle in his pawncche lengez ! 2076

The hede haylede owtt be-hynde ane halfe fote large,

<sup>1</sup> MS swreddez

<sup>2</sup> MS *the* spayre the spajere

Thurghe hawberke and hanche, *with the* harde wapyne !  
 The stede and the steryne mane stykes to *the* grownde,  
 Strake downe a standerde, and to his stale wendez !

Sir Lott rejoices  
 that his turn is  
 now come

"Me lykez wele," sais *sur* Loth, "zone loidez aie  
 delyue<sup>e</sup>ede ! 2081

The lott lengez nowe on me, *with* leue of my lorde  
 To day salle my name be laide, and my life aftyre,  
 [leaf 75, back] Bot some leppe fro the lyfe, that one zone lawnde houez !"  
 Thane strekez the steryne, and streynys his brydylle,  
 Strykez in-to the stowre on a stede ryche,

He slays a giant,

Enjoynde with a geaunt, and jaggede hym thorowe !  
 Jolyly this gentille for-justede a-*noth*er, 2088

and many war  
 riors beside

Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, werrayande knyghtez,  
 And wondes alle wathely, that in *the* waye stondez !  
 ffyghttez *with* alle the ffrappe a furlange of waye,  
 ffelled fele appone felde *with* his faire wapene, 2092  
 Venqwiste and has the victorie of valyaunt knyghtez,  
 And alle enverounde the vale, and voyde whene hym  
 likede !

The British bow  
 men discharge  
 their arrows

Thane bowmens of Bretayne brothely ther-aftyre  
 Bekerde *with* bregaundez of ferre in tha launde, z,  
 With fionez fleterede *that* flitt fulle freschly *the* frekez,  
 ffichene *with* fetheris thurghe *the* fyne maylez .  
 Siche flyttynge es foule *that* so *the* flesche derys,  
 That flowe o ferrome in flawnkkes of stede z, 2100

The Dutchmen  
 throw darts

Dartes the Duche-mene daltene azaynes,  
*With* derfe dynttez of dede, dagges thurghe schelde z,  
 Qwarelles qwayntly swappe z thorowe knyghtez,  
*With* uryne so wekyrly, that wynche they neu<sup>e</sup> 2104

Many are slain  
 by the sharp  
 arrows

So they scherenkene fore schotte of *the* scharppe arowes,  
 That alle the scheltrone schonte, and schoderide at ones !  
 Thane nche stedes rependez, and rasches one armes ,  
 The hale howndrethe one hye appone heyghe lygges,  
 Bott zitte *the* hathelieste on hy, haythene and *othe*r ,

But the giants  
 make a terrible  
 charge,

Alle hoursches ou<sup>e</sup>r hede harmes to wyrke 2110  
 And alle theis geaunte z be-fore, engendeude *with* fendez,  
 Ioynez on sir Ienitalle, and gentille knyghtez,

With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes,  
Craschede doune crestez, and craschede brayneze,  
Kyllede cou[r]sers and couerde stedes, 2115

and with their  
steel clubs destroy  
many knights  
on white steeds

Choppode thurghe cheualers one chalke-whyte stede  
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-3ayneze,  
Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in the stale houys  
Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghttez,  
With crewelle contenaunce he cryede fulle lowde,—

Nothing can  
stand agunst  
them until Ai-  
thur comes

“I wende no Bretones walde bee basschede for so lyttlle,  
And fore bare-legyde boyes, that one the bente houys !”

He despises  
them,

**H**e clekys owtte Collbrande fulle clenlyche burneschte,  
Graythes hymne to Golapas, that greuyde moste,  
Kuttes hymne euene by the knees clenly in sondyre  
“Come downe,” quod the kyng, “and karpe to thy ferys !  
Thowe arte to hye by the halfe, I hete the in trouthe !  
Thow salle be handsomere in hye, with the helpe of my  
Lorde !” 2128

and plucking out  
Colbrand quicly  
cuts the giant  
Golapas in two  
at the knees,

telling him he is  
too high by half

With that stelene brande he strake ofe his hede  
Sterygly in that stoure he strykes a-nother  
Thus he setteze on seuene with his sekrye knyghttez  
Whylles sixty ware seruede soo, ne sessede they neuer !  
And thus at the joynenyge the geauntez are distroyede,  
And at that journey for-justede with gentille lordez

Then he strikes  
off his head

[leaf 76]  
He and his  
knights slay sixty  
giants

Than the Romaynes, and the reznkkez of the Rounde  
fable,

The Romans  
rilly and make  
a fierce  
resistance.

Rewles theme in arraye, rerewarde ande other, 2136  
With wyghte wapynez of werre, thay wroghtene one  
helmes,

Rattez with rannke stele fulle ryalle maylez,  
Bot they fitt<sup>1</sup> theme fayre, thes frekk byerneze,  
ffewters in freely one fferaunte stedes, 2140  
ffoynez fulle felly with flyschande speris,  
firetene of orfrayes feste appone scheldez

So fele fay es in fyghte appone the felde leuyde, 2143  
That iche a furthe in the firthe of rede blode rynnys !  
By that swyftely one swarthe the swett es by-leuede,

So many are left  
dead on the field,  
that each path  
in the forest runs  
with red blood

<sup>1</sup> Or fut

Swerdez swangene in two, sweltand knyghtez  
 Lyes wyde opyne welterande one walopande stedeȝ,  
 Wondes of wale mene werkande sydys, 2148  
 ffaceȝ feteled vn-fane in filterede lakes,  
 Alle craysed for-trodyne with trappede stedeȝ,  
 The faireste fygyred folde<sup>1</sup> that fygyrede was euer,  
 AHs ferre alls a furlange, a thosande at ones<sup>1</sup> 2152  
 Be than the Romayneȝ ware rebuykyde a lyttile,  
 With-drawes theyme drerely, and dreches no lengaie,  
 Oure prynce with his powere persewes theyme aftyre,  
 Prekez one<sup>2</sup> the proudeste with his price knyghttez  
 Sir Kayous, sir Clegys, with clene mene of armez, 2157  
 Enconters theme at the clyffe with clene mene of aimes,  
 ffyghttes faste in the fyrth, frythes no wapene,  
 felled at the firste come fyfe hundrethe at ones<sup>1</sup>  
 And when they fande theym foresett with oure fers  
 knyghtez, 2161  
 ffewe mene agayne fele mot fyche theme bettyre,  
 ffeghttez with alle the frappe, foynes with speres,  
 And faughte with the frekkeste that to Fraunce langez  
 Bot sir Kayous the kene castis in fewtyre,  
 Chaseȝ one a counsere, and to a kyngȝ rydys; 2166  
 With a launce of Lettowe he thurleȝ his sydez,  
 That the lyuer and the lunggez on the launce lengeȝ  
 The schafte sc[h]odyrde and schott in the schire byerne,  
 And soughte thorowowte the schelde, and in the schalke  
 rystez.  
 Bot Kayous at the in-come was kepyd vn-fayre  
 With a cowarde knyghte of the kythe ryche, 2172  
 At the turnynge that tym the traytoure hym hitte  
 In thorowe the felettes, and in the flawnke aftyre,  
 That the boustous launce the bewells attamede,  
 That braste at the brawlynge, and brake in the myddys  
 Sir Kayous knewe wele, be that kyde wounde, 2177  
 That he was dede of the dynte, and done owte of lyfe

The Romans  
 begin to retreat,  
 and Arthur  
 presses on them

Sir Cayous, Sir  
 Clegys and their  
 men slay five  
 hundred.

Sir Cayous rides  
 to a king and  
 thrusts him  
 through with his  
 lance.

but is sorely  
 wounded by a  
 coward knight

[leaf 76, back]

<sup>1</sup> Or felde

<sup>2</sup> Or over.

Than he raykes in arraye and one rawe rydez,  
 One this ryalle his dede to reuenge, 2180  
 "Kepe the, cowarde," and calles hym sone,  
 Cleues hym wyth his clere brande clenliche in sondre !  
 "Hadde thow wele delte thy dynt wyth thi handes,  
 I hade for-geffene *the* my dede, be Crist now of hewyne !"

He weyndes to *the* wyese kyng, and wynly hym gretes,  
 "I am wathely woundide, waresche mone I neuer !"

Wirke nowe thi wircupe, as *the* worlde askes,  
 And brynge me to beryelle, byd I no more ! 2188  
 Grete wele my ladye *the* qwene, ȝife *the* werlde happyne,  
 And alle *the* burliche birdes *that* to hir boure lengez,  
 And my worthily weife, *that* wrethide me neuer,  
 Bid hire fore hir wircupe wirke for my saulle !" 2192

He goes to the  
 king, tells him he  
 is mortally  
 wounded, and bids  
 him greet well the  
 queen, the ladies  
 of the court, and  
 his wife

The kynges confessour come, with Criste in his handes,  
 ffor to comforth the knyghte, kende hym *the* wordes  
 The knyghte coueride on his knees with a kaunt herte,  
 And caughte his Creatoure *that* comfurthes vs alle !  
 Thane remmes *the* riche kyng fore rewthe at his herte,  
 Rydes in-to rowte his dede to reuenge,  
 Presede in-to *the* plumpe, and with a prynce metes,  
 That was ayere of Egypt in thos este marches, 2200  
 Cleues hym with Collbrande clenlyche in sondyre !  
 He broches euene thorowe *the* byerne, and *the* sadille  
 bristes,

Then comes the  
 king's confessor  
 to comfort the  
 knight

Then Arthur, full  
 of grief, rushes  
 into the fray to  
 avenge him

He cleaves an  
 Egyptian prince  
 asunder

And at *the* bake of *the* blonke *the* bewelles entamede !

Manly in his maly[n]coly he metes a-nother, 2204  
 The medille of *that* myghtty, *that* hym myche greuede,  
 He merkes thurghe the maylez the myddes in sondyre,  
 That the myddys of *the* mane on *the* mounte fallez,  
*The tother* halfe of *the* haunche on *the* horse leuyde  
 Of *that* hurte, as I hope, hailes he neuer ! 2209

Another he chops  
 in half

He schotte thorowe *the* schilttrouns with his scharpe  
 wapene,

He speeds his  
 way through the  
 battle, cutting  
 men in sunder,  
 bearing down  
 banners,

Schalkez he schrede thurghe, and schrenkede maylez,  
 Baneres he bare downne, bryttenede scheldes, . 2212



and fiercely  
wreaking his  
wrath on his foes

Brothely with browne stele his brethe he *thare* wrekes,  
Wrothely he wryththis by wyghtnesse of strenghe,  
Woundes *these* whydyrewyns, werrayed knyghttes,  
Thieppede thorowe *the* thykkys thryttene sythis, 2216  
Thryngez throlly in the thrange, and chis euene aftyre!

Sir Gawaine goes  
forwaid and meets  
with the emperour

Thane sir Gawayne the gude, with wyrchipfulle  
knyghttez,

Wendez in the a-vawewarde be tha wodde hemmys,  
Was waire of sir Lucius, one launde there he houys,  
With lordez and ligge mene, that to hyme selfe lengede  
Thane the emperour enkerly askes hym sonne, 2222  
"What wille thow, Gawayne, wyke with thi wayne!"

[leaf 77]

I watte be thi waueyng, thow willnez aftyre sorowe,  
I salle be wrokyne on thi wiethe, fore alle thi grete  
wordez?"

Lucius with his  
long sword  
wounds Sir  
Lionel,

He laughte owtte a lange swerde, and luyschede one  
ffaste,

And sir Lyonelle in the launde, lordely hym strykes,  
Hittes hym on the hede, *that the* helme bristis, 2228  
Hurtted his herne-pane an hannde-brede large!  
Thus he layes one *the* lumppe, and lordlye *thene* seruede,

and many wor  
shipful knyghts

Wondide worthuly wirchipfulle knyghttez!  
ffighttez with Florent that beste es of swerde, 2232  
Tille *the* fomande blode talle his fyste rynnes!

The Romans, ex-  
cited by his  
bravery, get the  
better of Arthur's  
men  
Sir Bedwere is  
slain

Thanethe Romayns releuyde, *that* are ware rebuykkyde,  
And alle to-rattys oure mene with theire riste horses,  
flore they see *thaire* cheftayne be chauffede so sore,  
They chasse and choppe doune oure cheualrous knyghttes!  
Sir Bedwere was borne thurghe, and his breste thyrllede,  
With a bullyche brannde, brode at *the* hiltis,  
The ryalle rannke stele to his herte rynns, 2240  
And he rusches to *the* erthe, rewthe es the more!

Then Arthur  
comes to the  
rescue

Thane *the* conquerour take kepe, and come with his  
strengthes

To reschewe *the* ryche mene of *the* Rounde Table,  
To owtraye *the* emperour, 3if aunture it schewe, 2244  
Ewyne to *the* egle, and "Arthur!" askryes

The emperour thane egerly at Arthure he strykez,  
 Awkarde on *the* vmbrere, and egerly hym hittez !  
 The nakyde swerde at *the* nese noyes hym sare, 2248  
 The blode of [the] bolde kynges ouer *the* breste rynnys,  
 Beblede at *the* brode schelde and *the* bryghte mayles !  
 Oure bolde kynges bowes *the* blonke be *the* bryghte brydylle,  
 With his burlyche brande a buffette hym rechis, 2252  
 Thourgh *the* brene and *the* breste w~~it~~h his bryghte wapyne,  
 O-slante doune fro *the* slote he slyttes at ones !  
 Thus endys *the* emperour of Arthure hondes,  
 And alle his austeryne oste *thare*-ofe ware affrayede !  
 Now they ferke to *the* fyrthe, a fewe *that* are leuede,  
 ffor ferdnesse of oure folke, by *the* fresche strandez !  
 The floure of oure fersse mene one fferant stede  
 ffolowes frekly on *the* frekes, thate ffrayede was neuer  
 Thane *the* kyde conquerour cryes fulle lowde,— 2261  
 “Cosyne of Cornewaile, take kepe to *thi* selfene,  
 That no captayne be keypde for none siluer,  
 Or *sir* Kayous dede be cruelly vengede !” 2264  
 “Nay,” sais *sir* Cador, “so me Cryste helpe !  
 Thare ne es kaysere ne kynges, *that* vndire Criste ryngnes,  
*That* I ne schalle kille colde dede be crafte of my handez !”  
 Thare myghte mene see chiftaynes, on chalke whittestedez,  
 Choppe doune in the chaas cheualrye noble, 2269  
 Romaines *the* rycheeste and ryalle kynges,  
 Braste with ranke stele theire rybbys in sondyre !  
 Braynes fore-brustene thurgh burneste helmes, 2272  
 With brandez for-brittenede one biede in *the* laundez  
 They hewed doune haythen mene with hilted swerdez,  
 Be hole hundreth on hye, by *the* holte eynyes !  
 Thare myghte no siluer thaym saue, ne socoure theire  
 lyues, 2276  
 Sowdane, ne Sarazene, ne senatour of Rome !  
 Thane releus *the* renkes of the Rounde Table,  
 Be *the* riche reuare that rynnys so faire,  
 Lugegez thaym lufye by *tha* lyghte strandez, 2280  
 Alle on lawe in *the* lawnde, thas lordlyche byernes

The emperor  
strikes Arthur on  
the visor, and  
wounds his nose

Arthur gives him  
a buffet that cuts  
through his  
cuirass and his  
breast

Sir Lucius dies,  
and the Romans  
fly

Arthur's men  
pursue them.

The king bids  
them take venge-  
ance for *sir*  
Cayous

*Sir* Cador de-  
clares that he  
will spare neither  
king nor kaiser

[leaf 77, back]  
A fearful carnage  
follows

Heathen men are  
hewn down by  
hundreds

Arthur's men  
plunder the rich  
camp of the  
Romans

Thay kaire to *the* karyage, and tuke whate they likes,  
Kamelles and schadrisses, and cofirs fulle riche,  
Hekes, and hakkenays, and horses of armes, 2284  
Howsynge and herbeigage of heythene kynges ,

Horses, camels,  
dromedaries,  
milk white mules,  
and many mar-  
vellous beasts are  
captured.

They drewe owt of dromondaries dyuise lordes,  
Moyllez mylke whitte, and *meruayllous* bestez,  
Elfaydes, and arrabys, and olyfauntez noble, 2288  
*Thei* are of *the* Oryent, with honourable kynges

**B**ot sir Arthure onone ayeres *thei*-aftyre  
Ewyne to *the* emperour, with honourable kyngis ,  
Laughte hym vpe fulle louelyly with lordliche knyghttez,  
And ledde hym to *the* layere, thare the kyng lygges  
Thane harawdez heghely, at heste of the lordes,  
Hunttes vpe the haythemene, that on heghte lygges,

The bodies of the  
emperour and  
the chief men of  
Rome are em-  
balmed and  
wrapped in lead,

The Sowdane of Surry, and certayne kynges, 2296  
Sexty of *the* cheefe senatours of Rome  
Thane they bussches and bawmede *thaire* honourliche  
kyngis,

Sewed theme in sendelle sexti-faulde aftre,  
Lappede them in lede, lesse that they schulde 2300  
Chawnge or chawffe, 3if *thay* myghte escheffe ,

enclosed in  
cheests, and sent  
to Rome with  
their banners  
over them

Closed in kystys clene vn-to Rome,  
With theire baners a-bowne, theire bagis there-vndyre,  
In whate countré *thay* kaire that knyghttesmyghte knawe  
Iche kyng be his colours, in kyth whare [he] lengede  
Onone one *the* secounde daye, sone by *the* morne,

Two senators  
come barefoot  
and kneel before  
the conqueror.

Twa senatours ther come, and certayne knyghttez,  
Hodles fro *the* hethe, ouer *the* holte eynes, 2308  
Barefote ouer *the* bente, with brondes so ryche,  
Bowes to *the* bolde kyng, and biddis hym *the* hiltes,  
Whethur he wille hang theym or hedde, or halde  
theyme on lyfe , 2311

Knelyde be-fore *the* conquerour in kyrtilles allone ,  
With carefulle contenaunce *thay* karpide *these* wordes,—

“Twa senatours we are, thi subgettez of Rome,  
That has sauede oure lyfe by *these* salte strandys ,  
Hyd vsin *the* hegh wode, thurgh *the* helpynge of Criste;

Be-sekes the of socoure, as soueraygne and lorde, 2317

Grante vs lyffe and lyme with leberalle herte, [leaf 78]

ffor his luffe that the lente this lordchipe in erthe ! "

"I graunte," *quod* [the] gude kyng, "thurghe grace of  
my selfene, 2320

The king grants  
them their lives  
on condition of  
their carrying a  
message for him  
to Rome

I guffe 3owe lyffe and lyme, and leue for to passe,

So 3e doo my message menskefully at Rome,

That ilke charge *that* I 3ow 3uffe here be-fore my cheeffe  
knyghttez "

"3is," sais the *senatours*, "that salle we ensure, 2324

Sekerly be oure trowhes thi sayenges to fullfille,

We salle lett for no lede *that* lyffes in erthe,

ffore pape, ne for potestate, ne prynce so noble,

That ne salle lelely in lande thi letteres pronounce, 2328

ffor duke ne fore dussepere, to dye in *the* payne ! "

**T**thane the banerettez of Bretayne broghte *thems* to  
tentis,

The Britons cause  
barbers to shave  
them, in token of  
their submission

There barbours ware bownne, with basyns one lofte,

With warme wature<sup>1</sup> i-wys they wette theme fulle sone,

They schouene thes schalkes schappely ther-aftyre,

To rekkene theis Romaynes recreaunt and 3oldene,

ffor-thy schoue they theme to schewe, for skomfite of

Rome

They coupylde *the* kystys on kameles be-lyue, 2336

They fasten the  
chests on camels

On asses and arrabyes, theis honourable kynges,

The emperoure for honoure, alle by hym one,

Euene appone *ane* olyfaunte, hys egle owtt ouere,

The emperor s  
body, for honour,  
is by itself on an  
elephant

Be-kende theme the captyfis, the kyngedide hyme selfene,

And alle by-fore his kene mene karpede thees wordes,—

**H**ere are the kystis," *quod* the kyng, "kaire ouer  
the mownttez,

Arthur charges  
them to say  
that they have  
brought the ar-  
rears of tribute  
due from him to  
Rome

Mette fulle monee *that* 3e haue mekyll 3ernede,

The taxe and *the* trebutte of tene schore wynteres, 2344

That was tenefully tynte in tyme of oure elders

Saye to *the* senatoure, *the* ceté *that* 3emes,

That I sende hyme *the* somme, assaye how hyme likes !

<sup>1</sup> MS wartue

This is the only  
tribute they will  
ever get from  
him

Bott byde theme neuere be so bolde, whylles my blode  
regnes, 2348

They hasten to  
Rome and sum  
mon the people  
to the Capitol

Efte for to brawlle theme for my brode landez,  
Ne to aske trybut ne taxe be nakyne tytyle,  
Bot syche tresoure as this, whilles my tyme lastez "  
Nowe they raike to Rome the redyeste wayes, 2352  
Knylles in the Capatoylle, and comowns assembles,  
Souerayngez and senatours, the ceté that ȝemes,  
Be-kende theme the caryage, kystis and other, 2355

They perform  
Arthur's message  
as he directed

Alls the conquerour comaunde with cruelle wordes  
" We hafe trystily trayuelled this tribute to feche,

They have  
brought the taxes  
from England and  
Ireland, and all  
the west

The taxe and the trewage of fowre score wynteris,  
Of I[n]glande, of Irelande and alle thur owtt illes,  
That Arthure in the Occedente occupyes att ones 2360  
He byddis ȝow neuere be so bolde, whills his blode regnes,  
To brawle ȝowe fore Bietayne ne his brode landes,  
Ne aske hyme tribute ne taxe be nonkyns tytyle,  
Bot syche tresoure as this, whills his tyme lastis 2364

[leaf 78, back]  
They declare that  
they have suffer  
ed defeat and  
great loss,

We haffe foughttene inffrance, and vs es foule happenede,  
And alle oure myche faire folke faye are by-leuede '  
Eschappide there ne cheuallrye, ne cheftaynes nother,  
Bott choppede downne in the chasse, syche chawmse es  
be-fallene ' 2368

and bid the Ro-  
mans beware

We rede ȝe store ȝowe of stone, and stuffene ȝour walles  
ȝow wakkens wandrethe and werre, be ware, ȝif ȝow  
lykes !"

This great battle  
between Arthur  
and the Romans  
was fought in the  
cride of May

In the kalendez of Maye this caas es be-fallene 2371  
The roy ryalle renownde, with his Rownde Table,  
One the coste of Costantyne by the clere strandez,  
Has the Romaynes ryche rebuykede for euer '  
Whene he hade foughttene in Fraunce, and the felde  
wonnene,

Arthur buries his  
knights,

And fersely his foomene felde owtte of lyfe, 2376

Sir Bedwere at  
Byonne,  
Sir Cayous at  
Came

He bydes for the beryenge of his bolde knyghtez,  
That in batelle with brandez ware broughte owte of lyfe  
He beryes at Bayone sir Bedwere the ryche,  
The cors of Kayone the kene at Came es be-leufede,

- Koueride with a crystalle clenly alle ouer , 2381  
 His fadyre conqueride *that* kyth knyghtly with hondes  
 Seyne in Burgoyne he bade to bery mo knyghttez,  
 Sir Berade and Bawdwyne, sir Bedwar *the* ryche,  
 Gud *sir* Cadour at Came, as his kynde askes  
 Thane *sir* Arthure onone, in *the* Auguste *ther*-aftyre,  
 Entees to Almayne wyth osten arrayed , 2387  
 Lengez at Lusscheburghe, to lechene hys knyghtter,  
 With his lele higge mene, as lorde in his awene  
 And on *Christofre* daye a concelle he haldez,  
 Withe kynges and kaysers, clerkkes and *other*,  
 Comandez them kenely to caste alle *theire* wittys, 2392  
 How he may *conquere* by crafte the kythe *that* he claymes  
 Bot the conquerour kene, curtais and noble,  
 Karpes in the concelle theys knyghtly wordez,—  
 “Here es a knyghte in theis kleuys, enclesside with hilles,  
 That I haue cowaite to knawe, be-cause of his wordez,  
 That es Lorayne *the* lele, I kepe noghte to layne , “  
 The lordchipe es louely, as ledes me telles 2399  
 I wille that ducherye devyse, and dele as me lykes,  
 And seyne dresse wyth *the* duke, if destyny suffre  
 The renke rebelle has bene vn-to my Rownde Table,  
 Redy aye with Romaynes, and ryotte my landes !  
 We salle rekkene fulle rathe, if resone so happene, 2404  
 Who has ryghte to *that* rente, by ryche Gode of heuene !  
 Thane wille I by Lumbardye lykande to schawe,  
 Sett lawe in *the* lande, *that* laste salle euer ,  
 The tyrauntez of *Turkayne* tempeste a littyll, 2408  
 Talke with *the* temperalle, whilles my tyme lastez ,  
 I gyffe my protceccioe to alle *the* pope landez,  
 My ryche penselle of pes my pople to schewe  
 It es a foly to offende oure fadyr vndre Gode, 2412  
 Owther Peter or Paule, *tha* postles of Rome.  
 3if we spare the *spirituelle*, we spede bot the betture ,  
 Whills we haue for to speke, spille salle it neuer !”  
 Now they spede at *the* spurres, with-owttyn speche  
 more, 2416

In the August  
after Arthur en-  
ters into Ger-  
many,  
and tarries at  
Luxemburg to  
heal his knights

He holds a coun-  
cil to devise how  
he may conquer  
all the territory  
that he claims

He makes a  
speech in the  
council, saying  
that he much de-  
sires the posses-  
sions of the duke  
of Lorraine,

who has long been  
a rebel to his  
Round Table

Full soon will he  
recon who h is  
right to the rent

Afterwards he  
will go to Loun-  
bardey and then  
visit the tyrants  
of Turkey,

but he will give  
protection to all  
the lands of the  
[leaf 79]  
Pope, for it is  
folly to offend  
our father under  
God

If we spare the  
goods of the  
spiritualty we  
shall speed the  
better

To *the* marche of Meyes, theis manliche knyghtez,  
 That es Lorraine alofede, as Londone es here ,  
 Ceté<sup>1</sup> of *that* seynzowre, that soueraynge es holdene  
 The kyng ferkes furthe on a faire stede, 2420  
 With Ferrer and <sup>2</sup> Ferawnte, and *other* foure knyghtez ,  
 A-bowte the ceté *tha* seuene, they soughte at *the* nextte,  
 To seke theme a sekyre place to sett withe engeynes ,  
 Thane they beneyde in burghe bowes of vyse, 2424  
 Bekyrs at *the* bolde kyng with boustouse lates,  
 Allblawsters at Arthure egaily schottes,  
 ffor to hurte hyme or his horse with *that* hard wapene  
 The kyng schonte for no schotte, ne no schelde askys,  
 Bot schewes hym scharpely in his schene wedys , 2429  
 Lenges alle at layser, and lokes one the wallys,  
 Whare *they* ware laweste the ledes to assaille  
 "Sir," said *sir* ferrere, "a ffoly thowe wirrkkes,  
 Thus nakede in thy noblaye to neghe to *the* walles,  
 Sengely in thy surcotte, this ceté to reche, 2434  
 And schewe *the* with-ine, there to schende vs alle  
 Hye vs hastylve heynne, or we mone fulle happene,  
 ffor hutt they the or thy horse, it harmes for euer !"  
 "Ife thow be ferde," quod the kyng, "I rede thow  
 ryde vttere, 2438  
 Lesse *that* they rywe the with theire rownnd wapyne !  
 Thow arte bot a fawntkyne, no ferly me thynkkys !  
 Thou wille beflayed for a flye *that* one thy fleschelyghttes !  
 I ame nothyng agaste, so me Gode helpe ! 2442  
 Thof suche gadlynges be greuede, it greues me botlyttle !  
 Thay wyne no wurchipe of me, bot wastys theire takle !  
 They salle wante or I weende, I wagene myne hevede !  
 Salle neuer harlotte haue happe, thorowe helpe of my  
 Lorde,  
 To kylle a corownde kyng with <sup>3</sup> krysme enoynttede !"  
 Thane come *the* herbariours, harageous knyghtez, 2448  
 The hale batelles one hye harrawnte ther-aftyre ,  
 And oure forreours ferse, appone fele halves,

<sup>1</sup> MS Pety.    <sup>2</sup> MS ferrerannde    <sup>3</sup> MS with with

- Come flyeande be-fore one ferawnt stedes ,  
 fferkande in arraye theene ryalle knyghttez, 2452  
 The renkez renownde of *the* Rownd Table  
 Alle *the* frekke mene of Fraunce folowede thare-aftyre,  
 ffaire fittyde one frownte, and one the felde houys  
 Thane the schalkes scharpelye scheftys theire hoisez,  
 To schewene them semly in theire scheene wedes , 2457  
 Buskes in batayle with baners displayede,  
 With brode scheldes enbrassede, and burlyche helmys,  
 With penouns and penselles of ylke prynce armes, 2460  
 Appayrehde with perrye and *precious* stones  
 The lawnces with loraynes, and lemande scheldes,  
 Lyghtenande as *the* leuenynge, and lemand al ouer  
 Thane the price mene prekes, and proues *theire* horsez,  
 T Satilles to *the* ceté, appone sere halves , 2465  
 Enserches the subbarbes sadly thare-aftyre,  
 Discoueris of schotte-mene, and skyrmys a lyttile ,  
 Skayres *thaire* skottefers, and theire skowtte-waches, \*  
 Brittenes there barrers with theire bryghte wapyns, \*  
 Bett downe a barbycane, and *the* brygge wynnys 2470  
 Ne hade the garnysone bene gude at *the* grete zates,  
 They hade wonne that wone be theire awene strenghe !  
 Thane with-drawes oure mene, and drusses theme bettyre,  
 ffor dred of *the* drawe-brigge dasschede in sondre ,  
 Hyes to *the* harbergage, thare the kyngz houys  
 With his batelle one heghe, horsyde on stedys , 2476  
 Thane was *the* prynce puruayed, and *theire* places  
 nommene,  
 Pyghte paulylyons of paffe, and plattes in seegge  
 Thane lenge they lordly, as *theme* leefte thoghte,  
 Waches in ylke warde, as to *the* werre falles, 2480  
 Settes vp sodaynly certayne engynes  
 One Sonondaye be *the* Soone has a flethe zoldene  
 The kyngz calles one Florente, *that* flour was of  
 knyghttez,—  
 "The Fraunche-meine enfeblesches, ne faillyme thynkkys !  
 They are vn-fondyde folke in *tha* faire marches, 2485

and the renowned  
champions of the  
Round Table,  
and all the bold  
men of France  
following them

[leaf 79, back]

They proceed in  
battle-array with  
banners and broad  
shields, and  
pennons adorned  
with precious  
stones

The lances gleam  
like lightning

They encompass  
the city on diuers  
sides,

skirmish with the  
garrison,  
and break down  
their defences

But the garrison  
at the great gates  
checks them

Arthur's men  
withdraw to  
where the king  
is waiting

They pitch their  
tents, and pre-  
pare for a regular  
siege

Arthur calls St.  
Florent,



for theme wantes *the* flesche and fude that theme lykes  
 Here are florestez faire appone fele halues, 2487  
 and sends him to forage for cattle And thedyre feemene are fiede with freliche bestes '  
 Thow salle foonde to *the* felle, and forraye the mountes ,  
 Sir fforawnt and *su* Florydas salle folowe thi brydylle ,  
 Vs moste with some fresche mette refresche oure pople,  
 That are feedde in *the* fyrthe with *the* froyte of *the* erthe  
 Thare salle weende to *this* viage sir Gawayne hymselfene,  
 Wardayne fulle wyrchipfulle, and so hym wele semes ,  
 Sir Wecharde, *sir* Waltyre, theis wyrchipfulle knyghtes,  
 With alle wyseste mene of *the* weste marches , 2496  
 and many other knights of re- Sir Gawayne him self, the wor  
 known shall accompany them, shipful warden,  
 Sir Clegis, *su* Clarybalde, *sir* Clarymownde *the* noble,  
 The capytayne of <sup>1</sup> Cardyfe clenlyche arrayede  
 Goo now, warne alle *the* wache, Gawayne and *othei*,  
 And weendes furthe on *your* waye withowttynne moo  
 wordes " 2500  
 These fresh men of arms start on  
 their journey through woods  
 and over hills [leaf 80]  
 Now ferkes to *the* fyrthe thees fresche mene of armes,  
 To *the* felle so fewe, theis fresclyche byeines,  
 Thorowe hopes and hymlande hillys and *othei*,  
 Holtis and hare woddes with heslyne schawes, 2504  
 Thorowe marasse and mosse and montes so heghe ,  
 And in the myste mornyng one a mede falles,  
 Mawene and vne-made, maynoyrede bott lyttlylle,  
 In swathes sweppene downe, fulle of swete floures 2508  
 They fall upon a field of grass  
 newly mown,  
 Thare vnbrydilles theis blode, and baytes *theire* horses,  
 To *the* grygyng of *the* daye, *that* byrdez <sup>2</sup> gane syng,  
 Whylles the surs of *the* sonne, *that* sonde es of Cryste,  
 That solaces alle synfulle, *that* syghte has in erthe 2512  
 where they bait their horses,  
 while the birds sweetly sing  
 Thane weendes owtt the wardayne, *sir* Gawayne hym  
 selfene,  
 Sir Gawayne goes forth by himself  
 to seek adventures  
 Als he *that* weysse was and wyghte,<sup>3</sup> wondyrs to seke ,  
 Thane was he warre of a wye, wondyre wele armyde,  
 Baytand one a wattere banke by *the* wodde eynis, 2516  
 He sees a knight well armed,  
 Buskede in brenyes bryghte to be-halde,  
 Enbrassed a brode schelde on a blonke ryche,  
 With burenne ony borne, bot a boye one,

<sup>1</sup> MS oo    <sup>2</sup> MS *that* byrdez *that* byrdez    <sup>3</sup> MS wyghte wvghte

Houes by hym on a blonke, and his spere holdes 2520 and a page carry-  
 He bare gessenande in golde, thre grayhondes of sable, ing his spear  
 With chapes a cheynes of chalke whytte syluer, On his shield his  
 A chareboole in *the* cheefe, chawngawnde of hewes, coat of arms is  
 And a cheefe anterous, chalange who lykes 2524 depicted  
 Sir Gawayne glyftes on the gome with a glade wille !  
 A grete spere fro his grome he grypes in hondes, Sir Gawaine be-  
 Gyrdes ewene ouere *the* streme one a stede ryche, holds him with  
 To *that* steryne in stour, one strenghe *thare* he houys ! great joy, and  
 Egerly one Inglsce "Arthure !" he askryes, 2529 goes across the  
 The *tother* irouslie ansuers hym sone stream towais  
 On a launde of Lorrayne with a lowde steuen, He shouts his  
 That ledes myghte lystene *the* lenghe of a myle ! 2532 cry, "Arthur  
 "Whedyr prykkes thow, piloum, *that* profers so large ? The other answers  
 Here pykes thowe no praye, profire whene *the* lykes ! with a loud voice  
 Bot thow in *this* perelle <sup>1</sup> put of the betture, Then the strange  
 Thow salle be my presonere, for alle thy prowde lates ! <sup>1</sup> knight declares  
 "Sir," sais sir Gawayne, "so me Gode helpe ! 2537 that Gawaine  
 Siche glauerande gomes greues me bot lyttile ! shall be his  
 Bot if thowe graythe thy gere, the wille grefe happene, prisoner  
 Or thowe goo of *this* greue, for alle thy grete wordes !" Sir Gawaine  
 Thane *there* launces they lachene, thes loudlyche byernez, treats his great  
 Laggene with longe speres one lyarde stedes, words with con-  
 Cowpene at awntere be krafes of armes, tempt  
 Tille bothe *the* crowelle speres broustene att ones ! 2544 Then they lay  
 Thorowe scheldys *they* schotte, and scherde thorowe their spears in  
 ma[i]les, rest, and meet  
 Bothe schere thorowe schoulders a schaft-monde large !  
 Thus worthylly *thes* wyes wondede ere bothene,  
 Or they wreke *theme* of wrethe a-waye wille *they* neuer !  
 Than they raughte in the reyne and a-gayne rydes, Then they rein  
 Redely theis iathe mene rusches owtte swerdez, 2550 in their horses  
 Hittes one hellmes fulle hertelyche dynttys, [leaf 80, back]  
 Hewes appone hawberkes with fulle harde wapyns ! and return to  
 fulle stowtly *they* stryke, thre steryne knyghttes, the fight with  
 Stokes at *the* stomake with stelyne poyntes, 2554 swords  
 Fearful blows are  
 exchanged

<sup>1</sup> MS *pererelle*

ffeghttene and floresche withe flawmande swerde,  
 Tille *the* flawes of fyre flawmes one theire helmes  
 Thane *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and grychgide full  
 sore,  
 With Galuthe his gude swerde grymlye he strykes !  
 Clefe *the* knyghttes schelde clenliche in sondre ! 2559  
 Who lukes to *the* lefte syde, whene his horse launches,  
 With *the* lyghte of *the* sonne men myghte see his  
 lyuere !  
 Thane granes *the* gome fore greefe of his wondys,  
 And gyrdys at *sir* Gawayne, as he by glentis ,  
 And awkewarde egerly sore he hym smyttes , 2564  
 An alet enamelde he oches in sondre,  
 Bristes *the* rerebrace with the bronde ryche,  
 Kerues of at *the* coutere with *the* clene egge,  
 Ane[n]tis *the* awawmbrace, vrayllede with siluer ! 2568  
 Thorowe a dowble vesture of veluett ryche,  
 With *the* venymous swerde a vayne has he towchede !  
 That voydes so violently *that* alle his witte changede !  
 The vesere, the aventaille, his vestunis ryche, 2572  
 With the valyant blode was verrede alle ouer !  
 Thane this tyrante tite turnes *the* brydille,  
 Talkes vn-tendirly, and sais, "*thow* arte towchede !  
 Vs bus haue a blode-bande, or thi ble change, 2576  
 ffor alle *the* barbours of Bretayne salle noghte thy blode  
 stawnche !  
 ffor he *that* es blemeste with *this* brade brande, blyne  
 schalle he neuer "  
 "3a," *quod* *sir* Gawayne, "*thow* greuës me bot  
 lyttile ! 2579  
 Thowe wenys to glopyne me with thy gret wordez !  
 Thow trowes with thy talkynge *that* my harte talmes !  
 Thow be-tydes *thou* fere or thowe hyene turne,  
 Bot *thow* telle me tytte, and tarye no lengere,  
 What may staunche this blode *that* thus faste rynnes "  
 "3ise, I say *the* sothely, and sekire *the* my trowthe,  
 No surgone in Salame salle saue *the* bettyre ,

Sir Gawayne  
waxes wroth, and  
strikes grimly  
with his sword  
Galuth

He cleaves the  
knight's shield  
asunder, and lays  
open his side

The knight  
strikes fiercely at  
Sir Gawayne

He cuts through  
his armour and  
draws blood,

which flows over  
all his dress

Then the knight  
jeers at him, and  
says the blood  
shall never be  
staunchd

Sir Gawayne de-  
spises his words,

and bids him tell  
what will stop  
the bleeding

The knight will  
tell Gawayne if

With-thy *that* thowe suffre me, for sake of thy Cryste, he will allow  
To schewe shortly my schrifte, and schape for myne shrift and pre-  
ende " 2588 pare himself for  
his end

"3is," *quod sir* Gawayne, "so me God helpe ! Gawayne readily  
I gyfe *the* grace and graunt, *thofe thou* hafe grefe seruede, grants this  
With-thy thowe say me sothe what thowe here sekes,  
Thus sengilly and sulayne alle *thi* selfe one, 2592  
And whate laye thow leues one, layne noghte *the* sothe,  
And whate legyaunce, and where *thow* arte lorde "

"My name es *sir* Priamus, a prynce es my fadyre, The stranger  
Praysede in his partyes with prouede kynges, 2596 knight tells him  
In Rome thare he regnes he es riche haldene, that he is Sir  
He has bene rebelle to Rome, and redene theire landes, Priamus, son  
Werreyand weisely wyntters and 3eres, 2599 of a prince,  
Be witt, and be wyssdome, and be wyghte strenghe, who rebelled  
And be wyrchupfulle werre, his awene has he wonne against Rome,  
He es of Alexandire blode, ouerlyng of kynges, and gained a  
The vnle of his ayele, *sir* Ector of Troye, 2603 [leaf 81]  
And here es the kynredene that I of come, kingdom  
And Iudas and Iosue, *thuse* gentille knyghtes

I ame apparaunt his ayere, and eldeste of *other*, He is of the blood  
Of Alexandere and Aufnke, and alle *tha* owte landes, of Alexander and  
I am in possessione, and plenerly sessede 2608 Hector of Troy.  
In alle *the* price cetees that to *the* porte langes, related also to  
I salle hafe trewly the tresow and the londes, Judas and  
And bothe trebute and taxe whilles my tyme lastes Joshua,  
I was so hawtayne of herte, whilles I at home lengede, and is heir of  
I helde nane my hippe heghte vndire heuene ryche, Africa  
ffor-thy was I sente hedire with seuene score knyghttez,

To a-saye of this werre, be sente of my fadire, 2615 When at home he  
And I am for Cyrus witrye schamely supprisede, was so proud and  
And be aw[n]tire of armes owtrayed fore euere ! overbearing,  
Now hafe I taulde *the the* kyne that I ofe come, that he was sent  
Wille thow for knyghthede kene me thy name ? " 2619 by his father to  
"Be Criste," *quod sir* Gawayne, "knyghte was I neuer ! this war with a  
With *the* kydde conquerour a knafe of his chambyre band of knights

Has wroghte in his wardrope wynters and 3eres, He desires to  
know Sir Ga-  
wayne's name  
Sir Gawayne an-  
swers discreetly  
that he is only a  
knave of Arthur's  
chamber

One his longe armou that hym beste lykid, 2623  
 I poyne alle his pavelouns *that* to hym selfe pendes,  
 Dyghttes his dowbletetez for dukes and erles,  
 Aketouns auenaunt fore Arthure hym selfene,  
 That he vsede in werre alle this aughte wyntter ! 2627  
 He made me ȝomane at ȝole, and gafe me gret gyftes,  
 And c<sup>1</sup> ponde, and a horse, and harnayse fullle ryche,  
 Gife I happe to my hele that hende for to serue,  
 I be holpene in haste, I hette the for-sothe !” 2631  
 “Giffe his knafes be syche, his knyghttez are noble !  
 Therees no kynge vndire Criste may kempe with hym one !  
 He wille be Alexander ayre, that alle *the* erthe lowttede,  
 Abillere *thane* euer was *sir* Ector of Troye 2635  
 Now fore the krysme *that thou* kaghte *that day thou*  
 was crystenede,  
 Whethire thowe be knyghte or knaffe, knawe now *the*  
 sothe ”  
 “My name es *sir* Gawayne, I graunt *the* for sothe,  
 Cosyne to *the* conquerour, he knawes it hym selfene,  
 Kydd in his kalander a knyghte of his chambyre, 2640  
 And rollede the richeste of alle *the* Rounde Table !  
 I ame *the* dussepere and duke he dubbede with his hondes,  
 Deynttely on a daye be-fore his dere knyghtes,  
 Gruche noghte, gude *sir*, *thofe* me this grace happene ;  
 It es *the* gifte of Gode, the gree es hys awene !” 2645  
 “Peture !” sais Priamus, “now payes me bettre  
 Thane I of Provynce warre prynce, and of Paresche ryche !  
 ffore me ware leuer preuely be prykkyd to *the* harte,  
 Thane euer any prikkere had siche a pryse wonnyne !  
 Bot here es herberde at hande, in ȝone huge holtes,  
 Halle bataile one heyghe, take hede ȝif the lyke ! 2651  
 The duke of Lorrayne the derfe, with his dere knyghtes,  
 The doughtyest of Dolfinede, and Duche mene many,  
 The lordes of Lumbardye that leders are haldene,  
 The garnysone of Godarde gaylyche arrayede, 2655  
 The wyese of *the* Westuale, wurchipfull biernez,

“He made me a  
 yeoman at Yule,  
 and gife me  
 great gifts ”

“If his knaves  
 be such his  
 knights are no  
 ble” exclaims  
 Sir Priamus  
 Alexander and  
 Hector will be  
 nothing to him

Then Sir Gawaine  
 tells him the  
 truth

He is Sir Ga-  
 waine, cousin to  
 the conqueror,  
 the richest knight  
 of all the Round  
 Table

[leaf 51, back]  
 Then Sir Priamus  
 says he is better  
 pleased than if he  
 were prince of  
 Provence and  
 Paris

Then he warns  
 Gawaine that the  
 duke of Lorraine  
 with his knights  
 is lying in the  
 wood near

Of Sessoyne and Surylande Sarazenes enewe,  
 They are nowmerde fulle neghe, and namede in rollez,  
 Sixty thowsande and tene for-sothe of sekýre mene of  
 armez, 2659 There is a  
mighty host  
well armed

Bot ȝif thou hye fro *this* hethe, it harmes vs bothe,  
 And bot my hurtes be sone holpene, hole be I neuer!  
 Tak heede to *this* hansemane, *that* he no horne blawe,  
 Are thoue heyly in haste beese hewene al to peces,  
 ffor they are my retenuz to ryde whare I wylle, 2664  
 Es none redyare renkes regnande in erthe,  
 Be thou raghte *with that* rowtt, thou rydes no *forther*,  
 Ne thou bees neuer rawnsonede for reches in erthe!"

Sir Gawayne wente or *the* wathe come, whare hym beste  
 lykede, 2668 He bids him be  
ware lest they  
should discover  
and destroy him

With this wortheliche wye, that wondyd was sore,  
 Merkes to *the* mountayne there oure mene lenges,  
 Baytaynde there blonkes *ther on the* brode mede,  
 Lordes lenande lowe one lemande scheldes, 2672 who are baiting  
their horses on the  
broad mead and

With lowde laghttars one lofte for lykyng of byrdez,  
 Of larkes, of lynkwhyttz, *that* lufflyche songene,  
 And some was sleghte one slepe *with* slaughte of *the* pople,  
 That sange in *the* sesone in the schenne schawes,  
 So lawe in *the* lawndez so lykande notes listening to the  
songs of the  
birds

Thane *sir* Whycher whas warre *thaire* wardayne was  
 wondyde, 2678 Sir Whycher per  
ceives that Sir  
Gawayne is  
wounded,

And went to hym wepand, and wryngande his handes,  
 Sir Wychere, *sir* Walchere, theis weise mene of armes,  
 Had wondyre of *sir* Gawayne, and wente hyme a-gayns,  
 Mett hym in the mydwaye, and meruaile theme t[h]oghte  
 How he maisterede *that* mane, so myghtty of strengthes!  
 Be alle *the* welthe of *the* werlde, so woo was *theme* neuer!  
 "ffor alle oure wirchipe i-wysse awaye es in erthe!"

"Greue ȝow noghte," *quod* Gawayne, "for Godis luffe  
 of heuene, 2687 Sir Gawayne  
makes light of  
his wounds

ffore this es bot goesomere, and gyffene one erles,  
 Thoffemyschouldre beschrede, and myschelde thyrllede,  
 And the wielde of myne arme werkkes a littalle,

His prisoner, Sir Priamus, has salves that will heal them	This prisonere <i>sir Priamus</i> , that has perillous wondes, Sais that he has saluez salle softene vs bothene " 2691
They assaut him to dismount	Thane sturtes to his steraþe sterynfulle knyghttez, And he lordely lyghttes and laghte of his brydille, And lete his burlyche blonke baite on <i>the</i> flores ,
[leaf 82]	Braydes of his bacenette and his ryche wedis, 2695 Bownnes to his brode schelde and bowes to <i>the</i> eathe, In alle the bodey of that bolde es no blode leuede ! Than preses to <i>sir Priamours</i> precious knyghtes,
The knights lift Sir Priamus from his horse	Auyssely of his horse hentes hym in armes , 2699 His helme and his hawberke <i>thay</i> taken of aftyre, And hastily for his hurte alle his herte chawngyd ,
They lay him down, and take off his weeds	They laide hyme downe in the lawndez, and laghte of his wedes, And he lenede hym one lange, or how hym beste lykede A ffoyle of fyne golde they fandle at his gyrdille, 2704 That es fulle of <i>the</i> flour of <i>the</i> fourr welle, That flowes owte of Paradyce whene <i>the</i> flode ryses, That myche froyt of fallez, that feede schalle vs alle , Be it frette on his flesche, <i>thare</i> synues are entamede, The fieke schalle be fische halle with-in fowle howres
A knight dresses their wounds	They vncouere that cors with fulle clene hondes , With clere watire a knyghte clensis theire wondes, Keled theyme kyndly, and comforthed <i>ther</i> hertes And whene <i>the</i> carffes ware clene, <i>thay</i> clede them azayne, Barelle ferrers they brochede, and broghte theme the wyne, 2715
Then wine and provisions are brought to them	Whene <i>thay</i> hade etene anone they armede after Thane tha awntrende men " <i>as armes !</i> " askryes, With a claryoune clere, thre knyghtez to-gedyre, 2719
The scouts bring news of the army in the wood	Callys to concelle, and of this case tellys — 2719 "3ondyr es a companye of clene mene of armes, The keneste in kontek that vndir Criste lenges , In 3one okene wode an oste are arrayede, Vndir-takande mene of <i>thiese</i> owte londes , 2723
Sir Gawaine is for attacking them,	As sais vs <i>sir Priamours</i> , so helpe seynt Peter ! " "Go, mene," quod Gawayne, "and grape in 3oure hertez,

Who salle graythe to 3one greue to 3one gret lordes ,  
 3if we gettlesse goo home, the kyng wille be greuede,  
 And say we are gadlynges, agaste for a lyttill 2728  
 We are with *sir* Florente, as to-daye falles,  
 That es floure of ffraunce, for he fleede neuer ,  
 He was chosens and chargegide in chambire of *the* kynges,  
 Chiftayne of *this* jou<sup>n</sup>nee with cheualrye noble , 2732  
 Whethure he fyghte or he flee, we salle folowe aftyre ,  
 fore alle *the* fere of 3one folke forsake salle I neuer ! "

but refers to Sir  
 Florent the  
 leader of the  
 party

" fadyre," says *sir* Florent, " fulle faire 3e it telle !  
 Bot I ame bot a fawntkyne, vn-fraystede in armes ,  
 3if any foly be-falle, *the* fawte salle be owrs,  
 And fremdly o Fraunce be flemede for eue<sup>r</sup> ! 2738

Sir Florent ex-  
 presses his defen-  
 ence to Sir Ga-  
 wayne, the warden  
 of the knights of  
 the Round Table,

Woundes noghte 3our wurchipe, my witte es bot symple ,  
 3e are owre wardayne i-wysse, wyrke as 3owe lykes ,  
 3e are at the ferreste noghte passande fyve hundrethe,  
 And *that* es fully to fewe to feghte with theme alle,  
 ffore harlottez and hansemene salle helpe bott littill ,  
 They wille hye theyme hyene for alle *theire* gret wordes !  
 I rede 3e wyrke aftyre witte, as wyesse men of armes,  
 And warpes wyllly a-waye, as wuchipfulle knyghtes "  
 " I grawnte," quod *sir* Gawayne, " so me Gode helpe !  
 Bot here are galyarde gomes *that* of *the* gre seruus,  
 The kreuelleste knyghttes of *the* kynges chambyre,  
 That kane carpe with the coppe knyghtly wordes ,  
 We salle proue to-daye who salle the prys wyne " 2751

and thinks they  
 are too few to  
 [leaf 82, back]  
 fight with so  
 many

He is for a care-  
 ful retreat

**N**owe feruours fers vn-to *the* fyrthe rydez,  
 And fonngez a faire felde, and on fotte lyghttez ,  
 Prekes aftyre *the* pray, as pryce mene of armes  
 fflorent and Floridas, with fyve score knyghttez , 2755  
 ffolowede in *the* foreste, and on *the* way fowndys,  
 fflyngande a faste trott, and on *the* folke dryffes

Arthur's men  
 advance to the  
 wood

Than felewes fast to oure folke wele a fyve hundreth  
 Of freke mene to *the* fyrthe, appone fresche horses ,  
 One *sir* Feraunt be-fore, apone a fayre stede, 2760

A band of 500 of  
 the enemy meet  
 them, headed by  
 Sir Feraunt

Was fosterde in Famacoste, the fende was his fadyre,



- He flenges to *sir Florent*, and pristly he kyes,—  
 “Why flees thou, falls knyghte? *thefende hafe thi saule!*”  
 Thane *sir fflorent* was fayne, and in fewter castys,  
 One Fawnelle of ffryselande to<sup>1</sup> fferaunt he rydys, 2765  
 And raghte in *the reyne* on *the stede ryche*,  
 And rydes to-ward the rowte, restes he no lengere!  
 ffulle butt in *the frounte* he flysches hym euene, 2768  
 And alle dysfegoures his face with his felle wapene!  
 Thurghe his bryghte bacenette his brayne has he towchede,  
 And brustene his neke-bone, *that alle his breste stoppede!*  
 Thane his cosyne askryede, and cryede fulle lowde,  
 “Thowe has killede colde dede *the kyng* of alle knyghttes!  
 He has bene fraustede on felde in fyftene rewmes, 2774  
 He fonde neuer no fleke myghte feghte with hym one!  
 Thow schalle dye for his dede with my derfe wapene,  
 And alle *the* doughtty for dule *that in* zone dale houes!”  
 “ffy,” sais *sir ffloridas*, “thow fferyande wryche!  
 Thow wenes for to flay vs, ffloke-mowthede schiewe!”  
 Bot ffloridas with a swerde, as he by glenttys, 2780  
 Alle *the* flesche of *the* flanke he flappes in sondyre,  
 That alle *the* filthe of *the* freke and fele of *the* guttes  
 ffoloes his fole fotte, whene he furthe rydes! 2783  
 Than rydes a renke to reschewe *that* byerne,  
 That was Raynalde of *the* Rodes, and rebelle to Criste,  
 Peruertede with paynyns *that* Cristene persewes,  
 Presses in prowldy, as *the* praye wendes, 2787  
 fflore he hade in Prewsslande myche pryce wonnene,  
 ffor-thi in p:esence thare he profers so large!  
 Bot thane a renke, *sir Richere* of *the* Rounde Table,  
 One a ryalle stede rydes hym azaynes, 2791  
 Thorowe a rownnde rede schelde he ruschede hym sone,  
 That the rosselde spere to his herte rynnes!  
 The renke relys a-howte and rusches to *the* erthe,  
 Roris fulle ruydlye, bot rade he no more! 2795  
 Now alle *that* es fere and vnfaye of *thes* fyve hundreth

He calls scorn  
fully on Sir Flo  
rent,

who with his  
lance in rest  
pierces him  
through the  
brain

His cousin vows  
vengeance for his  
death,

but Sir Floridas  
quickly disposes  
of him

Sir Raynald, the  
renegade, proudly  
presses in,

but Sir Richer,  
of the Round  
Table, runs him  
through with a  
[leaf 88] —  
spear

The rest of the  
five hundred

<sup>1</sup> MS te,

ffalles on *sir* fflorent, a ffyve score knyghttes,  
 Be-twyx a plasche and a flode, appone a flate lawnde,  
 Oure folke fongene theire felde, and fawghte theme  
 agaynes 2799

fall on Sir Florent  
 and his men

Than was lowde appone lofte "Lorrayne!" askryede,  
 Whene ledys with longe speris lasschene to-gedyrs,  
 And "Arthure!" one ouresyde, whene they meoghte ay lede

The one side  
 shouts "Lor-  
 raine" the other  
 "Arthuri"

Than *sir* fflorent and Floridas in fewtyre they caste,  
 fruschene one alle the ffrape, and biernes affrayede,  
 ffelhs fyve at the frounte thare they fyrste enteride,  
 And, or they ferke forthire, fele of *these othere*! 2806  
 Brenyes browddene they briste, brütenede scheldes,  
 Bettes and beres downe the best *that theme* byddes,  
 Alle *that* newlyde in the rowtte they rydene awaye,  
 So rewdly they rere theys ryalle knyghttes!

Sir Florent and  
 Sir Floridas per-  
 form gret deede  
 of valour

When *su* Priamous, *that* prince, per sayuede theire  
 gamene, 2811

Sir Priamus be-  
 sees Gawaine  
 that he may help  
 Arthur's knights  
 against the Sara-  
 cens

He hade peté in herte *that* he ne durste profire,  
 He wente to *sir* Gawayne, and sais hym *these* wordes,—  
 "Thi price mene fore thi praye putt are alle vndyre,  
 They are *wit* Sarazenes ouer-sette, mo *thane* seuene  
 hundreth 2815

Of *the* Sowdanes knyghtes owt of sere londes,  
 Walde *thow* suffice me, *sir*, for sake of thi Criste,  
 With a soppe of thi mene suppowelle theym ones"

"I giouche noghte," *quod* Gawayne, "*the* gree es  
*thaire* awene!" 2819

Sir Gawayne says  
 that they have  
 not fought their  
 all these fifteen  
 winters

They mone hafe gweiddouns fulle grett graunt of my  
 lorde,

Bot the freke mene of Fraunce fraiste theme selfene!  
 ffrekes faughte noghte *theire* fille this fyftene wynter!  
 I wille noghte stire *wit* my stale halfe a stede lenghe,  
 Bot they be stedde *wit* more stuffe *thane* one 3one stede  
 houys" 2824

**T**hane *su* Gawayne was warre, *wit*-owttyne *the* wode  
 hemmes,

He sees, outside  
 the wood,

men of *the* West  
phalia,

Wyres of *the* Westfale appone wyght horsez,  
Walopande wodely, as *the* waye forthes, 2827

headed by the  
Earl Antele, who  
leads 8000  
knights

With alle *the* wapyns i-wys *that to the* werre longez  
The erle Antele the olde the avawmwarde he buskes,  
Ayerande one ayther hande heghte thosande knyghtez,  
His pelours and pausyers passede alle nombyre, 2831  
That ever any prynce lede puruayed in erthe !

Than *the* duke of Lorryne dresesse thare-aftyre,  
With dowbille of *the* Duche-mene, *that* doughtty waie  
holdene ,

Paynymes of Fruyslande, prekkers fulle noble, 2835  
Come prekkande be-fore with Pymous knyghttez

The Earl is in  
dignant that Ar  
thur's knights  
should venture  
to resist so great  
a host

Than saide the erle Antele to Algere his brother,—  
“ Me angers einestly at Arthures knyghtez !

[leaf 89, back]

Thus enkerly one an oste awnters *thene* selfene , 2839

They wille be owtrayedede anone, are vndrone rynges,  
Thus folly one a felde to fyghte with vs alle !

Bot they be fesede in faye, ferly me thynkes ! 2842

Walde they *pur*posse take, and passe one theire waye-,

They had better  
retreat while  
they are able

Prike home to theire prynce, and theire play leue,  
They myghtelenghene themelyefe, and lossene bottlittulle !  
It wolde lyghte my herte, so helpe me oure Lorde ! ”

Sir Alger, his  
brother, says that  
though they are  
so few they are  
a match for an  
army

“ Sir,” sais *sur* Algere, “ thay hafe littulle vsede 2847  
To be owtrayedede withe oste me angers *the* more !

The fayreste schalle be fullefeye, *that* in oure floke ryddez,  
Alls fewe as they bene, are they the felde leue ! ”

Sir Gawaine  
encourages his  
knights

**T**hane gud Gawayne, gracious and noble, 2851  
Alle with glorious gle he glæddis his knyghtes ,

“ Gloppyns noghte, gud mene, for gleterand scheldes,  
3ofe 3one gadlyngez be gaye one 3one gret horses !

Banerettez of Bietayne, buskes vp 3ow hertes ! 2855

Beesnoghte baiste of 3one boyes, ne offthane byghte wedis !

We salle blenke theire boste for alle theire bolde profire,  
Als bouxome as birde es in bede to hir lorde !

“ If we fight to-  
day the field  
shall be ours ”

3effe we feghte to-daye, *the* felde schalle be owis, 2859  
The fekille faye salle faile, and falssede be distroyede !

- 3one folk is one ffrountere, vnfaistode theyme semes,  
 They make faythe and faye to *the* fend seluene!<sup>1</sup>  
 We salle in this viage victoues be holdene, 2863  
 And avauntede with voyce of valyant bienez,  
 Praysede with pryncez in presence of loides,  
 And luffed with ladyes in dyuerse londes!  
 Aughte neuer siche honoure none of oure elders, 2867  
 Vnwyne ne Absolone, ne none of thies *other*!  
 Whene we are moste in destresse, Marie we mene,<sup>1</sup>  
 That es oure maisters seyne, *that* he myche traistez,  
 Melys of *that* mylde qwene, that menskes vs alle, 2871  
 Who so meles of *that* mayde, myskaries he neuer!<sup>1</sup>  
 Be these wordes waiesaide, they ware noghte ferre be-hynde  
 Bot the lenghe of a launde, and "Loiayne!" askryes  
 Was neuer siche a justynge at *journé* in erthe, 2875  
 In the vale of Iosephate, as gestes vs telles,  
 Whene Iulyus *and* Ioatalle ware juggede to dy,  
 As was whene *the* ryche mene of *the* Rownde Table  
 Ruschede in-to *the* rowte one ryalle stedes!<sup>1</sup> 2879  
 ffor so raythely *thay* rusche with roselde speris,  
 That the raskaille was rade, and rane to *the* grefes,  
 And karede to *that* courte as cowardes for euer!  
 "Peter!" sais *sir* Gawayne, "this gladdez myne heite!<sup>1</sup>  
 That 3one gedlynges are gone, that made gret nowmbre,  
 I hope that thees harlottez salle harne vs bot littille,  
 ffore they wille hyde theme in haste with-in 3one holte  
 enis!<sup>1</sup> 2886  
 Thay are fewere one ffelde *than* *thay* were fyrste nombirde,  
 Befourtty thousande in faythe, for alle theyre faire hostes"  
 Bot one Iolyan of Iene, a geante fulle howge,  
 Has joned one *sir* Ierante, a justis of Walis,  
 Thorowe a jerownde schelde he jogges hym thorowe,  
 And a fyne gesserawnte of gentille mayles, 2892  
 Ioynter and gemows, he jogges in sondyre!  
 One a jambe stede *this* jurnee he makes,

Great shall be the  
rewards and joys  
of victory

In distress let  
them complain to  
Mary the mild  
queen

The enemy come  
upon them

Never was there  
such a jousting  
Even th it in the  
valley of Jehu the  
phit was not  
equal to it

The rascal rout  
run to the groves

Gawayne rejoices  
at the flight of  
the rabble

[leaf 84]

A huge giant is  
slain by a justice  
of Wales

<sup>1</sup> *neene struck out, and mene written instead*

Thus es *the* geante for-juste, that erawnte Iewe, 2895  
And Gerarde es jocunde, and joyes hym *the* more !

Sir Frederick at  
tacks the British  
forayers

Than the genatours of Genne enjoynes att ones,  
And frykis one *the* fiowntere welles a fyve hundreth ,  
A freke highte *sir* fiederke, with fulle fele *other*, 2899  
fferkes one a frusche, and fresclyche askryes

The kni<sup>g</sup>ts of  
the Round Table  
advance and fight  
valiantly

To fyghte with oure fforreours, *that* one felde hous  
And thane the ryalle renkkes of *the* Rownde Table  
Rade furth fulle earnestly, and rydis theme agaynes,  
Mellis with the medille-warde, bot they ware illemachede,  
Of sicke a grett multytude was *meruayle* to here  
Seyne at *the* assemblé the Sarazenes discou<sup>e</sup>es  
The soueraynge of Sessoyne, that saluede was *newe* ,  
Gyawntis for-justede with gentille knyghtes, 2908  
Thorowe gesserawntes of Iene jaggede to *the* herte !  
They hewe thorowe helmes hawtayne biernez,  
*That the* hiltede swerdes to *thaire* hertes rynnys !  
Than *the* renkes renownde of *the* Rownd Table  
Ryffes and ruyssches downe renayed wreches , 2913  
And thus they dreuene to *the* dede dukes and erles,  
Alle *the* dreghe of *the* daye, with dredfulle werkes !

Sir Priamus and  
his followers de-  
sert to the side  
of Arthur's men

**T**thane *sir* Priamous *the* prynce, in presens of lordes,  
Presez to his penowne, and pertly it hentes,  
Reuertede it redily, and a-waye rydys  
To *the* ryalle rowte of *the* Rownde Table , 2919  
And heyly his retenuz raykes hym aftyre,  
ffor they his resone had rede on his schelde ryche  
Owte of *the* scheltrone *they* schede, as schepe of a folde,  
And stems furth to *the* stowre, and stode be *theire* lorde !  
Seyne they sent to *the* duke, and saide hym *thise* wordes,—  
“ We hafe bene thy sowdeours this sex 3ere and more ,  
We for sake *the* to-daye be serte of owre lorde , 2926  
We sewe to oure soueraynge in sere kynges londes  
Vs defawtes oure feez of *this* foure wyntteres ,  
Thow arte feble and false, and noghte bot faire wordes ,  
Oure wages are werede owte, and *thi* werre endide,

They upbraid the  
Duke of Lorraine  
for not having  
pud them their  
wages

We maye *with* oure wirchipe weend whethure vs lykes !  
 I 1ed *thowe* trette of a trewe, and trofie no lengere,  
 Or *thow* salle tyne of thi tale ten thosande or euene "  
 "fya debles!" saidet *the* duke, "the deuelle haue *your* bones!" The Duke answers furiously [leaf 84, back]  
 The dawngere of *3on* doggez drede schalle I neuer !  
 We salle dele this daye, be dedes of armes, 2936  
 My dede, and my ducherye, and my dere knyghtes !  
 Siche sowdeours as *3e* I sett bot att lyttile,  
 That sodanly in defawte for-sakes theire lorde !" 2939  
 The duke in his schelde and dreches no lengere,  
 Drawes hym a dromedarie, with diedfulle knyghtez,  
 Graythes to *syn* Gawayne, with fulle gret nowmbyre He charges Arthur's knights on a dromedary  
 Of gomes of Gernaide, that greuouse are holdene 2943  
 Thas fresche horsede mene to *the* frownt rydes,  
 ffelles of oure fforreours be fourtty at ones ! His men fell many of the forayers  
 They hade foughttene be-fore with a fyve hundrethe,  
 It was no ferly, in *faythe*, *thofe* they faynt waxene  
 Thane *syn* Gawayne was grefede, and grypps his spere,  
 And gyrdex in agayne with galyarde knyghttez, 2949 Sir Gawaine grasps his spear  
 Metes *the* maches of Mees, and melles hym thorowe,  
 As man of *this* medille-erthe, that moste hade greuede  
 Bot on Chastelayne, a childe of *the* kynges chambyre,  
 Was warde to *sir* Wawayne of *the* weste marches, Child Chastelaine slays Sir Cheldrik,  
 Cheses to *sir* Cheldrike, a cheftayne noble,  
 With a chasyng spere he chokkes hym thurghe ! 2955  
 This chekke hyme eschewede be chauncez of armes,  
 So *thay* chase *that* childe, eschape may he neuer !  
 Bot on Swyane of Swecy, *with* a swerde egge,  
 The swyers swyre-bane he swappes in sondyre ! 2959  
 He swounande diede, *and* on *the* swarthe lengede, and is slain by Swyan  
 Sweltes ewynne swiftly, and swanke he no more !  
**T**han *syn* Gawayne gretes with his gray eghne,  
 The guyte was a gude mane, be-gynnande of armes  
 ffore the charry childe so lus chere chawngide, 2964  
 That the chillande watire one his chekes rynnyde !  
 "Woo es me," quod Gawayne, "that I ne wetene hade ,

I salte wage for that wye alle *that* I welde, 2967  
 Bot I be wrokene on that wye, that thus has hym wondyde!"  
 He dresses hym dreuly, and to *the* duke rydes,  
 He slay<sup>s</sup> one Sir Dolphyn, Bot one *sir* Dolphyne the derfe dyghte hym agaynes,  
 And *sir* Gawayne hym gyrd with a grym launce, 2971  
 That the groundene spere glade to his heite!  
 And egeily he hente owte, and huete a-nothe*r*,  
 then Hirdolf, happy in armes, An haythene knyghte, Hardolfe, happye in armes,  
 Sleyghly in at the slotte slyttes hym<sup>e</sup> thorowe, 2975  
 That the slydande spere of his hande sleppes!  
 Thare es slayne in *that* slope, be elagere of his hondes,  
 and sixty more Sixty slongene in a slade of sleghe men of armes!  
 Thofe *sir* Gawaynne ware wo, he wayttes hym by,  
 And was warre of *that* wye that the childe wondyde,  
 He ryvenges the chid, And with a swerde swiftly he swappes hym thorowe,  
 That he swyftly swelte, and on *the* erthe swounes!  
 [leaf 85] And thane herayke to *the* owte, and iuysches one helmys,  
 and cuts his way through the enemy Riche hawberkes he rente, and rasede schyldes, 2984  
 Rydes one a rawndoune, and his rayke holdes,  
 Thorow-owte *the* rerewarde he holdes wayes,  
 And thare raughte in the reyne this ryalle *the* ryche,  
 And rydez in-to *the* rowte of *the* Rownde Table  
 The great deeds of Arthur's chivalrous men secure the victory  
 Thane oure cheualrous<sup>1</sup> men changene theire horsez,  
 Chases and choppes downe cheftaynes noble, 2991  
 Hittes full<sup>e</sup> hertely on helmes and scheldes,  
 Hurtes and hewes downe haythene knyghtez!  
 Ketelle-hattes they cleue euene to *the* scholdirs!  
 Was neuer siche a clamour of capitaynes in erthe!  
 Thare was kynges sonnes kaughte, curtays and noble,  
 And knyghtes of *the* contré, that knawene was ryche,  
 Lordes of Lorayne and Lombardye bothene 2997  
 Laugh[t]e was, and lede in with oure lele knyghttez,  
 Thas *that* chasade that daye, theire chaunce was betune,  
 Swiche a cheke at a chace escheuede theyme neuer!  
 Sir Florent presses on with five score knyghts  
 When *sir* fflorent, be fyghte, had *the* felde wonene,  
 He fferkes me be-fore with fyve score knyghttez,

<sup>1</sup> MS cheualrouers

Theire prayes and *theire* prisoneres passes one aftyre,  
 With pylours, and pausers, and pryse mene of armes  
 Thane gudly *sir* Gawayne gydes his knyghttez,  
 Gas in at *the* gayneste, as gydes hym telles,  
 ffore greffe of a garysone of fulle gret lordes 3007  
 Sulde noghte gripe vpe his gere, ne swyche grame wirche  
 ffore-thy they stode at the straytez, and with his stale  
 houede,

*Sir Gawayne fol-  
lows with cau-  
tion,*

Tille his prayes ware paste the pathe that he dredis,  
 Whene they the ceté myghte see that the kyng seggede,  
 Sothely the same daye was wit[h] asawte wonnene 3012  
 An hawrawde hyes be-fore, the beste of the lordes,  
 Hom at *the* herbergage, owt of tha hyghe londes,  
 Tornys tytte to *the* tente, and to the kynges telles 3015  
 Alle the tale sothely, and how they hade spede,—  
 “Alle thy forreous are fere, that forrayede with-owttyne,  
 Sir fflorent, and *sir* ffloidas, and alle thy ferse knyghtez,  
 Thay hafe forrayede and foghtene with fulle gret nowm-  
 byre, 3019

*and sees the city  
which Arthur  
is besieging  
won on the same  
day*

*A herald hies  
to Arthur and  
tells him of the  
victory of his  
knights,*

And fele of thy foo-mene has broghte owt of lyffe!  
 Oure wirchipfulle wardayne es wele escheuyde,  
 ffor he has wonne to-daye wirchipe for euere,  
 He has Dolfyne slayne, and *the* duke takyne! 3023  
 Many dowghty es dede be dynt of his hondes!  
 He has prisoners price, pryncez and erles,  
 Of *the* richeste blode *that* regnys in erthe!  
 Alle thy cheuallious mene faue are eschewede, 3027  
 Bot a childe Chasteleynne myschance es be-fallene”  
 “Hawtayne,” sais *the* kyng, “harawde, be Criste!  
 Thow has helyd myne herte, I hete the for-sothe!  
 I zife the in Hamptone a hundreth pownde laige” 3031

*and how Sir Ga-  
wayne has won  
worship for ever*

*Then the king  
rejoices and gives  
him a hundred  
pounds*

[leaf 8a, back]

**T**he kyng *than* to assawte he sembles his knyghtez,  
 With somercastelle and sowe appone seie halfes,  
 Skyftis his skotferis, and skayles the wallis,  
 And iche wache<sup>1</sup> has his warde with wiese mene of  
 armes 3035

*Arthur assembles  
his knights to as-  
sault the city*

<sup>1</sup> Or wathe



- Thane boldly *thay* buske, and bendes engynes,  
 Payses in pylotes and proues theene castes ,  
 Churches and chappels are beaten to earth Mynsteris and masondewes they malle to *the* erthe,  
 Churches and chapelles chalke-whitte blawnchede 3039  
 Stone [s]tepelles fullē styffe in *the* strete ligges,  
 Chawmbyrs with chymnés, and many cheefe inns,  
 Paysede and pelid downe playsterede walles ,  
 The paine of the people is pity to heuē The pyne of *the* pople was peté for to here ! 3043  
 Thane *the* ducheze hire dyghte with damesels ryche,  
 The cowntas of Crasyne with hir clere maydyns,  
 Knelis downe in *the* kynnelles thaire the kyng honede,  
 On a couerede horse comlyly arayedē , 3047  
 They knewe hym by contenaunce, and criede fullē lowde,—  
 “Kyng crownede of kynde, take kepe to *these* wordes !  
 We be-seke 3ow, *sir*, as soueraynge and lorde,  
 That 3e safe vs to-daye, for sake of 3oune Criste ! 3051  
 Send vs some socoure, and saughte with the pople,  
 Or *the* ceté be sodaynly with assawte wonnene !”  
 He weres his vesere with a vowt noble ,  
 With vesage vertuous, thus valyante bierne 3055  
 Meles to hir myldly with fullē meke wordes,—  
 “Salle no mysse do 3ow, ma dame, *that* to me lenges ,  
 I gyf 3ow chartre of pes, *and* 3oure cheefe maydens,  
 The childre *and the* chastemene, the cheualrous knyghtez ,  
 The duke es in dawngere, dredis it bott littlylle ! 3060  
 He salle idene *the* fullē wele, dout 3ow noghte elles”  
 Thane sent he one iche a syde to certayne lordes,  
 ffor to leue *the* assawte, the cete was 3oldene , 3063  
 With *the* erle eldeste sone he sent hym *the* kayes,  
 And seside *the* same nyghte, be sent of *the* lordes  
 The duke to Douere es dyghte, and alle his dere knyghtez,  
 To duelle in dawngere and dole *the* dayes of hys lyue  
 Thare fleede, at the ferrere 3ate, folke withowt tyne  
 nombyre, 3068  
 ffor ferde of *sir* fflorent and his fers knyghtez ,  
 Voydes the ceté and to the wode rynnys,  
 With vetaile, and vesselle, and vestoure so ryche 3071

Thay buske vpe a banere abowne *the* brode zates  
 Of *sir* florent, in ffay so fayne was he neu<sup>r</sup> !  
 The knyghte houys on a hylle, be-helde to *the* wallys,  
 And saide, "I see be zone syngne the ceté es oures !"

Sir Florent sees  
 by a sign that  
 the city is won

Sir Arthure enters anone with hostes arayede, 3076  
 Euene at *the* vndrone etles to lenge

Arthur enters  
 with his hosts

In iche leuere on lowde the kynge did crye,  
 Of payne of lyf and lym and lesyng of londes,  
 That no lele ligemane, that to hym lonngede, 3080  
 Sulde lye be no ladysse, ne be no lele maydyns,  
 Ne be no burgesse wyffe, better ne werse,  
 Ne no biernez myse-bide, that to *the* burghe longede

[leaf 86]

He forbids his  
 liegemen to lie  
 with the ladies

Whene *the* kyng Arthure hade lely conquerid, 3084  
 And the castelle couerede of *the* kythe riche,

Arthur provides  
 for the govern-  
 ment of Lorraine  
 which he has  
 conquered

Alle *the* crowelle and kene, be craftes of aimes,  
 Captayns and constables, knewe hym for lorde  
 He deuysede and delte to dyuerse lordez, 3088  
 A dowere for *the* duche and hir dere childne,  
 Wroghte wardaynes by wytte to welde alle *the* londez,  
 That he had wonnene of werre, thorowe his weise  
 knyghtez 3091

Thus in Lorayne he lenges as lorde in his awene,  
 Settez lawes in the lande, as hym leefte t[h]oghte,  
 And one *the* Lammese day to Lucerne he wendez,  
 Lengez thare at laysere with lykyng 1-nowe, 3095

At Lammars he  
 goes to Lucerne

Thare his galays ware graythede, a full gret nombyre,  
 Alle gleterand as glase, vndire grene hyllys,

His fair galley s  
 are assembled

With cabanes couerede for kynges a-noyntede,  
 With clothes of clere golde for knyghtez and othe<sup>r</sup>,  
 Sone stowede theire stuffe, and stablede *theire* hoises,  
 Strekes streke ouer *the* stem in-to *the* straye londez  
 Now he moues his myghte with myrthes of herte,  
 Ouere mowntes so hye, *thase* meruailous wayes, 3103

He leads his  
 forces over the  
 high mountains  
 by marvellous  
 ways,

Gosse in by Goddarde, the garet he wynys,  
 Graythes the garnisons grisely wondes !

He passes the St  
 Gothard after de-  
 feating the gar-  
 rison,

Whene he was passede the heghte, than the kyng houys  
 With his hole bataylle, be-haldande a-bowte, 3107

looks down on  
Lombardy, and  
advances to  
Como

Lukande one Lumbaidde, and one lowde melys,—  
“ In 3one lykande londe, lorde be I thyneke ”  
Thane they cayre to Combe, with kynges a-noyntede,  
That was kyde of *the* coste, kay of alle *other* 3111  
Sir florent and *su* flordis *than* fowndes be-fore,  
With ffeike mene of ffraunce welles a fyve hundreth ,  
To *the* ceté vn-sene thay soghte at *the* gayneste,

Sir Florent and  
Sir Floridas plant  
an ambush,

And sett an enbuschement, als *theme* selfe lykys 3115  
Thane ischewis owt of *that* ceté, fulle sone be *the* morne,  
Slale discourours, skyftes there horses ,  
Than skyftes *thes* skouerours, and skippes one hyllis,  
Diskoueres for skulkers that they no skathe lymppene ,  
Pouer alle and pastorelles passede one aflye, 3120  
With porkes to pasture at the price 3ates ,  
Boyes in *the* subarbis bourdene ffulle heghe,  
At a bare syngleie that to *the* bente rynns  
Thane brekes oure buschemeit, and the bigge wynnes,  
Brayedez in-to *the* burghe with baners displayede, 3125  
Stekes and stabbis<sup>1</sup> thorowe that them a-zayne-stondes ,  
ffowre stretis, or *thay* stynte, they stroyene fore euere !

The conqueror  
holds his court  
in Como

Now es the conquerour in Combe, and his courte holdes  
With-in *the* kyde castelle, with kynges enoyntede ,  
Reconsaillez<sup>2</sup> the comouns *that* to *the* kyth lengez,  
Comfourthes *the* carefuller with knyghtly wordez , 3131  
Made a captayne kene a knyghte of hys awene ,  
Bot alle *the* contré and he fulle sone ware accordide

The lord of  
Milan sends to  
offer submission  
and tribute

The syre of Melane herde saye *the* ceté was wonnene,  
And send to Arthure sertayne loides, 3135  
Giete *sommes* of golde, sexti horse chargegid,  
Be soghte hyme as souerayne to socoure *the* pople,  
And saide he wolde sothely be sugette for euere ,  
And make hyme *ser* ucece and suytte for his sere londes ,  
ffor plesaunce of Pawnce, and of Pownte Tremble, 3140  
ffor Pyse, and for Pavy, he *pro*fers fulle large,  
Bothe purpur, and palle, and precious stonys,  
Palfrayes for any prynee, and prouede stedes , 3143

<sup>1</sup> MS stablis

<sup>2</sup> Or Beconsaillez

And ilke a ȝere for Melane a melione of golde,  
 Mekely at Martynmesse to menske *with* his hoides,  
 And euer withowttyne askynge he and his ayers  
 Be homagers to Arthure, whilles his lyffe lastis 3147 He pays homage  
to Arthur at  
Como  
 The kyng be his concelle a condethe hym sendis,  
 And he es comene to Combe, and knewe hym as lorde

**I**n-to Tuskane he tourne, whene *thus* wele tymede, Arthur enters  
Tuscany,  
 Takes townnes fulle tye *with* towrres fulle heghe,  
 Walles he welte downe, wondyd knyghtez, 3152  
 Townries he turnes, and turmentez *the* pople,  
 Wroghte wedewes fulle wlonke, wrotherayle synges,  
 Ofte wery and wepe, and wryngene theire handis, 3155  
 And alle he wastys *with* weire, thare he awaye rydez, and ravages the  
county  
 Thare welthes and theire wonny[n]ges, wandiethe he  
 wroghte !

Thus they spryngens and spiede, and sparis bot lyttile,  
 Spoylles dispetouslye, and spillis theire vynes, 3159  
 Spendis vn-sparely, *that* spaiede was lange,  
 Spedis theme to Spolett *with* speris inewe !  
 ffo Spayne in-to Spruyslande the worde of hyme  
 sprynges, 3162

And spekynngs of his spencis, disspite es fulle hugge !  
 Towarde Viterbe this valyant avires the reynes,  
 Avissely in *that* vale he vetailles his biernez, In the Vale of  
Viterbo he  
victuals his men  
 With vernage, and *other* wyne, and venysone bakene,  
 And one the vicounte londes he visez to lenge 3167

Vertely the avawmwarde voydez theire horsez,  
 In the Vertennone vale, the vines i-mangez ;  
 Thare suggeournes this souerayne, *with* solace in herte,  
 To see whene the senatours sent any wordes, 3171

Reuelle *with* riche wyne, notes hym selfene,  
 This roy *with* his ryalle mene of *the* Rownde Table, The king and his  
knights make  
[leaf 87]  
great merriment  
 With myrthis, and melodye, and manykyne gamfies,  
 Was neuer meriere men made one this erthe ! 3175

**B**ot one a Seterdaye at none, a seuenyghte thare-aftyre,  
 The konyngeste cardynalle that to the courte lengede The cunningest  
Cardinal of Rome  
is sent to him,  
 Knelis to *the* conquerour, and karpes thre wordes,

and offers that  
the Pope shall  
crown him as  
sovereign in  
Rome

Hostages are  
given for the  
truth of his  
words

The Roman sena-  
tors are solemnly  
feasted

Arthur glorifies  
himself for his  
great success

Prayes hym for *the* pes, and profyis fulle large, 3179  
To hafe peté of *the* pope, *that* put was at-vndere ,  
Be-soghte hym of surrawns, for sake of oure Loide,  
Bot a seuenyghte daye to *thay* ware alle semblede,  
And they schulde sekenlye hym see the Sonondaye  
*ther* aftyre, 3183

In the ceté of Rome, as soueraynge and loide ,  
And crowne hym kyndly *with* kysomede hondes,  
*With* his ceptre, as soueraynge and lorde  
Of this vndyrtakyng ostage are comyne, 3187  
Of ayers fulle auenaunt awughte score childrene,  
In toges of tarsse fulle richelye attyryde  
And be-tuke theme the kyng, and his clere knyghttes  
When they had tretude thiére trewe, *with* trowmpynge  
*ther*-after 3191

They tryne vn-to a tente, whare tables whare raysede ,  
The kyng hym selfene es sette, and certayne lordes,  
Vndyre a sylure of sylke, sawghte at the burdez,  
Alle the senatours are sette sere be *thame* one, 3195

Seifed solemnly *with* selcouthe metes  
The kyng myghtty of myrthe, *with* his mylde wordes,  
Rehetez the Romaynes at his riche table,  
Comforthes the caidynalle so knyghtly <sup>1</sup> hym seluene ,  
And this roye *iyalle*, as romawns vs tellis, 3200  
Reuerence the Romayns in his riche table

The tawghte mene and *the* conyng, whene theme tyme  
thoghte,

Tas there lefe at *the* kyng, and tornede agayne , 3203  
To *the* ceté *that* nyghte *thaye* soughte at *the* gayneste,  
And thus the ostage of Rome *with* Arthure es leuede

**T**han this roy royalle iehersys theis wordes,—  
“ Now may we reuelle and riste, fore Rome es oure  
awene ! 3207

Make oure ostage at ese, *thuse* auenaunt <sup>2</sup> childyrene,  
And luk 3e hondene theme alle that in myne oste lengez,  
The emperour of Almayne, and alle theis este marches ,

<sup>1</sup> MS kynghtly

<sup>2</sup> MS auenaunt

We salle be ouerlynge of alle *that* one the erthe lengez <sup>1</sup>  
 We wille by *the* Crosse dayes encroche <sup>1</sup> *theis* londez,  
 And at *the* Crystynmesse daye be crowned <sup>2</sup> ther-aftyre , He will be crown  
ed at Christm is  
in Rome, and  
hold his Round  
Table there  
 Ryngne in my ryalltés, and holde my Rownde Table,  
 Withe the rentes of Rome, as me beste lykes , 3215  
 Syne graythe ouer *the* grette see with gud mene of armes,  
 To reuenge the renke that one the rode dyede <sup>1</sup>”  
 Thane this comlyche kynge, as cronycles tellys,  
 Bownnys brathely to bede with a blythe herte , 3219 He goes to bed  
and dreams  
 Of he slynges with sleghte, and slakes gyrdille,  
 And fore slewthe of slomowre one a slepe fallis  
 Bot be ane aftyre mydnyghte alle his mode changede ,  
 He mett in the morne-while fulle meruaylous diemes <sup>1</sup> [leaf 87, back.]  
 And whene his dredefulle drem whas drefene to *the* ende,  
 The kynge dares for dowte, dye as he scholde , 3225  
 Sendes aftyre phylosophers, and his affraye telles,— He sends for his  
philosophers, and  
tells them the  
dream  
 “ Sene I was formede in fayth, so ferde whas I neuer <sup>1</sup>  
 ffor-thy rawnsakes redyly, and rede me my swefennys,  
 And I salle redily and ryghte rehersene the sothe  
 Me thoughte I was in a wode willed myne one,  
 That I ne wiste no waye whedire *that* I scholde, 3231 He was in a  
wood among wild  
beasts,  
 ffore woluez, and whilde swynne, and wykkyde bestez ,  
 Walkede in that wasternne, wathes to seche ,  
 Thare lyouns fulle lothely lykkyde *there* tuskes,  
 Alle fore lapyng of blude of my lele knyghtez <sup>1</sup> 3235 which were lick  
ing from their  
teeth the blood  
of his knyghts  
 Thurgh *that* foreste I fiede, thare floures whare heghe,  
 ffor to fele me for ferde of tha foule thynggez ,  
 Merkede to a medowe with montayngnes enclosyde, He flew to a  
beautiful meadow  
enclosed with  
mountains, and  
having vines of  
silver and grapes  
of gold  
 The meryeste of medillerthe that mene myghte be-holde <sup>1</sup>  
 The close was in compas castyne alle abowte,  
 With clauer and clereworthe cleder euene ouer ,  
 The vale was enuerownde <sup>3</sup> with vynes of siluer,  
 Alle with grapis of golde, gretter ware neuer, 3243  
 Enhorilde with arborye and alkyns trees,  
 Erberis fulle honeste, and hyrdez *there*-vndyre ,

<sup>1</sup> MS Encroche encroche<sup>2</sup> MS crownend<sup>3</sup> MS euene rownde

Alle froytez foddemid was *that* floreschede in erthe,  
ffaire futhed in frawnke appone tha free bowes, 3247  
Whas thare no downkyng of dewe that oghte dere  
scholde,

With *the* diowghte of *the* daye alle drye waie *the* flores !

A beautiful  
duchess de-  
scended from the  
clouds,

Than discendis in the dale, downe fra *the* clowddez,  
A duches dereworthily dyghte in dyaperde wedis, 3251  
In a surcott of sylke fulle selkouthely hewede,

dressed in gor-  
geous apparel

Alle with loyotoun ouer-laide lowe to *the* hemmes,  
And with ladyly lappes the lenghe of a 3erde,  
And alle redily reueisside with rebanes of golde, 3255

She whirled a  
stunne wheel  
with her hands

Bruchez and besauntez, and *other* byghte stonys,  
With hir bake and hir breste was brochede alle ouer,  
With kelle and with corenalle clenliche arayede,  
And *that* so comly of colour one knowene was neuer !  
A-bowte cho whirllide a whele with hu whitte hondez,  
Ouer-whelme alle qwayntely *the* whele as cho scholde,  
The 1owelle whas rede golde with ryalle stonys,  
Raylide with reched and rubyes i-newe, 3263

Thereon was a  
char of silver,  
ornamented with  
carbuncles  
Kings clawe to  
the wheel one  
after another

The spekes was splentide alle with speltis of siluer,  
The space of a spere lenghe springande fulle faire,  
There-one was a chayere of chalke-whytte siluer,  
And chekyrde with chareboole chawngyng of hewes,  
Appone *the* compas ther clewde kyngis one rawe,  
With corowns of clere golde *that* krakede in sondre

Six had fallen  
from the setle,  
and lamented  
their misfortune

Sex was of *that* setille fulle sodaynliche fallene, 3270  
Ilke a segge by hymse selfe, and saide theis wordez,—  
'That euer I reignede one *this* rog, me rewes it euer !

[leaf 8b]

Was neuer roye so riche that regnede in erthe !  
Whene I rode in my rowte, roughte I noghte elles,  
Bot reuaye, and reuelle, and rawnsone the people ! 3275  
And thus I drife forthe my dayes, whilles I dreghe  
myghte,

The first was a  
little man with  
lean loins and  
long hair

And there-fore derflyche I am dampnede for euer !'  
The laste was a litylle mane that laide was be-nethe,  
His leskes laye alle lene and latheliche to schewe, 3279

The lokkes lyarde and longe the lenghe of a 3erde,  
 His hre and his lyghame lamede fulle sore ,  
*The two eyne of the byeryne was brightere thane siluer,*  
*The tothe was 3alowere thene the 3olke of a naye*

'I was lorde,' *quod* the lede, 'of londes 1-newe, 3284  
 And alle ledis me lowttede that lengede in erthe ,  
 And nowe es lefte me no lappe my lygham to hele,  
 Bot lightly now ame I loste, leue iche mane the sothe !'

He had been lord  
 of many lands,  
 but now was lost

The secunde *sir* for-sothe that sewede theme aftyre,  
 Was sekerare to my sighte, and saddare in armes ,  
 Ofte he syghede vn-sownde, and said theis wordes,—  
 'On 3one see hafe I sittene, als souerayne and lorde,  
 And ladys me louede to lappe in theyre armes , 3292  
 And nowe my lordchippes are loste, and laide for euer !'

The second had  
 sat on the seat as  
 sovereign and  
 lord.

The thirde thorowely was throo, and thikke in the  
 schuldrys,

The third was  
 stout and strong

A thra man to thrette of, there thretty waie gaderide ,  
 His dyademe was droppede downe, dubbyde with stonys,  
 Endente alle with diamawndis, and dighte for the nonis ,  
 'I was dredde in my dayes,' he said, 'in dyuerse rewmes,  
 And now dampned to the dede, and dole es the more !'

He had been  
 dreading in his  
 day

The fourte was a faire mane, and forsesy in armes,  
 The fayreste of fegure that foumede was euer !  
 'I was frekke in my faithe,' he said, 'whilles I one  
 fowlde regnede,

The fourth was a  
 fair man, but foul  
 mischance had  
 now happened to  
 him

ffamows in fferre londis, and floure of alle kynges , 3303  
 Now es my face defadide, and foule es me hapnede,  
 ffor I am fallene fro ferre, and frendles by-leuyde !'

The fifte was a faire mane thane fele of *thies other*,  
 A fforsesy mane and a ferse, with fomand lippis , 3307  
 He fongede faste one the feleyghes, and fayled his armes,  
 Bot 3it he faulede and felle a fyfty fote large ,  
 Bot 3it he sprange and sprete, and spraddene his armes,  
 And one the spere-lenghe spekes, he spekes *thare* wordes—

The fifth was very  
 fierce and violent

'I was in Surrye a syr, and sett be myne one, 3312  
 As souerayne and seyngnour of sere kynges londis ;

He had been  
 sovereign in  
 Syria, but was  
 now fallen



Now of my solace I am fulle sodanly fallene,  
And for sake of my syne, 3one sete es me rewede !'

The sixth had a  
psalter well  
bound, a harp,  
and a sling

The sexte hade a sawtere semliche bowndene,  
With a surepel of silke sewede fulle faire, 3317  
A harpe and a hande-slynge with haide flynte stones,  
What harmes he has hente he halowes fulle sone,—  
'I was demede in my dayes,' he said, 'of dedis of armes

He had been  
among the  
[leaf 88, back]  
doughtiest in  
his day, but had  
been marred by  
the maiden

One of the doughtyeste that duelled in eithe,  
Bot I was meirde one molde in my moste strengthethis,  
With this maydene so mylde, *that* mofes vs alle' 3323

Two kings were  
climbing to the  
chru, but failed  
to reach it

Two kynges ware clymbande, and clauerande one  
heghe,

The creste of *the* compas they couette fulle 3erne,  
'This chaire of charbokle,' they said, 'we chalange  
here-aftyre,

As two of *the* cheffeste chosene in erthe !' 3327

The childre ware chalke-whitte, chekys and *other*,  
Bot the chayere a-bownne cheuede they neuer

The one was pass-  
ing fair of feature,  
and arrayed in  
blue with fleurs  
de lis of gold

The forthirmaste was freely, *with* a fiount laige,  
The faireste of fyssnamy *that* fow mede was euer, 3331

And he was buskede in a blee of a blewe noble,  
With flourdelice of golde floreschede al ouer,

The other was  
clad in silver,  
with a cross of  
gold

The *tother* was cledde in a cote alle of clene siluer,  
With a comliche crosse coruene of golde, 3335

ffowre crosselettes krafty by *the* crosse ristes,  
And ther-by knewe I the kyng, *that* crystnede hyme  
semyde

Arthur greeted  
the Duchess, who  
welcomed him

**T**hane I went to *that* wlonke, and wynly hire gretis,  
And cho said, 'welcome i-wis ! wele arte thou  
fowndene, 3339

The aughte to wirchipe my wille, and thou wele cowthe,  
Of alle the valyant men that euer was in eithe,  
ffore alle thy wirchipe in werre by me has thou wonnene,  
I hafe bene frendely, freke, and fremmede tille *other*,  
That has *thow* fowndene in fairthe, and fele of *thi* biernez,  
ffore I fellid downe *su* Frolle *with* frowaide knyghtes,  
ffore-thi the fruytes of Fiaunce are freely thynne awene

- Thow salle *the* chayere escheue, I chese *the* my selfene, He was chosen to achieve the chair,  
 Be-fore alle *the* cheftaynes chosene in this erthe ' 3348
- Scho lifte me vp lightly with hir lene hondes,  
 And sette me softly in the see, *the* septe me rechode, and was set there in  
 Craftely with a kambe cho kembede myne heuede, 3351
- That the krispane kroke to my crownne raughte,  
 Diessid oñe me a diademe, that dighte was fulle faire, The kingly ornaments were given to him  
 And syne profres me a pome pighte fulle of faire stonys,  
 Ënamelde with azoure, the erth there-oue depayntide,  
 Selkylde with the salte see appone sere halfes, 3356  
 In sygne *that* I sothely was souerayne in erthe
- Than broght cho me a brande with fulle bryghte hiltes, A sword with a bright hilt was brought to him  
 And bade me brawdysche *the* blade, '*the* brande es  
 myne awene 3359
- Many swayne with *the* swynge has the sw[e]tte leuede,  
 ffor whilles thow swanke with the swerde, it swykkede  
*the* neuer'
- Than raykes cho with roo, and riste whene hir likede,  
 To *the* ryndes of *the* wode, richere was neuer, 3363  
 Was no pomarie so pighte of pynce in erthe,  
 Ne nonne apparaylle so prowde, bot *paradys* one
- Scho bad *the* bewes scholde bewe downe, and bryng to He was taken to the wood, and the boughs were made to yield their fruit to him  
 my hondes 3366
- Of *the* beste that they bare one brawnches so heghe,  
 Than they heldede to hir heste alle holly at oñes,  
 The hegheste of iche a hurste, I hette ȝow for-sothe
- Scho bade me fythe noghte *the* fruyte, bot fonde whilles He was bad take [leaf 89] freely of the finest  
 me likede,
- 'ffonde of *the* fyneste, thow freliche byerne, 3371  
 And reche to *the* ipeste, and ryotte thy seluene!  
 Riste, thow ryathe roye, for Rome es thyne awene!  
 And I salle redily rolle *the* roo at *the* gayneste,  
 And reche *the* riche wyne in rynsede coupes ' 3375 The lady drew wine for him from the spring,
- Thane cho wente to *the* welle by *the* wode emis,  
 That alle wellyde of wyne, and wondirliche rynnes,  
 Kaughte vp a coppe-fulle, and couerde it faire, 3378  
 Scho bad me dereliche drawe, and drynke to hir selfene and bade him drink to her

- And thus cho lede me abowte the lenghe of an owie,  
 With alle likyng and luffe, *that* any lede scholde ,  
 Bot at *the* myddaye fulle ewyne alle hir mode chaungede,  
 And mad myche manace with meruayllous wordez ,  
 Whene I cryede appone hire, cho kest downe hir browes  
 ‘ Kyng, thow karpes for noghte, be Criste *that* me made !  
 ffor thow salle lose this layke, and thi lyfe aftyre,  
 Thow has lyffede in delytte and lordchippes inewe ! ’
- Abowte scho whirles the whele, and whirles me vndire,  
 Tille alle my qwarters *that* while where qwaste al to  
 peces ! 3389
- And with that chayere my chyne was chopped in sondire !  
 And I hafe cheuende for chele, sen me this chance  
 happenede
- Than wakkenyde I iwys, alle wey for-dremyde, 3392  
 And now wate thow my woo, woide as *the* lykes ”
- “ ffreke,” sais the philosophre, “ thy fortune es passede !  
 ffor thow salle fynd hir thi foo, frayste whene the lykes !  
 Thow arte at *the* hogheste, I hette the foi-sothe ! 3396  
 Chalange nowe when thow wille, thow cheuys no more !  
 Thow has schedde myche blode, and schalkes distroyede,  
 Sakeles, in cirquytie, in sere kynges landis , 3399  
 Schryfe the of thy schame, and schape for thyne ende !  
 Thow has a schewynge, *sir* kyng, take kepe ȝif the lyke,  
 ffor thow salle fersely falle with-in fyve wynters ! 3402
- flownde abbayes in ffraunce, *the* froytez are theyne awene,  
 ffore ffroulle, and for fferawnt, and for thir ferse knyghtis,  
 That thowe fremydly in ffraunce has faye be-leuede ,  
 Take kepe ȝitte of *other* kynges, and kaste in thyne herte,  
 That were conquerours kydde, and crownede in erthe ,  
 The eldeste was Alexandere, *that* alle *the* erthe lowttede ,  
 The *tother* Ector of Troye, the cheualrous gume ,  
 The thurde Iulyus Cesare, *that* geant was holdene,  
 In iche jorne jentille, a-juggede with lordes , 3411
- The ferthe was *sir* Iudas, a justere fulle nobille,  
 The maysterfulle Makabee, the myghttyeste of strengthes ,
- But at mid day  
all was changed
- She spoke to  
him fiercely and  
told him that he  
should lose his  
life
- She whirled the  
wheel round, till  
his quarters were  
quashed and his  
chine chopped  
asunder by the  
chair
- The philosopher  
interprets the  
dream, and tells  
Arthur that his  
good fortune is  
passed
- He is to prepare  
for his end,
- and to found ab-  
beys in France
- He is bid take  
heed of the other  
kings who tried  
the chair
- The first was  
Alexander,  
the second  
Hector,  
the third Julius  
Cesar,
- the fourth Judas  
the Maccabee,

The fyfte was Iosue, *that* joly mane of armes, 3414 the fifth Joshua,

*That* in Ierusalem oste fulle myche joye lymppede ,

The sexte was Daud *the* dere, demyd *with* kynges

the sixth David,  
who slew the  
great Goliath.

One of *the* doughtyeste *that* dubbede was euer,

ffor he slewe *with* a slynge, be sleyghte of his handis,

Golyas the grette gome, grymmeste in eithe , 3419

Syne endittede in his dayes alle the dere psalmes,

[leaf 89, back.]

*That* in *the* sawtire ere sette *with* selcouthe wordes

The two clymbande kynges, I knawe it for-sothe,

Of the two kyns  
who were climb-  
ing, one shall  
be Carolus of  
France,

Salle Karolus be callide, the kyng sone of Fraunce ,

He salle be crowelle and kene, and conquerow holdene,

Couere be conqueste contres ynewe , 3425

He salle encroche the crowne that Crist bare hym selfene,

he shall win the  
crown that Christ  
bare, and the  
lance that leapt  
to his heart,

And *that* lifeliche launce, that lepe to his heite,

When he was crucyfiede one crose, and alle *the* kene

naylis,

Knyghtly he salle conquere to Cristyne men hondes

The *tother* salle be Godfraye, that Gode schalle reuenge

One *the* Gud Frydaye *with* galyarde knyghtes , 3431

He salle of Lornayne be lorde, be leefte of his fadire,

the other shall be  
Godfrey, the lord  
of Lorraine, who  
shall recover the  
true cross

And syne in Ierusalem myche joye happyne,

ffor he salle couer the crosse be craftes of armes, 3434

And synne be corownde kyng, *with* krysomenoyntede,

Salle no duke in his dayes siche destanye happyne,

Ne siche myschefe dreghe, whene trewthe salle be tryede !

ffore thy ffortune *the* fetches to fulfille the nowmbyre,

Arthur is needed  
to make up the  
number of the  
nine noblest

AHs nyne of *the* nobileste namede in erthe , 3439

This salle in romance be redde *with* ryalle knyghttes,

Rekkenede and renownde *with* ryotous kynges,

And demyd one domesdaye, for dedis of armes, 3442

He shall be cele-  
brated for ever  
as the doughtiest  
on earth  
Many clerks shall  
tell of his deeds

ffor *the* doughtyeste *that* euer was duelland in erthe

So many clerkis and kynges salle karpe of 3oure dedis,

And kepe 3oure conquestez in cronycle for euer !

Bot the wolves in the wode, and the whilde bestes,

The wolves in  
the wood and the  
wild beasts are  
wicked men that  
are warring on  
his people

Are some wikkyd mene *that* werrayes thy rewmes, 3447

Es enturde in thyne absence to werraye thy pople,

And alyenys and osten of vncouth landis  
 Thow getis tydandis I trowe, with-in tene dayes, 3450  
 That some tofere es tydde, sene thow fio home turnede,  
 I rede thow rekkyne and reherse vn-reasonable dedis,  
 Ore the repenttes fulle rathe alle thi rewthe werkes!  
 Mane, amende thy mode, or thow myshappene,  
 And mekely aske mercy for mede of thy saule!" 3455  
 Thane rysez the riche kyng, and rawghte one his wedys,  
 A reedde actone of rosse, the richeste of floures,  
 A pesane, and a paunsone, and a pris girdille,  
 And one he hentis a hode of scharlette fulle riche,  
 A pauys pillhone hatt, *that* pighte was fulle faue 3460  
 With perry of the Oryent, and precyous stones,  
 His gloues gayliche gylte, and grauens by the hemmys,  
 With graynes of rubyes fulle gracious to schewe,  
 His bede grehownde, and his bronde, ande no bycine  
 elles, 3464  
 And bownnes ouer a biode mede, with breth at his herte,  
 ffuith he stalkis a styte by *the* stille enys,  
 Stotays at a hey strette, studyande hymne one,  
 Att the surs of *the* sonne, he sees there commande,  
 Raykande to Romewarde the redyeste wayes, 3469  
 A renke in a rownde cloke, with righte rowmme clothes,  
 With hatte, and with heyghe schonehomely and rownde,  
 With flatte ferthynges the freke was floreschede alle ouer,  
 Many schredys and schragges at his skyrttes hynnges,  
 With scrippe, ande with slawyne, and skalopis i-newe,  
 Both pyke and palme, alls pilgram hym scholde 3475  
 The gome graythely hym giette, and bade gode morwene,  
 The kyng lordelye hym selfe, of langage of Rome,  
 Of Latyne corroumppede alle, fulle louely hym menys,—  
 "Whedre wilnez thowe, wye, walkande thyne onne?  
 Qwhylyes *this* werlde es o werre, a wawhte I it holde,  
 Here es ane enmye with oste, vndire zone vynes,  
 And they see the, for-sothe, sorowe the be-tyddes,  
 Bot 3if thow hafe condethe of *the* kyng selfene, 3483

He will have  
some tidings  
withun ten days

He is bid to re-  
pent and amend

The king rises  
and puts on his  
robes

He sees a man  
approaching in  
the garb

[leaf 90]

of a pilgrim

He asks him  
whither he is  
going,

Knaues wille kille the, and keppe at thow haues ,  
 And if *thou* halde *the* hey waye, they hente the also,  
 Bot if thow hastyly hafe helpe of his hende knyghttes "

and tells him the  
 dangers of the  
 way

Thane karpes *sir* Cradoke to the kynge selfene, 3487

"I salle for-gyffe hym my dede, so me Gode helpe !  
 Onye grome vndire Gode, that one this grownde walkes !  
 Latte the keneste come, that to *the* kyng langes,  
 I salle encountre hym as knyghte, so Criste hafe my  
 sawle ! 3491

The stranger  
 says that he fears  
 no dangers

ffor thow may noghte reche me, ne aieste thy selfene,  
*Thoffe thou* be richely arayed in fulle riche wedys ,  
 I wille noghte wonde for no werie, to wende whare me  
 likes, 3494

Ne for no wy of this werlde, *that* wroghte es one erthe !

Bot I wille passe in pilgremage *this* pas vn-to Rome,  
 To purchase me *pardon* of the pape selfene ,  
 And of paynes of purgatorie be plene ly assoyllede ,  
 Thane salle I seke sekirly my souerayne lorde, 3499

He is bound in  
 pilgrimage to  
 Rome

Sir Arthure of Englande, that auenaunt byerne !  
 ffor he es in this empire, as hathelle men me telles,  
 Ostayande in this Oryente with awfulle knyghtes "

Then he has to  
 find Arthur of  
 England

"*Fro* qwyne come *thoue*, kene mane," *quod the* kynge  
 thane, 3503

The king asks  
 him whence he  
 comes, and  
 whether he knows  
 Arthur and his  
 knights

"That knawes kynge Arthure, and his knyghttes also ?  
 Was *thoue* euer in his coure, qwylls he in kyth langede ?  
 Thow karpes so kyndly, it comforthes myne herte !  
 Well wele has *thou* wente, and wysely *thou* sechis,  
 ffor *thoue* arte Bretowne bierne, as by thy brode speche "

"Me awghte to knowe *the* kynge, he es my kydde loide,  
 And I calde in his courte a knyghte of his chambue ,  
 Sir Craddoke was I calide, in his coure riche, 3511  
 Kepare of Karlyone, vndir the kynge selfene ,

He tells him that  
 his name is Sir  
 Cradok, a knight  
 of Arthur's cham-  
 ber, and keeper of  
 Caeleon

Nowe am I cachede owtt of kyth, with kare at my herte,  
 And that castelle es cawghte with vncowthe ledys "

Than the comliche kynge kaughte hym in armes, 3515  
 Keste of his ketille-hatte, and kyssede hym fulle sone,

The king kisses  
 and welcomes sir  
 Cradok

Saide, "welcome, *sir* Craddocke, so Criste mott me helpe!  
Deine cosyne of kynde, thowe coldis myne herte!

How faris it in Bretaynne, with alle my bolde berynns?  
Are they brettene, or brynte, or broughte owte of lyue?  
Kene *thou* me kyndely whatte caase es be fallene, 3521  
I kepe no credens to crafe, I knowe the for trewe"

Sir Cradok tells  
him of the evil  
[leaf 90, back]  
deeds of Modred

"Sir, thi wardane es wikkede, and wilde of his dedys,  
ffor he wandreth has wroghte, sen *thou* a-waye passede,  
He has castelles encrochede, and corownde hym seluene,  
Kaughte in alle *the* rentis of *the* Rownde Tabille,  
He devisede *the* rewme, and delte as hym likes, 3527  
Dubbde of *the* Danmarkes, dukes and erles,  
Disseueride *them* sondrwise, and cites dystroyede,  
To Sarazenes and Sessoynes, appone sere halues,

He has gathered  
forces of paynims  
and outlaws,

He has sembled a sorte of selcouthie berynes, 3531  
Soueraynes of Surgenale, and sowdeours many,  
Of Peyghtes, and paynymms, and prouede knyghttes  
Of Irelande and Orgale, owlawede berynes,  
Alle *thaa* laddes are knyghttes *that* lange to *the* mowntes,  
And ledyng and lordechippe has alle, ahs theme selfe  
likes, 3536

who rob the re-  
ligious and ravish  
the nuns

And there es *sir* Childrike a cheftayne holdyne,  
That ilke cheualous mane, he chargges thy pople,  
They robbe thy religeous, and ravische<sup>1</sup> thi nonnes, 3539  
And redy ryddis with his rowtte to rawnsone *the* pouere,  
ffro Humbyre to Hawyke he haldys his awene,

He has seized the  
whole of England  
and all Arthur's  
castles,

And alle *the* cowntré of Kent be couenawnte entayllide,  
The comliche castelles that to the corowne langede,  
The holttes, and the hare-wode, and the harde bankkes,  
Alle *that* Henguste and Hors hent in *theire* tyme,

He has a fleet of  
seven score ships  
at southampton.

Att Southamptone on the see es seuene skore chippes,  
ffawghte fulle of ferse folke, owt of ferre landes, 3547  
ffor to fyghte with thy ffrappe, whene *thow* theme  
assalles

But, worst of all,  
he has taken  
Guinever, and  
holds her as  
his wife!

Bot ȝitt a worde witterly, thowe watte noghte *the* werste!  
He has weddede Waynore, and hir his wiewfe holdis,

<sup>1</sup> MS ravichse

And woynys in the wilde bowndis of *the* weste marches,  
 And has wroghte hire with childe, as wittnesse tellis !  
 Off alle *the* wyes of *this* woulde, woo motte hym worthe,  
 Ahs wardayne vnworthye womenes to zeme !  
 Thus has *sir* Modrede merede vs alle ! 3555  
 ffor thy I merkede ouer thees mowntes, to mene *the* the  
 sothe "

Than the burliche kyng, for brethe at his herte,  
 And for this botelesse bale alle his ble chaungede !

Arthur is over  
 come by the  
 tidings, and vows  
 revenge

"By *the* rode," sais *the* roye, "I salle it revenge ! 3559

Hym salle repente fulle rathe alle his rewthe werkes ! "

Alle wepande for woo he went to his tentis ,

Vnwynly this wyesse kyng, he wakkenysse his berynes,

Clepid in a clamoure kynges and othire, 3563

Callys theme to concelle, and of *this* cas tellys,—

He calls a council  
 and tells them the  
 ill news

"I am with tresone be-trayed, for alle my trewe dedis !

And alle my trauayle es tynt, me tydis no bettre !

Hym salle torfere be-tyde, *this* tresone has wroghte,

And I may traistely hym take, as I am trew lorde !

Thus es Modrede, *the* mane that I moste traystede,

Has my castelles encrochede, and corownde hyme seluene,

With renttes and riches of the Rownde Table , 3571

Has made alle hys retenewys of renayede wrechis,

And devysed my rewme to dyverse lordes,

To sowdecours and to Sarazenes owtte of sere londes !

He has weddyde Waynore, and hyr to wyfe holdes,

[leaf 91]

And a childe es eschapede, the chaunce es no bettre !

They hafe sembled on the see seuene schore chippis,

fulle of ferrome folke, to feghte with myne one !

ffor-thy to Bretayne the brode buske vs by-houys, 3579

They must pro-  
 ceed to Britain  
 with all speed

ffor to brettyne *the* berynne that has this bale raysede !

Thare salle no freke men fare, bott alle one fresche horses,

That are fraistede in fyghte, and floure of my knyghttez

Sir Howelle and *sir* Hardolfe here salle be-leue, 3583

Sir Howell and  
 Sir Hardolf shall  
 reman behind to  
 govern Rome and  
 Italy.

To be lordes of the ledis that here to me lenges ,

Lokes in-to Lumbardy, *that* thare no lede chaunge,—



And tenduly to Tuskayne take tente alls I hyde ,  
 Resaywe the rentis of Rome qwene *that* are rekkenedo ,  
 Take sesyne the same daye that laste was assygnede ,  
 Or elles alle *the* ostage, with-owttyne *the* wallys, 3589  
 Be hynggyde hye appone hyghte alle holly at ones ! "

Arthur and his  
 best knights  
 journey rapidly  
 towards Britain

**N**owe bownes the bolde kyngewith[his] beste knyghtes,  
 Gers trome and trusse, and trynes forth aftyre ,  
 Turnys thorowe Tuskayne, tames bot littalle, 3593  
 Lyghte noghte in Lumbarddye bot whene *the* lyghte  
 failede ,

Meikes ouer the mowntaynes fulle mervaylous wayes,  
 Ayres thurghe Almaygne evyne at the gayneste , 3596  
 fferkes evynne in-to fflawndiesche with hys false  
 knyghtes ,

In fifteen dayes his  
 fleet is assembled  
 He embarks and  
 sets sail

With-in fyftene dayes his flete es assemblede,  
 And thane he schoupe hyme to chippe, and schownnes  
 no lengeie, 3599

Scherys with a chaipe wynde ouer *the* schyre waters ,  
 By *the* roche with ropes he rydes one ankere,  
 Thare the false mene fletyde, and one flode lengede,  
 With chefe chaynes of chare chokkode to-gedyrs, 3603  
 Charggede evyne chekefulle of cheualrous knyghtes ,  
 And in *the* hynte one heghte, helmes and crestes,  
 Hatches with haythene mene hillyd ware thare vndyie,  
 Prowldhe purtrayed<sup>1</sup> with payntede clothys, 3607  
 Iche a pece by pece pykkyde tyll *other*,  
 Dubbyde with dagswaynnes dowblede they some ,  
 And thus *the* derfe Danamarkes had dyghte alle theyre  
 cluppys, 3610

He discovers the  
 fleet of the enemy  
 armed and pre-  
 pared for fight

That no dynte of no darte dere theme ne schoulde  
 Than the roye and *the* renkes of the Rownde Table  
 Alle ryally in iede arrayes his chippis ,  
 That daye ducheieyes he delte, and doubbyde knyghttes,  
 Dresses diomowndes and dragges, and diawene vpo  
 stonys , 3615

Then he makes  
 ready his ships  
 for the battle,

<sup>1</sup> MS purtrayed

The toppe castelles he stuffede *with* toyelys, as hym  
lykyde,

Bendys bowes of vys biotlyly *thare*-aftyre,

Tolowris tentyly takelle they ryghttene,

Brasene hedys fulle brode buskede one flones,

Graythes for garnysones gomes arayes, 3620

Gryme gaddes of stele, ghywes of iryne,

Styttelys<sup>1</sup> steirne one sterynne with styffe mene of aimes,

Mony lufliche launce appone lofte stonndys,

Ledys one leburde, lordys and *other*, 3624

Pyghte payvese one porte, payntede scheldes,

One hyndire hurdace one highte helmede knyghtez

Thus they scheftene foreschotys one thas schirestrandys, [leaf 91, back]

Ilke schalke in his schrowde, fulle scheene ware *theire*

wedys 3628

The bolde kynge es in a barge and a-bowtte rowes,

Alle bare-heuvede for besye with beueryne lokkes,

And a beryne with his bronde, and ane helme betyne,

Mengede with a mawncelet of maylis of siluer, 3632

Compaste with a coronalle, and couerde<sup>2</sup> fulle riche,

Kayris to yche a cogge, to comfurthe his knyghttes

To Clegys and Cleremownde he cryes one lowde,—

“O Gawayne! O Galyrane! thies gud mens bodyes”

To Lotli and to Lyonelle fulle louefly he melys, 3637

And to sir Lawncelot de Lake lordliche woidys,—

“Lat vs couere *the* kythe, the coste es owre ownne,

And gere theme brotheliche blenke, alle zone blod-hondes!

Bryttyne them with-in bourde, and brynne theme *thare*

aftyre! 3641

Hewe downe hertly zone heythene tykes!

Thay are harlotes halfe, I hette zow myne honnde!”

Than he coueres his cogge, and caches one ankere,

Kaughte his comliche helme with *the* clere maylis,

Buskes baners one brode, betyne of gowles,

With coronys of clere golde clenliche arraiede, 3647

The tool men  
righten the  
tickle,

grim goads of  
steels and gyves  
of iron

The bold king in  
a burge rows  
about bareheaded

He cries aloud to  
Cleges and Clere  
mound, to Laonel  
and Lancelot,

“let us recover  
our land and  
make yon blood  
hounds blench  
hew down heartily  
the heathen  
hounds”

He reaches his  
ship takes his  
helmet and mail,  
and displays his  
banners

<sup>1</sup> MS Stirttelys

<sup>2</sup> MS couerde

His chief device  
is a picture of our  
Lady and the  
Child.

Bot *thare* was chosene in *the* chefe a chalke-white  
maydene,

And a childe in hir arme, *that* chefe es of hevynne  
With-owtten *change* in chace, *thies* ware *the* cheefe  
armes 3650

The sailors busy  
themselves to get  
the ships under  
weigh

Of Arthure *the* auenaunt, qwhylls he in erthe lengede  
Thane the marynerse mellys, and maysters of chippis,  
Merly iche a mate menys tille *other*,

Of there termys they talke, how *thay* ware tydd,  
Towynne trvsselle one trete, trvssene vpe sailes, 3655  
Bet bonettez one brede, bettrede hatches,

They strike across  
the stream and  
the strife begins

Brawndeste browne stele, braggede in tiompes,  
Standis styffe one the stamyne, sterns one aftyre,  
Strekyne ouer *the* streme, *thare* stryvynge begynnes  
ffio *the* wagande wynde owte of *the* weste rysses, 3660  
Brethly bessomes with byrre in berynes sailles,  
With hir bryngges one burde burliche cogges,  
Qwhylls *the* bilynge and *the* beme brestys in sondyre,  
So stowtly *the* forsterne one *the* stam hyttis, 3664

There is grent  
dashing together  
of ships

*That* stokkes of *the* stere-burde strykkys in peces !

Grapplings are  
thrown out

Be thane cogge appone cogge, krayers and *other*,  
Castys crepers one crosse als to *the* crafte langes 3667

A mighty strug-  
gle ensues

Thane was hede-rapys hewene *that* helde vpe *the* mastes,  
There was conteke fulle kene, and crachynge of chippys !  
Grett cogges of kampe crasseches in sondyre !

Mony kabane clevede, cabilles destroyede ! 3671

Knyghtes and kene mene kyllide the braynes !

Kidd castelles were corvene with alle theire kene wapene,  
Castelles fulle comliche, *that* coloured ware faire !

Vpcynes eghelynge *thay* ochene *thare*-aftyre, 3675

Masts fall and kill  
the mariners

With *the* swynge of *the* swerde sweys *the* mastys,  
Ovyre-fallys in *the* firste frekis and othure,  
ffrekke in *the* forchupe fey es byleufede !

[leaf 92]

Than brothely they bekyre with boustouse tacle, 3679

Boardings are  
made and hand  
to hand fights  
take place

Bruschese boldlye one burde brynyede knyghtes,  
Owt of botes one burde was buskede with stonys,  
Bott downe of *the* beste, brysus the hetches,

Som gomys thourghe-gyde with gaddys of yryne,  
 Gomys gayliche clede<sup>1</sup> englaymous wapene<sup>1</sup> 3684  
 Archers of Inglande fulle egerly schottes,  
 Hittis thourghe *the* harde stele fulle hertly dynntis<sup>1</sup>  
 Sonne hotchene in holle the *huthenne* knyghtes,  
 Hurte thourghe *the* harde stele, hele they neuer<sup>1</sup> 3688  
 Than they falle to *the* fyghte, ffoynes with sperys,  
 Alle the frekkeste one frownte *that* to *the* fyghte langes,  
 And ilkone fiechely fraystez theire strengthes, 3691  
 Were to fyghte in *the* flete with theire felle wapyne  
 Thus they dalte *that* daye, thure dubbide knyghtes,  
 Tille alle *the* Danes ware dede, and in *the* depe throwene<sup>1</sup>  
 Than Bretones brothely with brondis they hewene,  
 Lepys in vp one lofte lordeliche berynes, 3696  
 When ledys of owt-loñdys leppyne in waters,  
 Alle oure lordes one lowde laughene at ones<sup>1</sup>  
 Be thane speris whare sprongene, spalddyd chippys,  
 Spanyolis spedily sprentyde ouer burdez, 3700  
 Alle *the* kene mene of kampe, knyghtes and *other*,  
 Killyd are colde dede, and castyne ouer burdez<sup>1</sup>  
 There swyers sweyftly has *the* swete leuyde,  
 Hethene heuande on hateche in *ther* hawe rydes, 3704  
 Synkande in *the* salte see seuene hundrethe at ones<sup>1</sup>  
 Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude, he has *the* gree wonnene,  
 And alle *the* cogges grete he gafe to his knyghtes, 3707  
 Sir Geryne, and *sir* Grisswolde,<sup>2</sup> and othir gret loides;  
 Garte Galuth, a gud gome, girde of *thaire* hedys<sup>1</sup>  
 Thus of *the* false flete appone *the* flode happenede,  
 And thus *theis* feryne folke fey are beleuede<sup>1</sup> 3711  
 3itt es *the* traytoure one londe with tryede knyghttes,  
 And alle trompede they trippe one trappede stedys,  
 Schewes theme vndir schilde one *the* schire bankkes,  
 He ne schownttes for no schame, bot schewes fulle heghe<sup>1</sup>  
 Sir Arthure and Gawayne ayvede theme bothene 3716  
 To sixty thosandez of mene, *that* in theire syghte houede  
 Bethis the folke was fellyde, thane was *the* flode passede,

The archers of  
 England make  
 havoc among the  
 heathen knights

The Danes of  
 Modred's fleet  
 are all slain

Arthur's lords  
 laugh to see their  
 foes leap into the  
 water

All Modred's  
 keen men are  
 killed

Sir Gawaine gives  
 the ships to his  
 knights

Thus befell the  
 false fleet.

But Modred the  
 traitor has a land  
 army of tried  
 knights

<sup>1</sup> Or clade

<sup>2</sup> MS Grisswolde

Thane was it slyke a slowde in slakkes fulle hugge,  
 That let *the* kyng for to lande, and the lawe watyie ,  
 ffor-thy he lengede one laye for lesynng of horsesys,  
 To loke of his lege mene, and of his lele knyghtes  
 3if any ware lamede or loste, life 3ife they scholde  
 Than *sir* Gawayne *the* gude a galaye he takys, 3724  
 And glides vp at a gole with gud mene of armes ,  
 Whene he growndido, for grefe he gyrdys in *the* watere,  
 That to *the* gudylle he gos in alle his gylte wedys ,  
 Schotthis vpe appone *the* sonde in syghte of *the* loides,  
 Sengly with hys soppe, my sorowe es the more !  
 [leaf 92, back] With baners of his bagys beste of his armes, 3730  
 He braydes vp-on the banke in his bryghte wedys ,  
 He byddys his baneoure, " buske *thow* be-lyfe  
 To 3one brode batayle that one 3one banke houes ,  
 And I ensure 3ow sothe I salle 3owe sewe aftyre , 3734  
 Loke 3e blenke for no bronde, ne for no bryghte wapyne,  
 Dot berns downe of *the* beste and bryng theme o-dawe !  
 Bees noghte abayste of theire boste, abyde one *the* erthe,  
 3e haue my baneres boine in batailles fulle hugge ,  
 We salle felle 3one false, *the* fende hafe theire saules !  
 ffightes faste with *the* frape, *the* felde salle be owres ,  
 May I *that* traytoure ouer-take, torfere hyme tyddes,  
 That this tresone has tymbyde to my trewe lorde !  
 Of siche a engendure fulle littylle joye happyns, 3743  
 And *that* salle in this *jour* nee be juggede fulle euene ! "  
 Now they seke ouer *the* sonde *this* soppe at *the* gayneste,  
 Sembles one *the* sowdeous, and settys theire dyntys ,  
 Thourghe *the* scheldys so schene schalkes *they* towche,  
 With schaftes scheueride schoite of *thas* schene launces ,  
 Derfe dynttys they dalte with daggande sperys ,  
 One *the* danke of *the* dewe many dede lyggys, 3750  
 Dukes, and duszeperis, and dubbide knyghttys ,  
 The doughttyeste of Danemarke vndone are for eue !  
 Thus *thas* renkes in rewthe rittis there brenyes,  
 And rechis of *the* richeste vn-rekene dynttis , 3754  
 Thare they thronge in the thikke, and thristis to *the* erthe

Arthur waits for  
the tide to rise  
before he lands

Sir Gawaine  
wades ashore

He bids his  
standard bearer  
advance against  
Modied's host

" We shall fell  
yon false men,  
the field shall be  
ours "

He and his little  
band charge the  
whole army

Of the thiaeste mene thre hundieth at ones ! 3756 They slay three hundred of the bravest  
 Bot *sir* Gawayne for grefe myghte noghte agayne-stande,

Vmbegnypps a spere, and to a gome rynnys,  
*That* bare of gowles fulle gaye, with gowces of syluere,  
 He gydes hym in at *the* gorge with his gryme<sup>1</sup> launce,  
*That the* growndene glayfe graythes in sondyre ! 3761 *Sir* Gawaine kills the king of Goth land  
 With *that* boystous brayde he bownes hym to dye !

*The* kynge of Gutlande it was, a gude mane of armes  
 Thayre awawwaide than alle voydes *thare*-aftyre,  
 Als venqueste verrayely with valyant berynes, 3765 The vanguard of the army flies  
 Metis with medilwarde, that Modrede ledys !

Oure mene merkes theme to, as theme myshappenede—  
 ffor hade *sir* Gawayne hade grace to halde *the* gene hille,  
 He had wuchipe i-wys womnene for iue ! 3769 Gawaine rashly advances against the centre, where Modred is, with the Montagus and other great lords

Bot *thane sir* Gawayne i-wysse, he waytes hym welo  
 To wreke hyme on this weilaughe, *that this* werremouede,  
 And merkes to *su* Modrede amonge alle his beryns,  
 With the Mownttagus, and *other* gret lordys

*Than su* Gawayne was greuede, and with a gret wylle Gawaine puts a good spear in test and assails Modred with reproaches  
 ffewters a faire speire, and freschely askryes,— 3775  
 “ffals fosterde foode, the fende haue thy bonys !

ffy one the, felone, and thy false werkys !  
 Thow salls be dede and vndone for thy deife dedys,  
 On I salls dy this daye, 3if destanye worthe ! ” 3779

**T**hane his enmye, with oste of owlawede berynes, [leaf 93] The host of the enemy, numbering sixty thousand men, surround Gawaine and his little band  
 Alle enangylles abowte oure excellente knyghttez,  
 That the traytoure be tiesone had tryede hym seluene,  
 Dukes of Danemarke he dyghttes fulle sone, 3783

And leders of Lettowe, with legyons inewe,  
 Vmbylappyde oure mene with launcez fulle kene,  
 Sowdeours and Sarazenes owte of sere landys,  
 Sixty thosande mene semlyly arrayede, 3787

Sekerly assembles thare one seuenschore knyghtes,  
 Sodaynly in dischayte by tha salte strandes  
 Thane *su* Gawayne grette with his gray eghene,  
 ffor grefe of his gud mene that he gyde schulde, 3791 Gawaine weeps and laments for the danger of his men

<sup>1</sup> growne struck out, and gryme written instead

He wyste that *thay* wondyde ware, and wery for-  
foughttene,

And what for wondire and woo, alle his witte faylede  
And thane syghande he saide, with sylande terys,—

“We are with Sarazenes be-sett appone seie halfes !

I syghe noghte for my selfe, sa helpe oure Lorde, 3796

Bot for to [see] vs supprysede, my sorowe es the more

Bes dowghtty to-daye, 3one dukes schalle be 3oures !

ffor dere Dryghttyne this daye, dredys no wapyne

He comforts  
them with pro-  
mises of blessings  
in heaven.

We salle ende this daye alls excellent knyghttes, 3800

Ayere to endelesse joye with angelles vnwemyde

*Thofe* we hafe vnwittlyly wastede oure selfene,

We salle wirke alle wele in *the* wirchiye of Cryste

We salle for 3one Sarazenes, I sekire 3ow my trowhe,

Soupepe with oure Saueoure solemply in heuene,

In ptesence of *that* precious, prynce of alle *other* 3806

They shall sup  
with prophets,  
patriarchs, and  
apostles

With prophetes, and patriarkes, and apostlys fulle nobill’,

Be-fore his feliche face that *fourmede* vs alle !

He that yields  
unslain, be he  
nevermore saved  
or succomed of  
Christ !

3ondne to 3one 3aldsones, he *that* 3eldes hyme euer,

Qwhylls he es qvykke and in qwerte vnquellyde with  
handis,

Be he neuer mo sauede, ne socourede with Cryste,

Bot Satanase his sawle mowe synke in-to heHe !” 3812

Then Gawaine  
grimly grips his  
weapon,

**T**han grymly *sir* Gawayne gryppis hys wapyne,

Agayne *that* gret bataille he graythes hym sone,

Radly of his riche swerde he reghttes *the* cheynys,

In he schokkes his schelde, schountes he no lengare,

Bot alls vnwyse, wodewyse, he wente at *the* gayneste,

and rushes into  
the fray

Wondis of thas wedirwynys with wrakfulle dynttys,

Alle wellys fulle of blode, thare he awaye passes, 3819

And *thofe* hym ware fulle woo, he wondys bot lyttalle,

Bot wrekyis at his wirchiye *the* wrethe of hys lorde !

He performs  
mighty deeds of  
arms

He stekys stedis in stoure, and sterenefulle knyghttes,

That sterynemene in theiresterapesstone-dede*thay* lygge !

He ryvys *the* ranke stele, he rnttes *the* mayles, 3824

Thare myghte no renke hym areste, his resone was  
passede !

He felle in a fransye for fersenesse of herte,  
 He feghttis and fellis downe *that* hyme be-fore standis ! He fights like a  
unadman  
 felle neuer fay mane siche fortune in erthe ! 3828  
 In-to *the* hale bataile hadlyngs he rymys,  
 And hurtes of *the* hardieste *that* one the erthe lenges !  
 Letande ahs a lyone, he lawnches theme thorowe,  
 Lordes and ledars, that one the launde houes ! 3832 [leaf 93, back]  
 3it *su* Gawayne for wo wondis bot lyttille,  
 Bot woundis of *thas* wedirwynes with wondirfulle dyntes,  
 Alls he *that* wold wilfully wastene hyme selfene ,  
 And for wondsome and wille alle his wit failede, 3836  
 That wode ahs a wylde beste he wente at *the* gayneste, Mad as a wild  
beast, he leues  
all wallowin, in  
blood where he  
passe  
 Alle walewede one blode, thare he a-waye passede ,  
 Iche a wy may be warre, be wreke of an-*other* ! 3839  
**T**han hemouesto *su* Modrede amange alle his knyghttes,  
 And mett hyme in *the* myde schelde, and mallis hyme  
 thorowe ,  
 Bot the schalke for the scharpe he schownttes a littille,  
 He schare hyme one *the* schorte rybbys a schaftmonde He wounds Mo-  
dred in the side  
 large ! 3843  
 The schafte schoderede and schotte in the schire beryne,  
 That *the* schadande blode ouer his schanke rynnys,  
 And schewede one his schynbawde, *that* was schire  
 burneste ! 3846  
 And so they schyfte and schove, he schotte to *the* erthe, Modred falls to  
the earth  
 With *the* lussche of *the* launce he lyghte one hysschuldrys,  
 Ane akere lenghe one a launde, full lothely wondide  
 Than Gawayne gyrd to *the* gome, and one *the* groffe  
 fallis , 3850  
 Ahs his grefe was graythede, his grace was no bettyre !  
 He schokkes owtte a schorte knyfe schethede with siluere, Gawayne strikes  
at him with a  
knife, but misses  
his blow  
 And scholde haue slottede hyme in, bot no slytte  
 happenede ,  
 His hand sleppid and slode o slante one *the* mayles,  
 And *the* tother slely slynges hym vndire 3855  
 With a trenchande knyfe the traytoure hym hyttes, The traitor hits  
him  
 MORIE ARTHURE 8



through the  
helmet and the  
head

Thorowe *the* helme and *the* hede, one heyghe one *the*  
brayne

Gawaine is gone,  
the good man of  
arms<sup>1</sup>

And thus *sir* Gawayne es gone, the gude man of armes,  
With-owttyne reschewe of renke, and rewghes *the* moie !

Thus *su* Gawaynne es gone, that gyede many othre ,  
ffro Gower to Gernesay, alle *the* gret lordys 3861  
Of Glamour, of Galys londe, *this* galyarde knyghtes,  
ffor glent of gloppynyng<sup>1</sup> glade be they neuer !

King Frederick  
asks who he was

**K**ying ffroderike of Fres faythely *thaire*-aftyre, 3864  
ffraynes at the false mane of owre ferse knyghte ,

“ Knew thow *eu*r this knyghte in thi kith ryche,  
Of whate kynde he was comene? be-knowe now *the* sothe,  
Qwat gome was he this *with* the gaye armes, 3868  
With *this* gryffoure of golde, *that* es one growffe fallyne ?  
He has grettly greffede vs, sa me Gode helpe !

Modred tells  
him that he was  
*Sir* Gawaine the  
good, the merri-  
est, the kindest,  
and the bravest  
of knights<sup>1</sup>

Gyrde downe oure gude mene, and gieuede vs sore !  
He was *the* sterynneste in stoure that *eu*r stele werryde,  
ffore he has stonayede oure stale, and stroyede for *eu*r ! ”  
Than *sir* Mordrede *with* mouthe melis fulle faire , 3874

The hardest of  
hand, the hap-  
piest in arms, the  
most courteous in  
hall<sup>1</sup>

“ He was makles one molde, mane, be my trowhe ,  
This was *sir* Gawayne the gude, *the* gladdeste of othre,  
And the gracouseste gome that vndue God lyffede,  
Mane hardyeste of hande, happyeste in armes, 3878  
And *the* hendeste in hawle vndue heuene riche ,  
*The* lordeheste of ledyng qwhylles he lyffe myghte,  
ffore he was lyone allossede in londes i-newe ,

[leaf 94]

Had thow knawene hym, *su* kyng, in kythe thare he  
lengede, 3882  
His konyng, his knyghthode, his kyndly werkes,  
His doying, his doughtynesse, his dedis of armes,  
Thow wolde hafe dole for his dede *the* dayes of thy  
lyfe ! ”

Modred weeps  
and curses his  
destiny,

3it *that* traytour aHis tite tems lete he falle, 3886  
Turnes hym furthe tite, and talkes no more,  
Went wepand a-waye, and weries the stowndys,

<sup>1</sup> MS gloppynyng



*That euer his wordes ware wroghte sicke wandiethe to* that ever he was  
fated to work  
such woe  
*wyrke*

Whene he thoghte on *this* thyng, it thirlede his herte,  
ffor sake of his sybb blode sygheande he rydys, 3891

When *that* renayede renke remembirde hym seluene,

Of reuerence and ryotes of *the* Rownde Table,

He remyd and repent hym of alle his rewthe werkes, He repents of his  
wickedness and  
retreats,  
Rode awaye with his rowte, ristys he no lengere, 3895

ffor rade of oure riche kyng, ryve *that* he scholde

Thane kayres he to Cornewaile, carefull in herte, goes into Corn  
wall,

Be-cause of his kynsemane that one the coste ligges

He taries tremlande ay, tydandis to herkene 3899

Than the *tiaytoure* tieunted *the* Tyseday *thar*-aftyre,

Tynnys in *with* a trayne tresone to wike,

And by *the* Tambire *that* tide his tentis he reis,

and pitches his  
tents by the Ia  
mar,

And thane in a mette-while a messangere he sendes,

And wraite vn-to Waynor how the werlde chaungede, and from thence  
writes to G uine  
ver,

And what comliche coste the kyng was aryuede, 3905

One floode foughtene *with* his fleete, and fellyd theme  
o lyfe,

Bade hir ferkene oo ferre, and flee *with* hir childe,

Whills he myghte wile hym awaye, and wyne to hir

speche, 3908

Ayere in to Irelande, in-to *thas* owte-mowntes,

bidding her fly  
into Ireland

And wonne thare in wildernesse *with-in* *tha* wast landys

Than cho jermys and 3ee at 3orke in hir chambire,

Gronys fulle grysely *with* gretand teres, 3912

Passes owte of *the* palesse *with* alle hir pryce maydenys,

Towarde Chestyre in a charre thay chese hir *the* wayes,

Dighte hir ewyne for to dye *with* dule at hir herte,

Scho kayres to Karelyone, and kawghte hir a vaile,

But she goes to  
Caerleon and  
takes the veil

Askes thare *the* habite in *the* honoure of Criste,

And alle for falsede, and frawde, and fere of hir louerde!

**B**ot whene oure wise kyng wiste *that* Gawayne was  
landede, 3919

He al to-wrythes for woo, and wryngande his handes, Arthur is grieved

for Gawaine's  
rash landing, and  
follows him  
wading through  
the water

Geis lawnche his botes appone a lawe wature,  
Londis als a lyone with loidliche knyghtis,  
Slippes in in the sloppes o slante to *the* girdylle,  
Swalters vpe swyftly with his sweide drawene, 3924  
Bownnys his bataile and baners displayes,  
Buskes ouer *the* biode sandes with breth̃ at his herte,

He hastens to the  
field where ten  
thousand of the  
traitor's men and  
seven score of  
his own knights  
lie dead

fferkes frekkly one felde *thare the* feyo lygges,  
Of the traytours mene one tiappede stedis, 3928  
Ten thosandez ware tynte, *the* trewghe to acownt,  
And certane on owre syde seuene score knyghtes  
In soyte with theire souerayne vn-sownde are belenede!

[leaf 94, back]

Arthur slays  
dukes and earls,

**T**he kyng comly ouer-keste knyghtes and othre,  
Erles of Awfrike, and Estuche berynes 3933  
Of Orgaile and Oiekenay, *the* Iiesche kynges,  
The nobileste of Noiwaye, nowmbus fulle hugge,  
Dukes of Danamarke, and dubbid knyghtes,  
And the guchede kyng in the gay armes 3937  
Lys gronande one *the* grownnde, and girde thorowe eue!

he seeks for the  
knights of the  
Round Table,

The riche kyng ransakes with rewthe at his herte,  
And vp rypes the renkes of alle *the* Rownde Tabylle,  
Ses theme alle in a soppe in sowte by theme one, 3941  
With *the* Sarazenes vn-sownde enserchede a-bowte,

and finds Sir Ga-  
wayne lying dead

And *sir* Gawayne the gude in his gaye armes,  
Vmbegrippede the giuse, and one grouffe fallene, 3944  
His baners braydene downe, betyne of gowlles,  
His brand and his brade schelde al bloody be-rouene,  
Was neuer oure semliche kyng so sorowfulle in herte,  
Ne *that* sanke hym so sade, bot *that* sighte one 3948

With groans and  
tears he kisses  
the body

**T**han gliftus *the* gud kyng, and glopyng in herte,  
Gronys fulle grisely with gretande terns,  
Knelis downe to *the* cors, and kaught it in armes,  
Kastys vpe his vmbreie, and kyssis hym sone, 3952  
Lokes one his eye-liddis, *that* lowkkide ware faire,  
His lippis like to *the* lede, and his lire falowede!

He bitterly la-  
ments the good  
knight

*Than* the corownde kyng cryes fulle lowde,—  
“Deie kosyne o kynde, in kare am I leuede!” 3956

ffor nowe my wunchepe es wente, and my were endide !  
 Here es *the* hope of my hele, my happynge of armes !  
 My herte and my hardynes hale one hym lengede !  
 My concelle, my comforth, *that* kepide myne herte !  
 Of alle knyghtes *the* kyng *that* vndu Criste lifede,  
 Thou was worthy to be kyng, *thofe* I *the* corowne bare !  
 My wele and my wirchipe of alle *this* werlde riche 3963  
 Was wonnene thourghe *su* Gawayne, *and* thourghe his  
 witt one !

It was through  
 his wit that all  
 his conquests  
 were made

Allas !” saide *su* Arthure, “nowe ekys my solowe !  
 I am vtirly vndone in myne auene landes !  
 A doughtouse deife dede, *thou* duellis to longe ! 3967  
 Why diawes *thou* so one dreghe ? thow drownnes myne  
 herte !”

Then swe[et]es the swete kyng and in swounne fallis,  
 Swafies vp swiftly, and swetly hym kysses,  
 Tille his burliche berde was blody be-rowne, 3971  
 Alls he had bestes birtenede, and broghte ow t of life,  
 Ne had *su* Ewayne comene, and othire grete lordys,  
 His bolde herte had broustene for bale at *that* stownde !

Arthur swoons  
 for grief, then  
 starts up and  
 kisses the dead  
 knight  
 His beard is  
 smeared in the  
 blood of Gawaine

“**B**lyne,” sais this bolde mene, “thow blondirs *thi*  
 selfene, 3975

*Su* Fwayne and  
 his knyghts re  
 strain him

*This* es botles bale, for bettir bees it neuer !  
 It es no wirchipe i-wysse to wryng thyne hondes,  
 To wepe als a womane it es no witt holdene !  
 Be knyghtly of contenance, als a kyng scholde, 3979  
 And leue siche clamoure for Cristes lufe of heuene !”  
 “ffor blode,” said the bolde kyng, “blyne salle I neuer,  
 O1 my brayne to-briste, or my breste *other* !  
 Was neuer solowe so softe that sanke to my herte,  
 Itt es full selfe to my selfe, my sorowe es the more !  
 Was neuer so sorowfull as yghteseyne with myne eyghene !  
 He es sakles supprysede for syne of myne one !”  
 Downe knelis *the* kyng, and kryes full lowde, 3987  
 With carefull contenance he karpes thes wordes,—  
 “O rightwis riche Gode, this rewthe thow be-holde !

[leaf 95]

He excuses him  
 self on account  
 of the greatness  
 of the grief

He collects Ga  
waine's blood in  
a helmet,

and carries away  
his body

Then he makes a  
solemn vow that  
he will take no  
pleasure in the  
chase till Ga  
waine be  
avenged

The body was  
sent straight to  
Winchester,

and met by a pro  
cession of monks

Arthur gives or  
ders that all hon  
our should be  
paid to the dead

*This* ryalle iede blode yne appone erthe,  
It waie worthy to be schiede and schynede in golde,  
ffor it es sakles of syne, sa helpe me oure Loide!" 3992  
Downe knelis *the* kyng *with* kare at his herte,  
Kaughte it vpe kyndly *with* his clene handis,  
Keste it in a ketille-hatte, and coueide it faire, 3995

And kayres furihe *with the* cors in kyghte *thare* he lenges  
"Here I make myn avowe," *quod* the kyngne thane,  
"To Messie, and to Marie, the mylde qwenne of  
heuene,

I salle neu<sup>e</sup> iyyave, ne iacches vn-cowpylle  
At roo ne iayne-dere, *thit* iynnes apponme erthe, 4000  
Neu<sup>e</sup> growhownde late glyde, ne gossehawke latt flye,  
Ne neu<sup>e</sup> fowle see fellhde, *that* flieghecs *with* wenge,  
ffawkone ne formaylle appone liste handille,  
Ne ȝitt *with* gerefawcone rejoyse me in erthe, 4004  
Ne iegne in my royaltez, ne hake my Rownde Table,  
Tille thi dede, my deie, be dewly reuengede!  
Bot eu<sup>e</sup> droupe and daie, qwylls my lyte lastez,  
Tille Dmghtene and deife dede hafe done qwate theme  
likes!" 4008

Than kaughte they vpe *the* cors *with* kareat theire hertes,  
Karyed [it] one a counsere *with the* kyngne selfene,  
The waye vn-to Wynchestre *thay* wente at the gayneste,  
Wery and wandsomdly, *with* wondide knyghtes, 4012  
Thare come *the* prior of *the* plas, and professide monnkes,  
Apas in processione, and *with* the prynce metys,  
And he be-tuke *thame* the cors of *the* knyghte noble  
"Lokis it be clenly kepyd," he said, "and in *the* kuke  
holdene, 4016

Done for derygese, as to *the* ded fallys,  
Menskede *with* messes, for mede of *the* saule  
Loke it wante no waxe, ne no wirchipe elles,  
And at *the* body be bawmede, and one erthe holdene,  
ȝiff *thou* kepe thi couent encroche any wirchipe 4021  
At my comyng a gayne, ȝif Crist wille it thole,

A-byde of *the* beryenge tille thcy be broughte vndire,  
That has wioghte vs this woo, and *this* werre mouede "

**T**han sais *sir* Wychere *the* wy, a wyese mane of armes, Sir Wycher advises that he should stay in Winchester and rally his forces  
"I rede ȝe warely wende, and wikes the beste ,

Soioine in this ceté, and semble thi berynes, 4027

And bidde *wit* thi bolde mene in thi burghe riche  
Get owt knyghttez of contres, that castelles holdes,  
And owt of garysons grete gude mene of armes,  
ffor we are fathely to fewe to feghte *wit* theme alle,  
That we see in his sorte appone *the* see bankes " 4032  
With krewelle contenance thane the kyng karpis theis  
wordes,—

"I praye the kare noghte, *sir* knyghte, ne caste thou no  
diedis ! [leaf 90, b. 10.]

Hadde I no segge bot my selfe one vndir sone, 4035 Arthur declares that though he be alone if he may see Modred he will mall him to death among all his men  
And I may hym see *wit* sighte, or one hym sette hondis,  
I salle evene amange his mene malle hym to dede,  
Are I of *the* stede styre halfe a stede lenghe !

I salle [stryke] hym in his stowre, and stroye hym foreuer,  
And *there* to make I myne aŵowe devottly to Cyste,  
And to hys modyre Maie, *the* mylde qwene of heuene !

I salle neuer soioine ne sounde, ne sawghte at myne herte,  
In ceté ne in subarbe sette appone erthe, 4043 He will never sojourn in city or town till Modred be slain

Ne ȝitt slomyre ne slepe *wit* my slawe eyghne,  
Tille he be slayne *that* hym slowghe, ȝif any sleyghte  
happene

Bot euer pursue the payganyis *that* my pople distroyede,  
Qwylls I may pare theme and pynne, in place *there* me  
likes " 4047

Thare durstenorenke hym areste of alle *the* Rownde Table,  
Ne none paye *that* prynce *wit* plesande wordes,  
Ne none of his lige mene luke hym in the eyghne,  
So lordely he lukes for losse of his knyghttes ! 4051

None of his lige men dare look him in the eyes

Thane drawes he to Dorsett, and dreches no langere,  
Derefulle dredlesse with drowppande teris,  
Kayeris in-to Kornewayle with kare at his herte,

Arthur follows  
Modred into  
Cornwall and at  
last he him

The trays of *the* traytoure he trynys fulle eucenne, 4055  
And turnys in be *the* Treyntis *the* traytoure to seche,  
flyndis hym in a foeste *the* Frydaye there-aftre,  
The kyng lyghtes one fott, and freschely askryes,  
And *with* his feliche folke he has *the* felde nommene<sup>1</sup>

A vast host of  
aliens assault Ar  
thur's men

Now isschewis his enmye vndire *the* wode eynys,  
With osten of alynes fulle horrebille to schewe<sup>1</sup>  
Sir Mordrede the Malebianche, *with* his myche pople,  
ffoundes owt of the foreste appone fele halfes, 4063  
In seuene grett batailles semliche arrayede,

There were sixty  
thousand against  
eighteen hun  
dred

Sexty thowsande mene, the syghte was fulle hugge,  
Alle fyghtande folke of *the* fene lanndes,  
ffane fettede one frownte be tha fresche stiondes<sup>1</sup>  
And alle Arthurs oste was amde *with* knyghtes 4068  
Bot awghtene hundrethe of alle, entiede in iolles,  
This was a mache vn-mete, bot myghttis of Criste,  
To melle *with* that multitude in thase man londis  
Than the royalle roy of *the* Rownde Table 4072

Arthur on a  
charpter arranges  
his men

Rydes one a riche stede, arayes his beyns  
Buskes his awawmwarde, als hym beste likes,  
Sir Ewayne, and so Erake, and othre gret lordes,  
Demenys the medilwaide menskefully thare-aftyre,  
With Merrake and Meneduke,<sup>1</sup> myghtty of strengthes,  
Iduous and Alymere, thare auenaunt childrene,  
Ayeis *with* Arthure, *with* seuene score of knyghtes,  
He iewlis *the* rerewarde redyly thare-aftyre, 4080  
The rekeneste redy mene of *the* Rownde Table,  
And thus he fittis his folke, and freschely askryes,  
And syene comforthes his mene *with* knyghtlyche  
wordes—

He beseeches  
them to do well  
that day and not  
to fear

“ I be-seke 3ow, sirs, for sake of oure Lorde, 4084  
That 3e doo wele to-daye, and dredis no wapene<sup>1</sup>  
ffighttes fersely now, and fendis 3oure seluene,  
ffellis downe 3one feye folke, the felde salle be owrs<sup>1</sup>  
They are Sarazenes 3one sorte, vn-sownde motte they  
woithe<sup>1</sup> 4088

[leaf 96]

<sup>1</sup> O, Menyduke

Sett one theme sadlye, for sake of oure Loide !  
 3if vs be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,  
 We salle be hewede vn-to heuene, or we be halfe colde !  
 Loke 3e lett for no lede lordly to wirche , 4092  
 Layes 3one laddes lowe be the layke ende !

If they are slain  
 they will be taken  
 straight up to  
 heaven

Take no tente vn-to me, ne tale of me iekke,  
 Bes besy one my baners with 3oure brighte wapyns,  
 That they be strenghely stuffede with steryne knyghtes,  
 And holdene lordly one lofte ledys to schewe , 4097  
 3if any renke theme arase, reschowe theme sone

Wukes now my wirchiue, to-daye my werie endys !  
 3e wotte my wele and my woo, wukkys as 3ow likys !  
 Crist comly with crowne comforthe 3ow alle, 4101  
 ffor the kyndeste creatours that euer kynge ledde !

To day his war  
 ends !

I gyffe 3ow alle my blyssyng with a blithe wille,  
 And alle Bretowns bolde, blythe mote 3e worthe !"

He gives them  
 his parting bless  
 ing

They pype vpe at pryme tyme, approches theme nere,  
 Pris mene and priste proues theire strengthes,  
 Bremly the brethemen bragges in troumppes, 4107  
 In cornettes comlyly, whene knyghttes assembles,  
 And thane jolyly enjoynys theis jentylle knyghttes ,  
 A jolyere journé ajuggede was neuer,

Whene Bretones boldly embraces theire scheldes, 4111  
 And Cristyne encroyssede theme, and castis in fewtre !

The Britons at  
 tack the enemy,  
 without delay

**T**han sir Arthure oste his enmye askryes,  
 And in they schokke theire scheldes, schontes no  
 lengare ,

Schotte to the schiltiones, and schowttes fulle heghe,  
 Thorowe scheldis fulle schene schalkes they touche !  
 Redily thas rydde mene of the Rownde Table 4117

With ryalle rannke stele rittys theire mayles ,  
 Bryneys browddene they briste, and burneste helmys,  
 Hewes haythene mene downe, halses in sondre !  
 ffyghtande with fyne stele, the feye blod rynnys, 4121

Of the frekkeste of frounte, vn-fers ere be-levede

Ethyns of Argayle and Irische kynges

Enverounes oure awawmwarde with venymmos beynes , The vanguard is



surrounded by  
the enemy, and  
many of them  
slain

Peghttes and paynymes with perilous wapyns, 4125

With speies dispetounely disspoylles oure knyghttes,

And hewde downe the hendeste with hertly dynttyes!

Thorow the holle batayle they holdene there wayes,

Thus ferly they fyghte appone sere halves, 4129

That of the bolde Bietones myche blode spillis

Thare durste non rescowe theme, for reches in eithe,

Thesteryne warethare sostedde, and stuffede wit[h] othere

He durste noghte sture a steppe, bot stodde for hyme

seluene, 4133

Tille thre stalis ware stroyede be strenghe of hyme one!

"Idious," quod Arthure, "ayre the by houes!"

I see sir Ewayne ouer-sette with Sarazenes kene! 4136

Redy the for rescows, arraye thee sone!

Hye the with hardy men in helpe of thy fladire!

Selt in one the syde, and socoune zone londes,

Bot they be socouriede and sownde, vnsawghte be I

neuer!" 4140

Idious hyme ansuers earnestly thare-aftyre,—

"He es my fadire in fathre, for sake salle I neuer,

He has me fosteride and fedde, and my faire bietherene,

Bot I for-sake this gate, so me Gode helpe, 4144

And sothely alle sybredyne bot thy selfe one,

I breke neuer his biddynge for beyrne one lyfe,

Bot euer bouxvme as beste blethely to wyke!

He commande me kyndly, with knyghtly wordes, 4148

That I schulde lelely one the lenge, and one noo lede elles,

I salle hys commandement holde, 3if Criste wil me thole!

He es eldare thane I, and ende salle we bothene,

He salle feirke be-fore, and I salle come aftyre 4152

3iffe hyme be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,

Criste comly with crowne take kepe to hys saule!"

**T**han remys the riche kyng with rewthe at his herte,

Hewys hys handys one heghte, and to the heuene

lokes,— 4156

"Qwythene hade Dryghttyne destaynede at his dere wille,

Arthur bids Sir  
Idius rescue him  
[leaf 90, back]

father, Sir  
Dwayne

Sir Idrus replies  
that his father  
has commanded  
him not to lewe  
the king

"If he be destined  
to die, Christ  
keep his soul!"

That he hade demyd me to daye to dy for ȝow alle !  
 That had I leuer than be lorde alle my lyfe tyme, 4159  
 Off alle *that* Alexandere aughte qwhilles he in erthe  
 lengede "

Arthur wishes  
 that he might die  
 instead of his  
 knights

Sir Ewayne and sir Errake, *thes* excellente beryns,  
 Enters in one *the* oste, and egerly strykes , 4162  
 The ethenys of Orkkenaye and Irische kynges,  
 Thay gobone of *the* gretteste *with* growndene swerdes,  
 Hewes one *thas* hulkes *with theire* harde wapyns,  
 Layed downe *thas* ledes *with* lothely dynttys , 4166  
 Schuldrys and scheldys *thay* schrede to *the* hawnyches,  
 And medilles thourghe mayles *thay* merkene in sondre !  
 Sicke honoure neuer aughte none erthely kyng  
 At theue endyng daye, bot Arthure hyme seluene !  
 So *the* doughte of *the* daye dyede theire hertes, 4171  
 That bothe drynkles they dye, dole was *the* more !

Sir Ewayne and  
 Sir Errak per  
 form great deeds  
 of valour before  
 they are over-  
 powered and  
 slain

Now mellys oure medille warde, and mengene to-gedire  
 Sir Modrede *the* Malebranche *with* his myche pople,  
 He had hide hyme be-hynde *with-in* *thas* holte eynys,  
 With halle bataile one hethe, harme es *the* more ! 4176  
 He hade sene *the* conteke al clene to *the* ende,  
 How oure cheualrye cheuyde be chaunces of armes !  
 He wiste oure folke was for-foughttene, *that* *there* was  
 feye leuede ,

The centre of Ai-  
 thur's army en-  
 gages  
 Sir Modred has  
 been watching  
 the battle, and  
 preparing to at-  
 tack the king

To encowntere *the* kyng he castes hyme sone, 4180  
 Bot the chuules chekyne hade chaungyde his armes ,  
 He had sothely for-sakene *the* sawturoure engrelede,  
 And laughte vpe thre lyons alle of whitte siluyre,  
 Passande in purple of perrie fulle riche, 4184  
 ffor *the* kyng sulde noghte knawe *the* cawtelous wriche !

But first he  
 changes his arms  
 to conceal him  
 self

Be-cause of his cowardys he keste of his atyre ,  
 Bot the comliche kyng knewe hym fulle swythe,  
 Karpis to *su* Cadors *thes* kyndly wordez,— 4188  
 "I see *the* traytoure come ȝondyr trynande fulle ȝerne ,  
 ȝone ladde *with the* lyones es like to hyme selfene !  
 Hym salle torfere be-tyde, may I touche ones, 4191

[leaf 97]

But Arthur knows  
 him at once, and  
 points him out  
 to Sir Cadour

The two famous  
swords Clarent  
and Caliburn,  
shall this day be  
tried one against  
the other

ffor alle his tresone and trayne, als I am tiew loide !  
To-day Claient and Caliburne sallowe the theme to-gedirs,  
Whilke es kenere of keife, or hardare of eghge !  
ffiaiste sallowe we fyne stele appone fyne wedis • 4195  
Itt was my derlyng daynteuous, and fulle dere holdene,  
Kepede fore encorowmentes of kynges enoyntede,  
One dayes when I dubbyde dukkes and erles ,  
It was burliche borne be the bryghte hiltis ,  
I durste neuer dere it in dedis of armes, 4200  
Bot euere kepide clene, be-cause of my seluene

Arthur recog-  
nizes his sword  
which he had  
left at Walling-  
ford under the  
cure of the Queen

ffor I see Claient vn-clede, that crowne es of sweides,  
My wardrop of Walyngfordhe I wate es distroyede ,  
Wist no wy of wone bot Waynor hir seluene, 4204  
Scho hade the keypyng he selfe of that kyldde waypyne,  
Off cofres enclosede that to the crowne lengede,  
With rynges and relikkes, and the regale of ffiaunce,  
That was ffowndene one sir ffrolle, whene he was feye  
leuyde " 4208

Sir Marrik fights  
with Modred  
and is forced to  
withdraw

Than sir Marrike in malyncoly metys hym sone,  
With a mellyd mace myghtyly hym strykes ,  
The boidoure of his bacenett he bristes in sondire,  
That the schire rede blode ouer his brene rynnys ! 4212  
The beryne blenkes for bale, and alle his ble chaunges,  
Bot gitt he byddys as a bore, and brymly he strykes !  
He braydes owte a brande bryghte als euere ony syluer,  
That was sir Arthure awene, and Vtere his fadirs, 4216  
In the wardrop of Walyngfordhe was wonte to be kepede,  
Thare-with the derfe dogge syche dynttes he rechede,  
The tother with-drewe one dreghe and durste do none  
other ;

for Sir Marrik  
was married with  
old age

ffor sir Marrake was mane merrede in elde, 4220  
And sir Mordrede was myghty, and [in] his moste  
strengthis ,  
Come none with-in the compas, knyghte ne none other ,  
With-in the swyng of swerde, that ne he the swete leuyd  
That peysayfes oure prynces, and presses to faste, 4224

Strykes in-to *the stowre* by stienghe of hys handis ,  
 Metis with *su* Mordrede, he melis vn-faire,—

Arthur forces his  
 way to Modied,

“Turne, traytoure vntiewe, *the* tydys no bettyre , 4227  
 Be gret Gode, thow salle dy with dynt of my handys !  
 The schalle rescowe no renke ne riches in erthe !”

and upbraids  
 him

The kyng with Calaburne knyghtly hym strykes,  
*The cantelle of the clere schelde* he kerfes in sondyre,  
 In-to *the schuldre of the schalke* a schaftmonde large,  
*That the schire rede blode schwede* one *the* maylys !

Then he strikes  
 him with Cal  
 burn and cuts  
 through his  
 shield and into  
 the shoulder

He schodirde and schrenkys, and schontes bott lyttalle,  
 Bott schokkes in scharpely in his schene wedys , 4235

[leaf 97, back]

The ffelonne with *the* ffyne swerde freschely he strykes,  
 The ffaettes of *the* fferre syde he flassches in sondyre,  
 Thorowe jopowne and jesserawnte of gentille mailes !

Modred, though  
 wounded, strikes  
 Arthur and gives  
 him a terrible  
 wound in the  
 side

The fieke fichede in *the* flesche an halfe fotte large ,  
 That derfe dynt was his dede, and dole was *the* more  
 That euer *that* doughatty sulde dy, bot at Dryghttyns  
 wylle !

4241

3itt with Calyburne his swerde, fulle knyghttly he  
 strykes,

Arthur with Cal  
 burn cuts off the  
 sword hand of  
 Modied,

Kastes in his clere schelde, and coueres hym fulle faire,  
 Swappes of *the* swerde hande, als he by glentes, 4244

Ane ynche fro *the* elbowe, he ochede it in sondyre,  
*That* he swounnes one *the* swarthe,<sup>1</sup> and one swym fallis,  
 Thorowe bracer<sup>2</sup> of browne stele, and *the* bryghte mayles,  
 That the hylte and *the* hande appone *the* hethe liggis !

Thane fiescheliche *the* freke the ffente vpe rererys,  
 Brochis hym in with the bronde to *the* bryghte hiltys,  
 And he brawles one the bronde, and bownes to dye

and pierces him  
 with his sword

“In faye,” says *the* feye kyng, “sore me for-thynkkes  
 That euer sicke a false theefe so faire an ende haues”

Arthur declares  
 that his end is  
 too good for him

Qwene they had ffenyste *this* feghte, thane was *the* felde  
 wornene

4254

And the false folke in *the* felde feye are by-leuede !  
 Tille a fforeste they fledde, and felle in the greuys,

<sup>1</sup> MS swarthe

<sup>2</sup> MS brater

Modred's men  
are defeated and  
pursued

And fers feghtande folke folowes theme aftye,  
Howntes and hewes downe the heythene tykes,  
Mourtherys in the mowntaygnes *sir* Mordrede knyghtes,  
Thare chapyde neu<sup>e</sup> no childe, cheftayne ne *othe*r,  
Bot choppes theme downe in the chace, it chargys bot  
littyll<sup>e</sup> ! 4261

Arthur finds the  
dead bodies of his  
knights

Bot whene *sir* Arthure anone *sir* Ewayne he fyndys,  
And Errake *the* auenaut, and *othe*r grett lordes,  
He kawghte vp *sir* Cador with care at his herte,  
Sir Clegis, *sir* Clermonde, *thes* clere mene of armes,  
Sir Lothe, and *sir* Lyonelle, *sir* Lawncelott, and Lowes,  
Marrake and Meneduke, *that* myghty ware eu<sup>e</sup>r, 4267  
With langoure in the launde thare he layes theme to-  
gedire,

Lokede one theyre lighames, <sup>and</sup> with a lowde steuene,  
A<sup>H</sup>s lede *that* liste noghte lyfe and loste had his myrthis,  
Than he <sup>st</sup>etays for made, and alle his strenghe fayler,  
Lokes vpe to *the* lyfte, and alle his lyre chaunges, 4272  
Downne he sweys fulle swythe, and in a swoune fallys,  
Vpe he couenis one kneys, and kryes fulle oftene,—

He swoons for  
sorrow,

and bitterly  
grieues over his  
knights

“Kyng comly with crowne, in care am I leuyde !  
Alle my lordchipe lawe in lande es layde vndyre ! 4276  
That me has gyfene gwerdone, be grace of hym seluene,  
Mayntenynde my manhede be myghte of theire handes,  
Made me manly one molde, and mayster in erthe,  
In a tenefulle tyme this torfere was rereryde, 4280  
That for a traytoure has tynte alle my trewe lordys !  
Here rystys the riche blude of the Rownde Table,  
Rebukkede with a rebawde, and rewthe es the more !

[leaf 98]

I may helpes one hethe house be myne one, 4284  
A<sup>H</sup>s a wafulle wedowe *that* wanttes hir beryne !

Now he may  
weep and wring  
his hands, for his  
worship is gone  
for ever

I may werye and wepe, and wrynge myne handys,  
ffor my wytt and my wyrchipe awaye es for eu<sup>e</sup>r !  
Off alle lordchips I take leue to myne ende ! 4288  
Here es *the* Bretones blode broughte owt of lyfe,  
And nowe in *this* journee alle my joy endys !”

Thane relyes *the* renkes of alle *the* Rownde Table,  
 To *the* ryalle roy thay ride *tham* alle, 4292 The remnants of  
his men rally  
round him  
 Than assembles fulle sonne seuene score knyghtes,  
 In sighte to *thanne* souerayne, *that* was vnsownde leuede,  
 Than knelis the crownde kynge, and kryes one lowde,—  
 “I thanke *the*, Gode, of thy grace, *with* a gud wylle, He thanks God  
for the victory,  
and all the glory  
which he and his  
knights had won  
 That gafe vs vertue and witt to vencows *this* beryns,  
 And vs has graunted *the* gree of theis gret lordes !  
 He sent vs neuer no schame, ne schenchipe in erthe,  
 Bot euer ȝit *the* ouer-hande of alle *other* kynges 4300  
 We hafe no layseren now *these* lordys to seke,  
 for ȝone laythely ladde me lamede so sore !  
 Graythe vs to Glaschenbery, vs gaynes none *other*, He desires to be  
taken to Glaston  
bury  
 Tharewe mayryste vs *with* roo, and raunsake oure wondys  
 Of *this* deie day werke, *the* Dryghtene be louede, 4305  
 That vs has destaynede and demyd to dye in oure awene ”  
 Thane they holde at his heste hally at ones,  
 And graythes to Glasschenberye *the* gate at *the* gayneste,  
 Entres *the* Ile of Aueloyne, and Arthure he lyghttes, He enters the  
Isle of Avelon  
and is taken to a  
manor there, for  
he could go no  
further. A sur-  
geon examines  
his wounds  
 Merkes to a manere there, for myghte he no forthire  
 A surgyne <sup>1</sup> of Salerne enserches his wondes, 4311  
 The kyng sees be asaye *that* sownde bese he neuer,  
 And sone to his sekire mene he said theis wordes,—  
 “Doo calle me a confessour, *with* Criste in his armes, Arthur sends for  
a confessor  
 I wille be howselde in haste, whate happe so be-tyddys,  
 Constantyne my cosyne he salle the corowne bere, 4316 He appoints Con-  
stantine his  
kinsman, his heu-  
 Aȝs be-commyshym of kynde, ȝife Criste wille hym thole !  
 Beryne, fore my benysone, thowe berye ȝone lordys,  
 That in baytaille *with* brondez are broghte owte of lyfe,  
 And sythene merke manly to Mordrede childrene, 4320 He orders Mo-  
dred's children to  
be slain, and  
slung in waters  
 That they bee sleyghely slayne, and slongene in watyrs,  
 Latt no wykkyde wede waxe, ne wrythe one *this* erthe,  
 I warne fore thy wirchipe, wirke aȝs I bydde !  
 I fore-gyffe alle greffe, for Cristez lufe of heuene ! 4324 “If Guinever  
have well  
wrought, well her  
betide”  
 ȝife Waynor hafe wele wroghte, wele hir be-tydde ! ”

<sup>1</sup> MS susgyne

Then he saye " In  
manus and his  
spirit passes  
away

[leaf 98, back]

The barons of  
Britain bury Ar-  
thur at Glaston  
bury

Great mourning  
was made at his  
funeral

This was the end  
of Arthur of the  
blood of Hector  
and of Priamus  
of Troy

He saide *In manus* with mayne onemolde whare he ligges,  
And thus passes his speyrt, and spekes he no more !

The baronage of Bretayne thane, bechopes and othire,  
Gaythes theme to Glaschenbery with gloppynnande  
heites,

To bery thare the bolde kyng, and brynge to the erthe,  
With alle wirchiye and welthe that any wy scholde  
Throly belles thay rynge, and *Requiem* syngys, 4332  
Dosse messes and matyns with mournande notes  
Relygeous reueste in theire riche copes,

Pontyficalles and prelates in precyouse wedys,  
Dukes and dusszeperis in theire dule-cotes, 4336  
Cowntasses knelande and claspande theire handes,  
Ladys languessande and lowrlande to schewe,  
Alle was buskede in blake, birdes and othire,  
That schewede at the sepulture, with sylande terns,  
Whas neuer so sorowfulle a syghte seene in theire tyme!  
Thus endis kyng Arthure, as auctors alegges, 4342

That was of Ectores blude, the kyng sone of Troye,  
And of sir Pryamous, the prynce, praysede in erthe,  
ffro thethene<sup>1</sup> broghte the Bretons alle his bolde eldys  
In-to Bretayne the brode, as the Bruytte tellys 4346  
et c' explicit

*Hic jacet Arthurus, rex g[u]ondam rex que futurus*

Here endes Morte Arthure, writene by Robert of Thornton.

¶ Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen!

<sup>1</sup> Or thythene.

# INDEX OF NAMES.

- Absolone, 2868  
 Achinour, 1824  
 Acres, 903, *Acie*  
 Affrike, 574, Affryke, 1869, Aufrike, 2607, Awfrike, 3933, *Africa*  
 Akyne, 496, *Aix-la-Chapelle*  
 Aladuke, 1739, Alldoyke of Towelle, 1916, Alyduke, 1824  
 Alexander, 2634, Alexandere, 3408, 4160, Alexandre, 2602, *Alexander*  
 Alexandre, 2607, Alysaundyre, 572, *Alexandria*  
 Algere, 2837, 2847.  
 Alldoyke *See* Aladuke  
 Almaygne, 3596, Almayne, 45, 496, 555, 618, 2387, 3210, *Germany*  
 Alyduke *See* Aladuke  
 Alymere, 4078  
 Alysaundyre *See* Alexandere  
 Amazonnes, 584  
 Ambryganye, 572  
 Antele, 2829, 2837  
 Anyone, 42, *Amene (in France)*  
 Araby, 1175, Arraby, 576, *Arabia*  
 Argayle, 4123, *Argyle*.  
 Arthur, 26, 496, Arthure, 172, 288, 305, 470, &c  
 Askanere, 1739  
 Asye, 574, *Asia*  
 Aueloyne, Ile of, 4309, *Isle of Avelon*  
 Aufrike *See* Affrike  
 Aungers, 288  
 Awguste, 1967, *Augsburg* Lat' *Augusta Vindelicorum*  
 Babyloyne, 586, *Babylon*  
 Baldake, 586, *Bagdad*  
 Bareflete, 629, 1182, 1223, Barflete, 835, *Barfleur* Lat' *Baro-fluctum*  
 Barouns, 1908  
 Basille, 907  
 Bawdewyne, 277, Bawdwyne, 1606, 2384  
 Bayone, 38, 2379, *Bayonne*.  
 Bayous, 587  
 Bedvere, 893, 1170, Bedwar, 2384, Bedwere, 1162, 1264, 1606, 1744, 2238, 2379  
 Bedwyne, 1408 Probably a mistake for *Bedwere*.  
 Belyne, 277  
 Berade, 2384.  
 Berelle, 1605, 1775, 1914, Berille, 1264, 1771, Berylle, 1433  
 Bernarde, Mounte, 566  
 Boice, 1263, 1426, 1433, 1456,



- Boyce, 1483, 1485, 1605, Boys, 1378  
 Borghite, 1698 A mistake for *But*  
 Boyce, Boys See Boice  
 Brabane, 36, *Brabant*  
 Biemyne, 277  
 Bretayne, 2095, 2330, 2362, &c, *Bretayne*, 3519, *Bretayne* the brade, 106, B the brode, 3579, 4346, B the braddere, 55, 1699, B the more, 1018, *Britann*  
 Bretayne, 852, B the lesse, 36, B the lyttyle, 304, *Brittany*  
 Bretones, 1011, 1484, 1617, 4111, Bretons, 1403, 1407, Bretouns, 1348, Bretowns, 4104, *Britons*  
 Bretowne, *sg*, 3508  
 Brut, 1695, *Brutus*  
 Bruytte, the, 4346, *the Brute*  
 Bryane, 1606  
 Burdeux, 38, *Bordeaux*  
 Burgoyne, 36, 1018, 1241, 2383, *Burgundy*  
  
 Cadon, 247, 1718, 1724, 1777, &c, Cadore, 481, 1602, 1637, 1707, Cadors, 4188, Cadour, 259  
 Caerlyone, 61, Karelyone, 3916, Karlyone, 3512, *Caerleon*  
 Calaburne, 4230, Calburne, 4193, Calyburne, 4242, *Caliburn*, Arthur's sword  
 Came, 2380, 2385  
 Capados, 580, *Cappadocia*  
 Capatoylle, the, 2353, Capitoile, 280, Capytoile, 96, *the Capitol*  
 Cardyfe, 2498, *Cardiff*  
 Carelele, 480, 839, Carlelele, 64, 476, *Carlsruhe*  
 Castle Blanke, 1225,  
 Catrke, 482  
 Cayme, 1311, *Carm*  
 Cayous, 156, 209, 892, 1864, 1997, Kayous, 1152, 1194, 2157, &c, *Kay*, Arthur's chief butler  
 Chartis, 1619, *Chartres*  
 Chastelayne, 2952, Chasteleynne, 3028  
 Cheldrike, 2954  
 Chestyre, 3914, *Chester*  
 Childrke, 3537  
 Christofre 2390  
 Clarent, 4202, Clarente, 4193, Arthur's best sword  
 Clarybalde, 2497  
 Clarymownde, 2497 See Clere monde  
 Clegys, 1604, 1638, 1649, 1671, &c, Clegys, 1692, 3635  
 Clemente, 1828  
 Cleremonde, 1603, 4265, Clere-mownde, 3635, Clere-mownde, 1638  
 Cleremus, 1603, 1638  
 Clowdmur, 1604  
 Clyme, the close of, 1639  
 Collbrande, 2123, 2201, one of Arthur's swords, perhaps = *Caliburn*  
 Colome, 623  
 Combe, 3110, 3128, 3149, *Como*  
 Constantyne, 282, an emperour of Rome  
 Constantyne, 4316, Arthur's heir  
 Constantyne, 628, 848, Costantyne, 2373 Constantyne landez, 1187  
 Cordewa, 1866, *Cordova*  
 Cornett, 600, Cornette, 1909, *Corneto*  
 Cornewaile, 1848, 2002, 2262, 3897, Cornewale, 1791, Cornewaile, 1637, Cornewayle, 247, 1777, Kornswayle, 4054, *Cornwall*  
 Craddoke, 3511, 3517, Cradoke, 3487

- Crasyne, cowntas of, 3045  
 Creette, 200, Crete, 204, 580  
 Cüst, 136, 467, 482, &c, Cüiste, 227, 285, 296, &c, Cryste, 257, 308, 346, &c, *Christ*  
 Cyrus See Cirquytne in Glossary  
 Cyprys, 596, *Cyprus*
- Damaske, 578, *Damascus*.  
 Damyat, 578, *Damietta*  
 Danamarke, 3936, Danemarke, 3752, 3783, Danmarke, 46, *Denmark*  
 Danamarkes, 3610, Danmarkes, 3528, *Danes*  
 Danes, 3694  
 Danuby, 622, *the Danube*  
 Daud, 3416  
 Dolfinede, 2653, *Dauphiné (?)*  
 Dolfyne, 3023, Dolphyne, 2970  
 Dorsett, 4052  
 Douere, 3066  
 Duche-men, 1251, Duche-mene, 2030, 2101, 2653, 2834, *Germans*
- Ector, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343, *Hector*  
 Egypt, 576, 2200  
 Elamet, 575  
 Ermonyne, 573, *Armenia* See *The Romans of Partenay*, II 1637, 5321, 5372, &c, where it is spelt *Hermeny*  
 Ermyngalle, 1825.  
 Errake, 4075, 4161, 4263  
 Eruge, 42  
 Esexe, 1740, *Essex*  
 Estriche, 45, 3933, *Austria*  
 Ewandre, 1868, Ewandyre, 1622, Ewaynydyre, 1904  
 Ewayne, 357, 1572, 3973, 4075, &c, Ewayne fytz Henry, 1558, Ewane fytz Vryenee, 337, Ewayne fytz Vriene, 2066  
 Ewfrates, 573, *Euphrates*  
 Ewrope, 574
- Famacoste, 2761, *Famagosta* in Cyprus See *The Romans of Partenay*, I 1299, and Mr Skeat's note thereon  
 Federike, 2899  
 Feltemour, 1382  
 Feraunt, 2760, 2765, Ferawnt, 3404, Ferawnte, 2421  
 Ferrer, 2421, Ferrere, 2432  
 ff Names beginning with *ff* are entered under single *F*.  
 Flaundres, 495, Flaundiez, 34, 494, Flawndresche, 3597, *Flanders*  
 Florent, 2735, 2762, 2764, 2797, &c, Florente, 2483, 2729  
 Florent, 2232, Lucius's sword  
 Floridas, 2755, 2778, 2780, 2803, 3018, 3112, Florydas, 2490  
 Forawnt, 2490 Read *Feraunt*  
 France, 2365, Fraunce, 34, 110, 367, 435, &c  
 Fraunche-mene, 2484, *Franchmen*  
 Fres, 3864  
 Freselannd, 110, Friselande, 367, Fryselande, 2765, *Friesland*  
 Frodenike, 3864  
 Froille, 3404, Frolle, 3345, 4208, *Frollo*  
 Fryselande See *Freselannd*
- Galelé, 592, *Gahlee*  
 Galuth, 1387, 1470, 3709, Galuthe, 2558, Gawayne's sword  
 Galyrane, 3636  
 Galys londe, 3862, *Wales*.  
 Garyere, 592.  
 Gawayne, 1265, 1352, 1368, 2218,

- &c Gawaynne, 2979, 3860, Gawayne, 1463, Gaywayne, 233, Wawayne, 964, 1302, 1342, 1744, 2953, Arthur's nephew  
 Gaynour, 84, 705, Waynor, 3904, 4204, 4325, Waynore, 3550, 3575, Waynou, 233, 652, 657, 697, Arthur's wife  
 Gayous, 1346, 1385, uncle of Lucius  
 Geene, 559, 843, 863, Genne, 2897, Iene, 2889, 2909, *Genoa*  
 Gerarde, 2896  
 Gernaide, 2943, *Granada*  
 Gernesay, 3861, *Guernsey*  
 Gerone, 863  
 Geryne, 3708  
 Glamorgane, 59  
 Glamour, 3862  
 Glaschenbery, 4303, 4329, Glaschenberye, 4308, *Glastonbury*  
 Godarde, 562, 2655, Goddarde, 3104, Mount Goddarde, 497, *Mount St Gothard*  
 Godfraye, 3430  
 Golapas, 2124  
 Golyas, 3419, *Golath*  
 Gothelande, 37, Gutlande, 3763  
 Gowere, 3861  
 Grece, 37, 1000, Greke, 1463, *Greece*  
 Grekes, 602  
 Grekkes See, 594, the eastern part of the Mediterranean  
 Grisswolde, 3708  
 Gryme, 1265  
 Gutlande See Gothelande  
 Gyane, 37, *Guenne*  
  
 Hamptone, 3031, *Southampton*  
 Hardelfe, 1741, Hardolfe, 2974, 3583  
 Hawyke, 3541  
 Henawde, 35, *Hannault*  
 Henguste, 3545, *Hengist*  
 Herygalle, 1742  
 Herylle, 1742  
 Hillary, 625  
 Holaund, 35, *Holland*  
 Hors, 3545, *Horsa*  
 Howelle, 1180, 1741, 3583  
 Humbyre, 3541  
  
 Iaffe, Porte, 1520, 1544, 2039, *Jaffa, the ancient Joppa*  
 Idirous, 4078, Idrus, 4135, 4141  
 Idrus, 1439, 1510, Idrus fitz Ewayne, 1490, 1498  
 Iene See Geene  
 Iemtalle, 2112  
 Ierante, 2890  
 Ierusalem, 3415, 3433  
 Iewe, 2895  
 Ihesu, 863, *Jesus*  
 Inde, 573, *Indra*  
 Inglande, 1412, 2359, 3500, 3685, *Ynglande*, 283, 710, 724  
 Ioatalle, 2877  
 Iolyan, 2889  
 Ioneke, 1739, 1868, 1905  
 Iosephate, vale of, 2876  
 Iosue, 2605, 3414, *Joshua*  
 Irelande, 31, 2359, 3534, 3909  
 Irritayne, 575  
 Iudas, 2605, 3412, *Judas Macca-beus*  
 Iulus Cesar, 115, Iulyus Cesare, 3410  
 Iulyus, 2877  
  
 Karelyone, Karlyone See Caerlyone  
 Karolus, 3423, *Charlemagne*  
 Kayone, 2380, a mistake for

- Kayous*, caused by the word *Bayone*  
in the line before
- Kayous *See* Cayous
- Kentt, 3542
- Kornewayle *See* Cornewaile
- Lancelott, 1720, Launcelot, 2073,  
Launcelott, 368, Launcelotte, 1999,  
Lawncelot de Lake, 3638, Lawnce-  
lott, 4266
- Lebe, 1767, 1781, 1803, 1817,  
1827, 1900
- Leo, 1971
- Lettow, 605, Lettowe, 2167,  
3784, *Lithuania*
- Lewlyne, 1826
- Londone, 2418
- Lorayne, 350, 1460, 2398, &c  
Lorrayne, 429, 2418, 2531, &c
- Loth, 2081, 3637, Lothe, 4266,  
Lott, 1999
- Lottez, 382
- Lowelle, 1516.
- Lowes, 4266
- Lucerne, 3094
- Lucius, 128, 251, 383, &c Lu-  
cyus, 23, Lucius Iberius, 86
- Lumbarddye, 3108, 3594, Lum-  
bardye, 2406, 2654, 2997, 3585,  
Lumberddye, 498, Lumberdye,  
135, 350, 429, 1972, *Lombardy*
- Lusscheburghe, 2388, *Lucemburg*
- Lyonelle, 1516, 2227, 3637, 4266
- Macedone, 603
- Makabee, 3413
- Mame, 2869, 3998, 4041
- Marrake, 4220, 4267, Marruke,  
4209, Merrake, 4077
- Marschalle de Mowne, 1397
- Mawrelle of Mauncez, 1918
- Mawrene, 1918
- Mees, 2950, Meyes, 2417, *Metz*
- Melane, 3134, 3144, Meloyne,  
351, 428, *Milan*
- Meneduke, 4077, 4267, M. of  
Mentoche, 1919
- Merrake *See* Marrake
- Messie, 3998, *Messiah*.
- Meyes *See* Mees
- Mighelle, Saynt, 940, Seynt M,  
1069, Myghelle, 1166, *St Michael*
- Mighelle Mount, Seynt, 899, *St*  
*Michael's Mount*
- Modrede, 679, 3555, 3569, 3766,  
3772, 3840, Mordrede, 645, 711,  
3874, 4221, 4226, &c Mordiede  
the Malebranche, 4062, 4174
- Mownttagus, 3773
- Myghelle *See* Mighelle
- Nauerne, 44, *Navarre*
- Nazareth, 591
- Normandye, 834, Normaundye,  
44
- Norwaye, 44, 3935
- Nylus, 591, *the Nile*.
- Orcage, 572
- Orgaile, 3534, 3934, Orgayle, 30.
- Origge, 1825
- Orkenay, 30, Orekenay, 3934,  
Orkkenaye, 4163, *Orkney*
- Owghtreth, 234
- Pamphile, 588, *Pamphilia*
- Paradice, 2706, Paradyse, 2039
- Paresche, 1340, 1888, 2647,  
Parys, 1609, 1631, *Parrs*.
- Paule, 2413
- Pavy, 3141, Pavye, 568, *Pavia*
- Pawnee, 3140
- Peghttes, 4125, Peyghtes, 3533,  
*Picts*
- Perce, 588, 1520, Perse, 1377,  
1544, *Persia*.

- Peter, 2413, 2724, 2883, *Petire*, 2646, *Petyr*, 1256, the apostle  
 Peter, 1476, 1519, 1631, *Petir*, 1610, *Peture*, 1543, *Petyr*, 1419, a senator  
*Petyrsande*, 352  
*Peyghites* See *Peghttes*  
*Peyters*, 40, *Poyctiers*  
*Porte Iaffe* See *Iaffe*  
*Portyngale*, 1028, *Portugal*  
*Pounte Tremble*, 327, 352, *Pownte T*, 3140  
*Preter Iohne*, 588, *Prester John*  
*Prewsslande*, 2788, *Pruyslande*, 604, 2835, *Prussia*  
*Priamous*, 2698, 2724, 2811, 2836, 2916, *Priamus*, 2595, 2646, 2690, Gawayne's prisoner  
*Prouynce*, 40, *Provyunce*, 2647, *Provence*  
*Pruyslande* See *Prewsslande*  
*Pryamous*, 4344, *Priam*  
*Pulle*, 604, *Apulia*  
*Pys*, 352, *Pyse*, 3141, *Pisa*
- Rawlaunde*, 1607, *Rowlande*, 1745.  
*Raynalde*, 1607, 1995, *Raynalldde*, 1745  
*Raynalde of the Rodes*, 2785  
*Reone* See *Rone*  
*Reynes*, 853  
*Richeere*, 1745, *Richere*, 1607, 1995, 2790  
*Romayne*, 310, 1704, 1733, *Roman*, pl *Romaynes*, 120, 174, 221, &c *Romayne*, 1761, 1877, &c *Romayns*, 1291, 1361, &c.  
*Rome*, 23, 80, 86, 93, &c  
*Rone*, 1338, *Reone* (? *Roone*), 424, *Rhone*  
*Roodes*, 597, *Rhodes*  
*Rowlande*, 1745  
*Rowne*, 1996, *Rouen*.
- Salarne*, 2586, *Salerne*, 4311, *Salerno*  
*Sandewyche*, 447, *Sandwyche*, 490, 635, 720  
*Sarazene*, 2277, *Saracen*, pl *Sarazenes*, 624, 1846, 1911, &c *Sarazenez*, 1960, *Sarezenes*, 599, 607, *Sarzanez*, 1854, *Sarzynes*, 1626  
*Satanase*, 3812, *Satan*  
*Sayne*, 1336, *Seine*  
*Scottlande*, 32, 292  
*Segramoure*, 1871  
*Sessoynne*, 1977, 2657, 2907, *Sexone*, 1964, *Saxony*  
*Sessoynes*, 3530, *Saxons*  
*Sexone* See *Sessoynne*  
*Sextenour*, 1700, *Sextynour* of *Lyby*, 1625  
*Soone*, 2482, *Saone*  
*Sotere* See *Sutere*  
*Southampton*, 3546  
*Spanyols*, 3700, *Spaniards*  
*Spayne*, 999, 3162  
*Spolett*, 3161, *Spoletto*  
*Spruyslande*, 3162  
*Suigenale*, 3532  
*Surry*, 608, 1687, 1844, &c *Surrye*, 590, 1626, 3312, *Surylande*, 2657, *Syria*  
*Sutere*, 1627, 1910, *Sotere*, 1871-  
*Suters* (?), 501  
*Swaldye*, 57  
*Swetherwyke*, 47.  
*Swyane of Sweecy*, 2958.  
*Swynne*, 47
- Tambire*, 3902, *Tamar*  
*Tartary*, 582  
*Thebay*, 583  
*Tholus*, 39, *Toulouse*, 1567, *Toulouse*  
*Towelle*, 1916

- Tleyntis, (1) 4056  
 Troye, 887, 1696, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343  
 Troys, 1629, *Troyes*  
 Turkayne, 2408 *Read* Tuskayne  
 Turkey, 582, *Turkey*  
 Turkys, 1917, *Turks*  
 Turoyne, 39, *Touraine*  
 Turry, 234  
 Tuschayne, 431, Tuskane, 3150, Tuskayne, 328, 499, 3586, 3593, *Tuscany*  
 Valence, 41  
 Valewnce, Viscownte of, 2047  
 Valyant, 2064, V of Vylerns, 1982  
 Venyce, 204, Venyse, 2025  
 Vertennone vale, 3169  
 Viterbe, 326, 353, 2025, 2048, 3164, *Viterbo*  
 Vnwyne, 2868  
 Vryelle, 1744  
 Vryence *See* Ewayne  
 Vter, 29, Vtere, 521, 1310, 4216, Arthur's father  
 Vtere, 1904, mistake for Vtolfe (?)  
 Vtolfe, 1622, 1868  
 Vyenne, 41, *Vienne (in France)*  
 Wade, 964  
 Walchere, 2680  
 Wales, 33, 56, Walis, 2890, West Walys, 322  
 Walschelande, 334, *Wales*  
 Waltyre, 2495  
 Walyngfordhe, 4203, 4217  
 Watlyng-strette, 450, *Watling-street*  
 Wawayne *See* Gawayne  
 Waynor, Waynore, Waynour. *See* Gaynour  
 Wecharde, 2495  
 Westfale, 2826, Westuale, 2656, Westwale, 621, *Westphalia*  
 Whycher, 2678, Wychere, 2680, 4025  
 Wyghte, 334, *the Isle of Wight*  
 Wynchestre, 4011  
 Ynglande *See* Inglande.  
 Yorke, 636, 3911, *York*

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

- A, *conj* and, 2522 2797  
 A, *int* ah ' 320, 1671, 1791  
 Abaischte, *pp* abashed, 255  
 Abaiste, Abayste, *pp* cast down, 1423, 3737  
 Abbayes, *s pl* abbeys, 3403  
 Abillere, *adj comp* abler, 2635  
 Abouen, 903, 904, Abouenn, 564, Aboune, 511, Abowene, 823, Abowne, 2060, Abwene, 775, *prep and adv* above A S *abusan*  
 Accorde, *v* agree, 344, *pp* accordide, 3133  
 Accountes, *v* 3 *s* reckons, 1102, 1 *s* acounte, make account of, care for, 405, *inf* acownt, tell, 3929  
 Actone, *s* acton, 902, 3457, *pl* aketouns, 2626  
 Affraye, *s* fright, terror, 3226.  
 Affrayede, *v pret* frightened, 2804, *pp* affrayede, 2256  
 Aftire, Aftyr, Aftyre, after, 64, 82, &c  
 Agaste, *adj* aghast, afraid, 2442, 2728  
 Agayne, Agaynes, Agayne, Agayns, *prep* against, towards, 774, 1268, 2681  
 Agayne-stande, *v* resist, 3757, *pl* azayne-stondes, 3126  
 Ajournede, *pp* adjourned, put off, 340  
 Ajuggede, *pp* judged, deemed, 862, 1658, 3411, 4110  
 Ake, *s* oak, 1096 A S *ac*  
 Akere, *s* acre, 3849.  
 Aketouns See Actone  
 Alde, 13, 986, Awlde, 279, *adj* old  
 Alegges, *v pl* allege, 4342  
 Alet, *s* alette, shoulder-plate, 2565  
 Alfyne, *s* 1343, a term of reproach, it literally means the *bishop* in chess See *Promptorium Parvulorum*  
 Algarde, *s* a kind of wine, 202  
 Alkyne, Alkyns, *adj* of every kind, 928, 1730, 3244  
 Allblawsters, *s pl* crossbow-men, 2426  
 Alle-weldand See Alweldande  
 Allone, *adj* alone, only, 541, 2312  
 Allossede, *pp* renowned, esteemed, 3881  
 Alls See Als  
 Alofede Read Alosede, *pp* praised, renowned, 2418  
 Alouer, *adv* all over, 2027  
 Alowe, *v* praise, 1036, 3 *s* alowes, 396  
 Als, Alls, *conj* as, 845, 1701, 1989, 1590, also, 1194

- Alweldande, 397, Alle-weldand, 1059, *adv* all ruling, all-powerful  
 Alynnes, *s pl* aliens, 4061  
 Amange, *prep* among, 4037, *adv* at times, sometimes, 1238  
 Ame = am, 2606, 2642, &c  
 Amede, *pp* estimated, 4068  
 "Aesmer, aasmer, aemer, aumer, easmer Juger, estimer, comparer, croire, penser, être d'avis"—*Ro quefort* Lat *estimare*  
 Ancestres, Auncestres, *s pl* ancestors, 276, 521, 1310  
 And = an, if, 134, 339, 1023  
 Ane, *adv* an, a, 1079, 1148, 1661  
 Anely, Anly, *adv* only, alone, 98, 1499, 1981  
 Anentis, *prep* against, 2568  
 Anes, *adv* once, 360 *See* Ones  
 Angerde, *pp* angered, angry, 265, 1938, 1957  
 Angers, *impers v* Me angers = I am angry, 1662, 2838, 2848  
 Ankkere, *s* anchor, 3601, *pl* ankers, 740, ankys, 493  
 Anlace, *s* a sort of dagger, 1148  
 "Besides the dagger, Olfaucer, in his Canterbury Tales, mentions the anelace, which was broad bladed, but lessening from the hilt to a sharp point, and having a sharp edge on each side" Meyrick, *Critical Inquiry into Antient Armour*, vol II p 100  
 Anly *See* Anely  
 Anone, *adv* anon, soon, 2716  
 Ansuere, *v* answer, 98, 306, *pret* answard, 288  
 Ansuere, *s* answer, 1324.  
 Anter *See* Awnter  
 Anterous, *adv*. adventurous, bold, 2524  
 Apas, *adv* with measured step, 4014  
 Apone, 195, Appone, 262, Ap-ponne, 4000, *prep* upon  
 Appaïrelles, *v pl* apparel, dress, 500, *pp* appayrellede, 2461  
 Apparant, Apparaunt, *adv* apparent, 1944, 2606  
 Apparaylle, *s* apparel, 3365  
 Apperte, *adv* open, 688  
 Appertly, 1478, Appertlyche, 589, *adv* openly  
 Appone *See* Apone  
 Approches, *ref v pl* draw near, 4105  
 Ar, Are, *adv & conj* before, 254, 331, 1722  
 Arase, *v* snatch away, 4098  
 Araysede, *pp* raised, drawn up, 1677  
 Arborye, *s* trees, 3244  
 Ardant, Ardaunt, *adv* burning, 193, 1087  
 Are *See* Ar  
 Are, *conj* or, 1944  
 Areste, *v* arrest, stop, capture, 633, *pret* areste, 329, arestede, 1429  
 Areste, *s* arrest, 1456, 1473, place of meeting, 311, 548  
 Arowes, *s pl* arrows, 2105  
 Arrabyes, Arrahys, *s pl*. animals of some kind, perhaps Arabian horses, 2288, 2337  
 Arryfedede, 835, Aryefede, 600, Aryuede, 3905, *pp* come to shore  
 As armes, (F1) to arms! 2717  
 Asawte *See* Assawte  
 Asaye, 2615, Assaye, 2347, *v* try.  
 Asaye, *s* trial, examination, 4312  
 Ascente, Assente, *v* assent, 644, 1506, 1963  
 Ascryez, 1367, Askryes, 2245, *v* 3 s shouts, cries out, *pl*. ascriez, 1768  
 Asches, *v* 2 s askest, 343, 3 s askys, requires, 157, *pret* aschede, asked for, 715



- Assawte, Asawte, Asawtte, *s* assault, 1697, 3012, 3053
- Assemble, *s* assembly, 1578, 1852, 1902
- Assingnez, *v* *pl* assign, 727, *pret* assingnyde, 240
- Assoyllede, *pp* absolved, 3498
- At = to (with the infinitive), 1165
- At = that = what, 1842, 3484
- Atheliste, *adj* noblest, 1593 *AS apele*
- Attamede, *v* *pret* broached, pierced, 2175  
 "He let *atume* hys pyement tunne  
 To make his gode gestis glad"  
 Royal MS 18 A x, leaf 130, bk  
 "Attamyn a wesselle wyth drynke,  
 or abbrochyn Attamino, depleo"  
*Promptorium Parvulorum*
- At-vndere, *adv* down, 3180
- Atyre, *s* attire, 4186
- Auctors, *s* *pl* authors, 4342
- Auditoure, *s* auditor, 1673, *pl* audytours, 661
- Aughte, Awughte, *adj* eight, 278, 2627, 3188
- Aughte, *v* See Awe
- Aughtende, *adj* eighth, 462
- Auncestres See Ancestres
- Auntire, Auntyre See Awnter
- Austerene, Austeryne, *adj* stern, 306, 414, 571, &c See *Austerne* in *Priske of Conscience*, l 6181
- Auantid, *v* *pret* praised, 1594, *pp* avauntede, 2864
- Avanttwarde, 324, Avawewarde, 2051, Avawmewarde, 2024, Avawmewarde, 2829, 3168, Avawwarde, 3764, *s* vanguard
- Avawmbrace, *s* vambrace, a piece of armour for the forearm, 2568
- 'Auen aunt, *adj* becoming, graceful, 2626, 3188, 3208, 3500
- Aventaile, *s* "a moveable front to a helmet which covered the face, and through which the wearer respired or drew in the air, quæventus hauritur" (—Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under Ventaculum) 910, 2572
- Aventure, *s* adventure, chance, fortune, 642
- Avres, *v* turns towards, directs, 3164 *O Fr vrei*, turn
- Avisemente, *s* advice, counsel, 148
- Avissely, Auyssely, *adv* advisedly, prudently, 2699, 3165
- Avowe, *s* vow, 296, 308, 347
- Avowe, *v* vow, 357, *pp* avowede, 369
- Anoyeddyde, *v* *pret* quitted, 2051
- Avyede, *v* *pret* showed the way, or made their way towards, 3716  
 "Avier Monter le chemin à quelqu'un" *Roquesoit* "Avoyer, aveier, diriger, indiquer la route, mettre en chemin, en bon chemin, exciter, imiter, s'avoyer, se mettre en route, dans la bonne route, se diriger, s'occuper de quelque chose" *Burguy*
- Awe, *v* owe, 99, *pl* awes, 455, ought, *pret* aughte, owned, possessed, 29, 276, 521, &c, *pret* *subj* aughte, oughtest, 289, 'aughie,' as an impersonal verb, 1583, 1595, 3340, awghte, 3509 *Me* aughte = I ought
- Awene, *adj* own, 709, 997, 1594
- Awghtene, *adj* eighteen, 4069
- Awke, *adj* perverse, contrary, 13
- Awkewarde, Awkwarde, *adv*. awry, transversely, 2247, 2564
- Awlde See Alde
- Awncestrye, *s* ancestry, 1907
- Awntere, Auntire, Awntire, *s* adventure, chance, risk, 1905, 2617, 2244, *pl* awnters, 1967, at awntere, at random, 2543.

- Awntere, Anter, Auntie, *v* adventure, 360, 1596, 1660, 3 *s* awnters, 1498, *pl* awnters, 1596
- Awntrende, *adj* adventuring, bold, 2717
- Awntrouseste, *adj* most adventurous, 1624
- Awughte *See* Aughte
- Ayele, *s* grandfather, 2603
- Ayere, Ayre, *s* heir, 279, 283, 2634, *pl* ayers, 3146
- Ayere, Ayre, *v* go, 455, 470, 1591, 3 *s* ayerez, 617, *pl* ayres, 1329, 1 *p* ayerande, 2830
- Ayther, Aythere, Aythyre, *adj* either, each, 939, 1991, 2830
- Ay-ware, *adv* everywhere, 614
- Azoure, Azure, *s* blue, 193, 765, 3355
- Azayne, *adv* again, 2713
- Azaynes, A-zaynez, *adv* against, 786, 2117, 2791 *See* Agayne
- Azayne-stondes *See* Agayne-stande.
- Bacenett, *s* cap of steel or other metal, sometimes worn under the helm, 906, 2695, 2770, *pl* bace-netez, 1754  
 "He hutte him on þe helm on hūht,  
 In to þe Brayn þow *Bacinet* briht,  
 Thus is his seruyse zolde"  
*The Kyng of Tars* (Vernon MS, leaf 306, b)
- Bachelers, Bachellers, *s* *pl* novices in arms, 68, 567, 1424
- Bade, *v* *pret* abode, 2383
- Bagis, Bagys, *s* *pl* badges, 2303, 3730
- Baiste, *pp* downcast, afraid, 2856
- Baite, *v* feed, 2694
- Bake, *s* back, 2203, 3257
- Bakene, *pp* baked, 3166
- Bakhalfe, *s* backpart, back, 1482
- Balde, *adj* bold, 1968
- Baldly, *adv* boldly, 630
- Bale, *s* harm, grief, sorrow, 805, 3976, *adj* hurtful, 1483 A S *bealu*
- Balefulle, *adj* hurtful, 791, sorrowful, wretched, 1029, 1136
- Bale-fyre, *s* a large fire, properly a fire lighted as a signal of distress, 1048.
- Baltyrde, *v* *pret* danced about, capered, 782 *See* *Balteres*, *Alliterative Poems* (Reprint), p 102, l 459
- Banarettez *See* Banerettes
- Bandez, *s* *pl* bonds, 1485, used metaphorically for "distress," 1180
- Baneoure, *s* bearer of a banner, 3732 "Banyowre, or bannerbeiere *Verillarius, verillifer, primpulus*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*
- Banerettes, Banerettez, Banarettez, *s* *pl* knights of the higher order, 68, 567, 1403, 1424, 2855
- Banke, *s* shore (of the sea), 728, 3731, *pl* bankes, 3714
- Barayne, *adj* barren, 224
- Barbours, *s* *pl* barbers, 2331, 2577
- Barbycane, *s* outer fortification or defence, fortress at the outlet of a city, 1183, 2470
- Bare *See* Bere
- Bare, *s* boar, 3123
- Barefote, *adj* barefoot, 2309
- Bareheuedys, *s* *pl* boarheads, 177
- Bare-heuede, *adj*. bareheaded, 3630
- Bare-legyde, *adj* barelegged, 2122
- Baronage, *s* company of barons, 587, 1242.
- Barowes, *s* *pl* swine, 191. A S *beanh*
- Barrers, *s* *pl* barners, 2469.

- Basschode, *pp* cast down, 2121.  
 Bataile, 783, Batelle, 316, Batayle, 2458, Bataylle, 3107, Baytaille, 4319, *s* battle, body of troops, *pl* batailles, 1425, batailles, 4064  
 Baterde, *pp* battered, 189  
 Bathe, *conj* both, 19, 34, 352, &c  
 Bawmede, *v pret* embalmed, 2298, *pp* bawmede, 980, 4020  
 Baye, *adj* bay, brown, 918  
 Baytaille *See* Bataile  
 Baytand, *v p* baiting, 2516, baytaynde, 2671  
 Be, Bee, *prep* by, 60, 164, 174, &c  
 Be, Bee, *v be, ind pres pl* bez, 97, bene, 2850, *fut* 1 be (= shall be), 981, 2631, 4140, 2 bees, 1688, 2667, heese, 2663, 3 bees, 3976, bese, 1017, 4312, *imp pl* 2 bes, 3798, 4095, bees, 2856, 3737, bez, 222  
 Beblede, *v pret* made bloody, 2250  
 Bechene, *adj* beechen, 1713  
 Bechopes, *s pl* bishops, 4328  
 Becommys, *v* becomes, is proper for, 4317  
 Bedde, Bede, *s* bad, 758, 805, 2858  
 Bede, *adj* craving, hungry, lean, 3464 *See* *Beddy* in *Jamieson*  
 A S *biddan*, to ask  
 Bedes, *v pl* offer, 505  
 Bedgatt, *s* going to bed, 1030  
 Bee *See* Be  
 Beerynes *See* Berne  
 Bees *See* Be, *v*  
 Begynnande, *v p* beginning, 2963  
 Behalde, *v* behold, 2517, *v p* behaldande, 3107  
 Bekez, *v 3 s* bakes, warms, 1048  
 Bekende, *v. pret* committed, entrusted, 2340, 2355, bekennyde, 482  
 Beknowe, *v* acknowledge, confess, 3867  
 Bekyre, *v* contend, fight, 3679, *pl* bekys, 2425, *pret* bekerde, 2096  
 Bekyne, *s* beacon, 564  
 Belde, *v* dwell, 8, *pl* bieldez, 1242, *pret* beldytt, inhabited, occupied, 38, *pp* beyldede, occupied, 566  
 Belefedede, 1250, Beleuede, 3405, Beleufede, 2380, *pp* left  
 Beleue, *v* remain, 3583  
 Belyfe, Belyue, *adv* quickly, 1263, 2068, 2336, 3732  
 Beme, *s* beam, 3663  
 Beneyde *Read* Bendyde, *v pret* bent, 2424  
 Bente, *s* field, plain, 915, 1054, 1067  
 Benysone, *s* blessing, 4318  
 Berde, *s* beard, 1012, *pl* berdez, 1002  
 Bere, *s* bear, 775, 790, 802  
 Bere, *v* bear, 51, 615, *pret* bare, 291, 893, *pp* borne, 3738  
 Berkes, *v 3 s* barks, 1351  
 Bernakes, *s pl* barnacle geese, 189  
 Berne, 962, Beryne, 116, Berynne, 8580, Bierne, 1094, Byerne, 2202, *s* man, *pl* bernies, 255, beryns, 148, beerynes, 1050, biernez, 1483, byernez, 2022, byerns, 1391. A S. *beorn*  
 Berouene *Read* Beronene, *pp* run over with, covered, 3946, berowne, 3971  
 "On me [the cross] lay þe lambe of love,  
 I was plater, hys body above,  
 Whan flessche and veynes alle to-clove,  
 With blood I was byronne"  
 Royal MS 18 A x, leaf 128.

- See *Beronen* in *Percy's Folio MS*  
ed Hales and Furnivall, vol i p  
213, l 31, and vol iii p 63, l  
172
- Berye, *v* bury, 4318, 3 *s* beryes,  
2379, *pp* beryede, 980
- Beryelle, *s* burial, 1776, 2188
- Beiyenge, *s* burying, 2377, 4023
- Bes See Be
- Besauntez, *s pl* bezants, 3256
- Bese See Be
- Bessomes, *v* 3 *s* besoms, 1 *e*  
sweeps, 3661
- Besy, *adj* busy, 4095
- Besye, *s* business, 3630
- Beseke, *v* beseech, 3 *s* besekys,  
305, *pl* besekes, 127, *pret* be-  
soghte, besoughte, 1234, 1438,  
3137
- Bestaile, *s* beasts, cattle, 1050
- Beste, *s* beast, 107, 811
- Betakyns, *v* 3 *s* betokens, signi-  
fies, 822, 824
- Bet, *v pret* set in order, adjusted,  
lit improved, 3656 A S *bélan*
- Beteche, *v* hand over, deliver,  
commit, 1611, 3 *s* beteches, 714,  
*pret* betoke, 1889, betuke, 3190,  
4015 A S *betecan*
- Betoke See Beteche
- Betrappede, *pp* entrapped, 1630
- Betuke See Beteche
- Betwyx, *prep* betwixt, 801, 2798
- Betydde, *v* betide, 4325, 3 *s* be-  
tyddes, 3482, betyddys, 4315
- Bett, *v pret* beat, 2470, 3682
- Bettes, *v und pres pl* beat,  
2808
- Betyne, *adj* beaten, hence, adorn-  
ed with beaten gold, or other such  
material, 3631, 3646, 3945
- Beueryne = bevering, quivering,  
3630 OE *bwer*, tremble A S  
*lyftan* Or perhaps beueryne =  
beaver-coloured, compare *bewer*  
*hwed* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green*  
*Knight*, l 845
- Bewe, *v* bow, 3366
- Bewes, *s pl* boughs, 3366
- Bewells, *s pl* bowels, 2175, 2203
- Bewschers, *s pl* (?) the lower  
parts of the body, 1047 A S  
*scaru*, bowels, &c, bew = bel,  
beau, fine, perhaps
- Beyldede See Belde
- Bez See Be
- Bidde, *v* bide, remain, 4028
- Biddis, *v und pres pl* offer, 2310
- Bieldez See Belde
- Bierdez See Birde
- Bilynge, *s* probably the part of  
the ship about the *bill* or *rostrum*,  
3663 A S *bil*, bill, beak, fore-  
part of a ship (See *Bosworth*)
- Birdes, 2190, Birdez, 1029,  
Bierdez, 1052, Byrdez, 999, *s pl*  
women, ladies A S *brýd*, bride,  
wife, woman
- Birene, 2519 Mistake for  
"outene"
- Birtenede, 3972 See Brittene
- Blake, *adj* black, 775, 1090,  
4339
- Blanke, *s* horse, 1799; *pl*.  
blankes, 1860 See Blonke
- Blasons, *s pl* shields of arms,  
1860 See *Blasoun* in *Sir Gawayne*  
*and the Green Knight*, l 828
- Blawe, *v* blow, 2662
- Blawene, *pp* blown, 1286
- Blawnchede, *pp* whitened, 3039
- Ble, Blee, *s* colour, complexion,  
2576, 3332, 3558, 4213
- Blemeste, *pp* blemished, hurt,  
2578
- Blendez, *v* 3 *s* blends, is mingled,  
1799
- Blenke, *v* blench, wince, 3640,  
3735, 3 *s* blenkes, 4213, cause to  
blench, overcome, 2857.

- Bleryde, *v met* mouthed, made  
wry faces, 782  
"Deuels sal gadir about hym þan,  
And grymly gryn on hym and *blere*  
And hydus Braydes mak hym to  
fere" Hampole's *Pricke of Con-*  
*science*, l 2226
- Blethely, *adv* blithely, cheerfully,  
4147
- Blod, 4121, Blode, 175, 392,  
Blude, 3235, 4282, *s* blood
- Blode-bande, *s* blood-band, a  
bandage to stop bleeding, 2576
- Blod-hondes, *s pl* bloodhounds,  
3640
- Blody, Blodye, *adj* bloody, 793,  
3916
- Blondirs, *v 2 s* blunderest, 3975
- Blonke, *s* horse, steed, 453, *pl*  
blonkes, 615, blonkkes, 1634 A S  
*blanca, blanca*
- Blude See Blod
- Blyne, *v* cease, 1931, 2578, 3975  
A S *blinnan*
- "Blyschit, *v met* looked, 116 See  
*blusched, Alliterative Poems*, p 29,  
l 980
- Blysse, *s* joy, 1485
- Blyssyng, *s* blessing, 4103
- Bonettez, *s pl* additional pieces  
of sail, 3656 "Bonnet (*bonnette*,  
Fr), an additional part made to  
fasten with lathings to the foot of  
the sails of small vessels with one  
mast, in moderate winds It is  
exactly similar to the foot of the  
sail it is intended for They are  
commonly one-third of the depth  
of the sails they belong to" (Fal-  
coner's *Marine Dictionary*, ed Bur-  
ney)
- Borde, 79, 171, 630, Bourde, 730,  
3641, Burde, 1930, *s* board, table,  
board (of a ship)
- Bordoure, *s* border, 4211, *pl*  
bordurs, 907
- Bordyrde, *p p* bordered, 1002
- Bore, *s* boar, 188, 4214
- Borne, 2519 Perhaps a mistake  
for *berne*
- Borne, *p p* See Bere
- Bosturs, *s pl* boasters, 1393.
- Bot, Bott, Botte, *conj* but, 10,  
70, except, 516, 521, unless, 1925,  
bot if, bot 3if, bot 3ife, 356, 486,  
250, unless, *prep* without, 4070
- Bote, 1786, Botte, 1837, *s* amends,  
recompense A S *bót, bótú*
- Bothen, Bothene, both, 35, 2547,  
2691, 2997, 3716, 4151
- Botelesse, 981, 3558, Botles, 3976,  
Butelesse, 1014, *adj* without re-  
medy, cureless
- Bottes, *s pl* boats, 748
- Botures, *s pl* bitterns, 189 Pro-  
bably miswritten for *Betures*, see  
*Betoure* in John Russell's *Boke of*  
*Nurture*, ed Furnivall, ll 421, 541,  
696
- Boune, Bowne, *v* make ready,  
prepare, hasten, go, 936, 1013,  
1034, 3 *s* bowne, 3591, bounnez,  
783
- Bourde See Borde
- Bourdene, *v pl pres ind* jest,  
3122, bouredez, 3 *s pres ind* 1170
- Boure, *s* bower, 2190 A S *búr*.
- Boustous, 2175, Boustouse, 2425,  
3679, Boystous, 3762, Bustous,  
615, 775, 783, 1379, *adj* rude,  
rough, harsh, violent
- Bouxome, 2858, Bouxyme, 4147,  
*adj* obedient
- Bouxsomly, *adv* obediently, 107.
- Bowes, *v 3 s* turns, 2251, *pl*.  
bowes, go, 69, 2310
- Bowes, *s pl* shoulders, 188,  
boughs, 1711, 3247 A S *boh*,  
arm, back, shoulder, branch, bough  
(*Bosworth*)
- Bowndene, *p p* bound, 3316.
- Bowne, *v* See Boune
- Bownne, *adj* ready, 1633, 2331.

- Box, *s* stroke, blow, 1111  
 Boyes, *s pl* 2122, 2856, 3122  
 Boystous *See* Boustous  
 Brace, *v* fasten, fix, 1182, 3 *s*  
 bracez, puts on his arm, 914  
 Bracer, 4247, *s* brassart, a defence  
 for the arm, *pl* brasers, 1859  
 Biade, *adj* broad, 106, 914, 1094,  
*comp* braddere, 55, 1699  
 Bragge, *v* blow (in a trumpet), *pl*  
*pres ind* braggene, 1484, braggēs,  
 4107, *pret* braggede, 3657  
 Biaggeis, *s pl* boasters, brag-  
 garts, 1348  
 Brand, 3946, Brande, 893, 914,  
 Brannde, 2239, *s* sword A S  
*brand, brand, brand, torch, sword*  
 Brankkand, *i p* branking, *i e*  
 bridling, checking, curbing, re-  
 pressing, 1861 *See* Brank and  
*Branks in Jameson*  
 Braste *See* Briste  
 Brathely, *adv* hastily, violently,  
 fiercely, 1771, 3219  
 Braunchers, *s pl* young hawks,  
 190  
 Braundesche *See* Brawndysche  
 Brawle, Biawlle, *v* 2349, 2362,  
 3 *s* brawles, 1349  
 Brawlynge, *s* confusion, 2176  
 Brawnches, *s pl* branches, 3367  
 Brawndysche, *v* brandish, 3359,  
 3 *s* braundesche, 1056, *pret*  
 braundyschte, 782, brawndeste,  
 3657  
 Brawne, *s* boar, 1095  
 Brayd, *v* drive, thrust, dash,  
 draw, 1172, 3 *s* braydes, 2695,  
 braydez, 2069, 2073, brayedez,  
 906, *p p* braydene, cast, 3945  
 Brayde, *s* thrust, 3762  
 Brede, *s* bread, 2715  
 Brede, *s* roast meat, 79, 190,  
 1052, *pl* bredez, 1049, bredis,  
 2715 A S *bréde*  
 Brede, *s* breadth, 1224, 2011,  
 2273, 3656 A S *brédo*  
 Bredes, *v* 3 *s* breeds, 224  
 Bregaundez, *s pl* brigands, 2096  
 "These foot soldiers were clothed  
 in jackets, which were quilted, and  
 had pieces of iron within, hence  
 called brigandines. Such jackets  
 were worn in the time of Elizabeth  
 and James I by the English arch-  
 ers" Meyrick, *Glossary of Mili-  
 tary Terms*, under *Brigantia*  
 Breke, *v* break, 4146, 3 *s*  
 brekes, 3124  
 Breklesse, *adj* without breeches,  
 naked, 1048  
 Breme, *adj* fierce, 1380  
 Bremly, *adv* fiercely, 4107  
 Brene, 2253, 4212, Breny, 1482,  
*s* cuirass, *pl* brenyes, 3753, brenys,  
 1525, 1858, bryneys, 4119 *See*  
*Bryn* in the Glossary to *Havelok*,  
 ed Skeat  
 Brenyede, 316, Brynyede, 3680,  
*adj* armed with a cuirass  
 Breste, *s* breast, 2253, front of an  
 army, 1990, *pl* brestez, 191  
 Brestys *See* Briste  
 Brethe, *s* wrath, anger, 107, 117,  
 2213  
 Brethly, *adv* angrily, 3661  
 Brettene, Brettyne *See* Brittene  
 Brigge, 3124, Brygge, 2470, *s*  
 bridge  
 Briste, *v* burst, break, 214, 3 *s*  
 bristez, 805, brystez, 1135, 1482,  
*pl* bristez, 1859, brestys, 3663,  
*pret* braste, 2176, 2271, *pret*  
*pl* broustene, 2544, *p p* brustene,  
 2771, broustene, 3974, *weak pret*  
 brystedde, 1129  
 Brittene, 963, Brettyne, 3580,  
 Bryttyne, 106, 1350, *v.* cut or dash  
 in pieces, destroy completely, *pret*  
 brettene, 1487, brittenyde, 802,  
 bryttene, 2212, *p p* brettene,  
 3520, brittene, 1067, birtene,

- 3972 A S *brylluan*, *brytman*, to divide into fragments, distribute
- Broche, *v* pierce, stab, 1172, 3 *s* broches, 2202, brochez, spurs, 918, *pl* brochez, spur, 1449, *pret* brochede, broached, tapped, 2714, *pp* brochede, spitted, 1050, 1067
- Brochez, *s pl* spits, 1029
- Brode, *adj* broad, 116, 792, 1047  
*See* Brade
- Brought, 3358, Broghte, 802, *v pret* brought, *pp* broghte, 1013, 1017
- Brokbrestede, *adj* having a breast variegated, spotted or streaked with black and white, 1095 *See* Broched in *Jamieson* Compare "Brock faced, a white longitudinal mark down the face like a badger"  
*Brockett*
- Bronde, *s* sword, 2566, 3631, *pl* brondes, 2309 *See* Brand
- Brotheliche, 3640, Brothely, 1408, 1449, 1753, 1862, 2095, Brothly, 3617, *adv* hastily, violently, fiercely
- Brothy, *adj* (?) foamy, frothy, 1090
- Browddene, 2807, 4119, Browdene, 1858, *adj* woven *See* *Brawdenn* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, II 177, 580 A S *brogden*, *broden*, *pp* of *bregdan*, to weave, braid, &c The "brenyes" were probably made of small metal rings woven one into the other
- Bruchez, *s pl* brooches, 3256
- Bruschese, *v pl* brush, dash, 3680
- Brustils, *s pl* bristles, 1095.
- Bryddes, *s pl* birds, 181
- Brydille, 453, Brydylle, 2085, *s* bridle
- Brygge *See* Brigge.
- Brymly, *adv* fiercely, 117, 4214
- Bryne, 106, Brynne, 564, *v* burn, 3 *s* brynnez, 1241, *pret* brynte, 117, *pp* brynte, 3520
- Bryneys *See* Brene
- Brynyede *See* Brenyede
- Brystedde, Brystez *See* Briste
- Bryttenede, Bryttyne *See* Brittene
- Burde *See* Borde
- Burgesse, 3082, *s* burgess, citizen, *pl* burgeys, 857
- Burghes, *s* city, 1968, 2424, 3083, *pl* burghes, 1241 A S *burh*
- Burliche, 2190, Burelyche, 304, Burlyche, 586, 730, 1002, 1111, 2010, *adj* tall, stately, grand
- Burliche, *adv* grandly, 4199
- Burneschte, 906, 1011, 2123, Burneste, 2272, 3846, Burnyscht, 1113, Burnyste, 177, 1859, *pp* burnished, polished
- Bus, *impers v* behoves, 2576  
Vs bus = we must
- Buscayle, 895, Buskayle, 1634, *s* bushes
- Buschede *See* Buske, *v*
- Buschement, *s* ambush, 3124  
*See* Enbuschement
- Buskayle. *See* Buscayle
- Buske, *s* bush, wood, 453, 918, *pl* buskez, 1142
- Buske, *v* make ready, prepare, arrange, dispose, manage, hasten, proceed, go, 3 *s* buskes, 1223, 2829, buskez, 2073, *pl* buskes, 1754, buskez, 729, 1618, *pret* buskede, 1633; *imp* 2 *s* buske, 1263, *imp* 2 *pl* buskes, 2855, *pp* buskede, arrayed, dressed, 2517, 3332, 4339, buschede, furnished, 567, buske *vpe*, raise, 3072.
- Bustous *See* Boustous
- Butelesse *See* Botelesse
- Byd, Bydde, Byde, *v* ask, bid, 433, 1181, 2188, 4323, 3 *s* byddez, 1776, byddis, 2361

- Byddynge, *s* bidding, command, 1030, 1931
- Byde, *v* remain, abide, tarry, 8, 936, 1968, 3 *s* byddys, 4214, *pl* byddes, 2808, byddez, 1030, await, wait for, *imp* 2 *pl* byddez, 629
- Byerns, Byeryne *See* Berne
- Byggly, *adv* bigly, strongly, 1376
- Byhalue, *s* behalf, 1674
- Byhoues, 4135, Byhouys, 3579, Byhowys, 1715, *impers* *v* behoves
- Byhyndene, *adv* behind, 694
- Bylefede, 1538, Byleuede, 2145, 2366, Byleuefede, 3678, Byleuyde, 1557, 1885, *pp* left
- Bynne, *prep* within, 804 A S *bunnan*
- Byrdez *See* Birdes
- Byrre, *s* impetus, violence, 3661
- Byswenkez, *v* 3 *s* toils, 1128 A S *beswincan*, to labour
- Byttes, *v* 3 *s* bites, 791
- Caas, 261, 1892, Caase, 3521, Case, 2719, Cas, 3564, *s* hap, occurrence
- Cabane, 757, Kabane, 3671, *s* cabin, *pl* cabanes, 733
- Cabilles, *s* *pl* cables, 3671
- Cachede, *pp* chased, 3513
- Cachene, *v* *pl* catch, seize, take, 834, *pl* catchez, 480, *pret* caughte, 1105, kaghte, 2636, kaught, 3951, kaughte, 3378, kawghte, 3916, *pp* cawghte, 3514, kaughte, 2995
- Caffe, *s* chaff, refuse, 1064
- Caire *See* Cayre
- Cantelle, *s* corner, quarter, lump, piece, 4231 "*Chantel, Cantel*, coin, quartier, morceau, chanteau" *Burguy*
- Capitayne, 1864, Captayne, 2263, *s* captain, *pl* capytayne, 838
- Capyfte, 1589, *s* captive, prisoner, *pl* captifs, 1580
- Care, 859, Kaie, 1838, *s* sorrow
- Carefulle, *adj* unhappy, 957, sorrowful, 1777
- Caremane, *s* male, man, 957 A S *carlman*
- Carffes, *s* *pl* cuts, 2713
- Carle, *s* fellow, 1063, 1107, 1165 A S *carl*
- Carpe, 2750, Karpe, 1929, 2126, *v* talk, speak, 3 *s* carpys, 132, *pret* carpede, 143, 220 "Carpyn", or talkyn' *Fabulor, confabulor, garrulo*" *Promptor um Parvulorum*
- Carpynge, *s* talk, 1672
- Caryage, *s* luggage, 2355
- Caste, *v* cast, consider, purpose, 2 *s* castes, 261, 3 *s* castes, 1998, castis, 1769, *pret* kest, 3384, keste, 118, 280, 943, *imp* 2 *s* kaste 3406, *pp* castyne, 819, 3240
- Castelles, *s* *pl* castles, 27, 849
- Cawtelous, *adj* full of artifices, artful, cunning, sly, 4185 Fr *cauteleur*
- Cayre, 877, Caire, 1192, Kaire, 641, 1319, Kayere, 627, Kayre, 6, 444, *v* go, 3 *s* cayres, 243, *pl* cayers, 480 The original meaning was *turn* A S *cjrran, cerran*, to turn.
- Certane, 3930, Certayne, 817, *adv* certainly
- Certez, 1162, 1342, Certys, *adv* surely, certainly
- Certyfye, *v* tell, inform, 1555
- Ceté, 601, 2012, Cetee, 440, 488, *s* city, *pl* cetees, 2609, cetese, 1337
- Chaas, *s* chace, 2269
- Chalange, *v* contest, dispute, 1322, challenge, 2524, 3397, claim, 3326 "*Chalonger*, demander, con-tester, provoquer, attaquer, défendre, refuser, prohiber, blâmer, de calumnia fausse accusation, chicane" *Burguy* under *Chalonge*
- Champayne, *s* champaign, level



- country, 1226, 1362, *pl* champanyse, 1822
- Changene, *v inf* change, 1405, chawnge, 2301, *pl* changene, 2989, chaungene, 168, *pret* chaungede, 3382, chawngyd, 2701, chawngide, 2964, *i p* chawngawnde, 2523, chawngyngge, 3267
- Chapes, *s pl* metal tips of sword-sheaths, 2522 "Chape of a schethe *Sparula*" *Prompt Parv* "The chape of a sword was a badge assumed by the De la Warr family, in memorial of the part taken by Sir Roger de la Warr, at Poitiers, 1356, in the capture of John, King of France, when he took possession of the royal sword" *Way in Prompt Parv*
- Chapyde, *v pret* escaped, 4260
- Charbokle, 3326, Charebocle, 2523, 3267, *s* carbuncle
- Chare, *s* (?) 3603
- Chare, *v* (?) carry, 1886
- Charge, *v* load, burden, charge, molest, &c, *3 s* chargges, 3538, *pret* chargede, 1540, chargyde, 1406, *p p* chargede, 1549, charegyde, 1552, chargegid, 3136, chargege, 3604, chargegide, 2731
- Chargour, 1026, *s* dish, *pl* chargeours, 185
- Chantee, *s* charity, 1019, 1542
- Charottez, *s pl* chariots, 1552.
- Charpe, *adj* sharp, 3600
- Charre, *s* car, 3914
- Charry, *adj* (?) dear, cherished, 2964 *Fr cher*, dear, *chéri*, cherished
- Chasse, *s* chace, 2368
- Chasse, *v* chase, 2237
- Chastye, *v* chastise, correct, 1019, *p p* chastyede, 690
- Chasyngge-spere, *s* hunting-spear, 1823, 2955
- Chauffede, *p p* heated, excited, 2236
- Chaunce, *s* chance, hap, 1749, fortune, 2999, chawmse, 2368, *pl* chauncez, 531, 2936
- Chauncelere, 169, 1551, Chaunchelcre, 1541, *s* chancellor
- Chawffe, *v* become heated, 2301
- Chawmbyis, *s pl* chambers, 3041
- Chayere, *s* chan, seat, 3266, 3329, 3347
- Cheefe, *s* chief (Her), 2523
- Cheefe, *adj* chief, 1363, 1404
- Cheekke *See* Chekke
- Cheese *See* Chese
- Chefede *See* Cheue
- Cheftans, 18, Cheftanes, 1872, Cheftaynes, 1323, 1406, *s pl* chieftans
- Chekefulle, *adj* chockfull, 3604
- Chekke, 1539, 2956, Cheke, 3000 Cheekke, 1986, *s* check, repulse, but applied to the enemy, and therefore equivalent to *success* In line 1986 it seems to mean the force which checks the enemy
- Chekyne, *s* chicken, 4181
- Chekyrde, *p p* chequered, 3267
- Chele, *s* cold, 3391
- Chere, *s* face, countenance, 2069, 2964
- Chese, 1619, Cheese, 682, *v* choose, hence, choose a way, go towards, *3 s* cheses, 2954, chesez, 1225, *pl* chesene, 1873, *p p* chosene, 2731
- Cheualere, *s* knight, 208, 1551, *pl* cheualers, 2116
- Cheualrous, 1362, 1540, Cheuallrous, 1399, *adj* chivalrous
- Cheualrye, 18, 169, 1404, Cheuallrye, 531, *s* chivalry, knighthood, knights
- Cheuede, 1117, 1841, Chefede, 869, *p p* fared, thriven, succeeded
- Cheuede, *v pret* attained, 3329
- Cheueride, *p p* shivered, 3391.

- Chewyse, *v* save, 1750 "*Chevr*,  
venir à bout de quelque chose, sor-  
tir d'une affaire, se tirer d'embarras  
" *Buquy*
- Cheynes, *s* *pl* chains, 2522
- Chiftayne, *s* chieftain, 2732
- Childe, *s* applied to a grown per-  
son, 2952, 4260, *pl* childre, 1821,  
childre, 1025, childrene, 4078,  
childienne, 3188, childyre, 845,  
1051, childyrene, 3208
- Chillande, *i* *p* chilling, cold,  
2965
- Chippe, *s* ship, 3599, *pl* chippes,  
3546
- Chippe-burdez, *s* *pl* shipboards,  
1699
- Chis, (?) 2217
- Cho, *pron* she, 655, 659, 715,  
&c See Scho
- Chokkefulle, *adj* chockfull, 1552
- Chokkes, *v* 3 *s* (?) thrusts, 2955,  
*pp* chokkode, 3603
- Chullede, *pp* 1444 "Chulle  
To bandy about" *Hallwell*
- Churles, *adj* churlish, 4181
- Chymnés, 3041, Chympnés, 168,  
*s* *pl* brasiers, or other receptacles  
for fire, fireplaces
- Chyne, *s* chine, backbone, 3390
- Cirquytne, 3399, Cyrqwyttrye,  
2616 (wrongly printed *Cyrus*  
wyttrye), *s* pride, arrogance
- Cité, 1696, 1979, Citee, 60, *s*  
city See Ceté
- Clappyde, 956, Clappide, 1137,  
*v* *pret* smote together
- Claroune, 3563, Claryoune, 2718,  
*s* clarion, war-trumpet, *pl* clarions,  
1758
- Claspande, *i* *p* clasping, 4337
- Clasppis, *s* *pl* clasps, 909
- Clathe-sekkes, *s* *pl* cloth-sacks,  
733
- Clauer, *s* clover 3241
- Clauerande, *i* *p* clawing, 3324
- Clede, *v* *pret* clothed, 2713, *pp*  
cledde, 3334, clede, 3241, 3684,  
cleede, 217, clothed, clad
- Clefe, *v* *pret* clave, split, 2559
- Cleffe, *v* cleave, stick, cling,  
1312
- Clekes, 1865, Clekys, 1164, 2123,  
*v* 3 *s* clutches, seizes
- Clene, *adj* clean, pure, 201, 217,  
bright, fair, good, 1197, 1603
- Clenkkede, *v* *pret* clanked, 2113
- Clenliche, Clenly, Clenlyche, *adv*  
well, 216, 628, 654, 1586, entirely,  
quite, 581, 673, 850, 2125
- Clepid, *v* *pret* called, 3563  
A S *clypian*
- Cleie, *adj* clear, bright, 819, 883,  
909, illustrious, 1559, clear, free  
from obstacles, 1640
- Clerewoite, *s* 3241 Perhaps =  
A S *clæfer-wyrt*, small clover
- Clergialle, *adj* skilful, 1758
- Clergyally, *adv* cleverly, 200
- Clergye, *s* learning, 809
- Clerkis, 3444, Clerkkes, 2391, *s*,  
*pl* clerics, scholars
- Clewes, 1639, Clewez, 2019,  
Kleuys, 2396, Cloughes, 941, *s* *pl*  
cliffs
- Clewide, *v* *pret* cleaved, clung,  
3268
- Close, *v* enclose, 1165, 2003
- Close, *s* prison, 1586, enclosed  
space, enclosure, 1639, 3240
- Closse, *adj* secret, 1196
- Cloughes See Clewes
- Clowez, *s* *pl* claws, 783
- Clyfe, 883, Clyffe, 2158, *s* chff,  
*pl* cleyffez, 2019
- Clymbande, *i* *p* climbing, 3324,  
3422
- Clynges, *v* 3 *s* presses, 1865
- Coblez, *s* *pl* cables, 742

- Coferez, 733, Cofins, 2283, Cofies, 4206, *s pl* coffins, chests
- Cogge, *s* ship, 476, 756, 3634, *pl* coggez, 738 "Carret on the colde ythes cogges & other" *The Destruction of Troy*, E E T S, 1 3242
- Coldis, *v* 2 *s* makest cold, chill-est, 3518
- Coluiez, *s pl* colours, 819
- Comandez, 2392, Comaundez, 1637, Commaundez, 71, *v* 3 *s pres ind* commands, *pret* comande, 1218, comaunde, 2356, comaundy, 1602, commande, 156, 4148, *imp* comaunde, 1585
- Come, *v inf* 1584, 3 *s pres ind* comes, 1818, commes, 799, comez, 841, commez, 1439, *pl* commez, 1545, *pret* come, 80, 176, 2119, 2 *p* commande, 3468, *pp* comene, 582, 865, commyne, 1419, comyne, 987
- Come, *s* coming, 1203, 1565, 1812
- Comelyche, 1318, Comliche, 3335, Comly, 1203, 3259, Comlyche, 71, 1053, *adj* comely
- Comes, *impers v* becomes, befits, 1579
- Comforth, 830, Comforthe, 944, 1839, Comfurthe, 696, *v* comfort, strengthen, 3 *s* comfourthes, 3131
- Comforthe, *s* comfort, 3960
- Comlyh, 3047, Comlyly, 4108, *adv* in a comely manner
- Commande *See* Come
- Comone, *v* converse, 1580
- Comouns, 725, Comowns, 2353, *s pl* commons
- Compas, *s* outer part (of an enclosure), 3240, (of a wheel), 3268, 3325, compass, reach, 4222
- Compaste, *pp* surrounded, 3633
- Concelle, 259, &c *See* Counsaile
- Concelle, 243, 2395, Consayle, 1959, *s* council
- Condethe, 3148, 3483, Countyte, 475, Cundit, 414, *s* safe conduct
- Condethes, *s pl* conduits, 201
- Condycyone, *s* condition, 1511
- Confundez, *v* 3 *s* confounds, 1922, *pp* confundede, 1153
- Connygez, *s pl* comes, rabbits, 197
- Conquerid, 284, Conqueryd, 24, *v pret* won, gained, *pp* conqueryde, 402
- Consayle *See* Concelle
- Constable, *s* 1585, 1590
- Contek, Conteke, *s* strife, 2721, 3669, 4177
- Contenance, Contenaunce, *s* countenance, manner, behaviour, 123, 222, 542, 2120, 4033.
- Contié, 623, 676, Contree, 848, 1640, Countié, 223, 2304, Cowntre, 3542, *s* country, *pl* contres, 3425, contieez, 27
- Conuaye, *v* convey, 1589, 1604
- Conynge, *adj* cunning, skilful, 3202, *superl* conyngeste, 809, lonyngeste, 3177
- Cope-borde, *s* cupboard, 206
- Copes, *s pl* 4334
- Coppe, *s* cup, 2750
- Coppe-fulle, *s* cupful, 3378
- Corage, *s* heart, 536, 1725, 1922
- Corenalle *See* Coronalle
- Corkes, *s* carcase, 1091
- Corne, (?) 1786, 1837
- Cornettes, *s pl* 1758, 4108
- Cornuse, *s pl* horns, 1809 *Lat cornu*
- Coronalle, 908, 1108, 3633, Core-nalle, 3258, *v*, a kind of ring or crown round a helmet, also, part of a lady's head-dress
- Corone, 291, Coroune, 28, Corowne, 3543, Crowne, 3426, 4202, Crownne, 3352, *s* crown, *pl* corowns, 3269, crounes, 51

- Coroune, 678, Clowne, 3185, *v* crown, *pp* corounde, 142, coroune, 125, corownde, 1654, 2447, 3525, crowned, 3213, crownede, 3049, crownede, 3407
- Corroumppe, *pp* corrupt, 3478
- Cors, 1779, 2380, Corse, 1389, *s* corpse, body
- Corsaunt, *s* holy body, body of a saint, 1164. See *Corsant* in *English Gilds*, p 97, l 8, and *Corseynt*, *English Gilds*, p 188, l 1.
- Corvene See *Kerues*
- Coseri, *s* (?) 1582
- Coste, *s* coast, 834, 877, 1787
- Cosyne, *s* cousin, kinsman, 338, kinswoman, 864, *pl* cosyns, 50, 101
- Cote, 1690, 3334, Cotte, 1194, *s* coat
- Couaitte See *Couerte*
- Couatys, *s* covetousness, 1580
- Couaunde Read *Conannde*, *adj* cunning, skilful, 558
- Couched, *pp* set, 909
- Couerte, 1191, Couarte, 51, Couette, 3325, *v* covet, 2 *s* *pres* couettes, 1321, *pp* cowayte, 2397
- Couenawnte, *s* covenant, 3542
- Couent, *s* convent, 1220, 4021
- Couer, Couere, *v* recover, 859, 1246, win, 3425, 3434, 3 *s* coueres, 3644, coueris, 941, reaches, coueris *vpe*, gets up, 4274, *pret* couerde, won, 274, 280, reached, 858, couerd *vp*, got up, rose, 124, coueride, got up, 2195, *pp* couerede, won, 28, 3085
- Couere, *v* cover, 1886, 3 *s* *pres* couers, 1110, *pret* couerde, 3378, 3995, *pp* couerde, 1770, 2115, couerede, 3047, 3098
- Couerte, *adj* sheltered, 1780, secret, 1196
- Countyte See *Condethe*
- Coungé, *s* leave, 479 Fr *congé*
- Counsaille, 291, Concelle, 144, 259, 1023, *s* counsel, advice
- Counsayles, *v* 3 *s* advises, 305
- Countere, *v* encounter, 1274, 3 *s* cownterez, 1848, *pp* cownterede, 1893
- Countré See *Contré*
- Coupable, *adj* blameable, guilty, 1317
- Coupes See *Cowpe*
- Coupylde, *v* *pret* coupled, fastened, 2336
- Coursere, *s* 1388, 2166
- Courtays See *Curtais*
- Coutere, *s* elbowpiece (in armour), 2567 *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l 583
- Couthe, *v* *pret* knew, 21, Cowthe, couldst, 3340
- Cowardys, *s* cowardice, 1693, 4186
- Cowayte See *Couerte*
- Cowchide, *v* *pret* lay down (as hounds), and hence, became meek and submissive, 122
- Cowle, *s* a large tub, 1051 "Cowle, vesselle *Tina*, Cath" *Prompt Parv* In *English Gilds*, ed Toulmin Smith, pp 371, 382, *Cowle* is used for a tub, or some such vessel to measure ale with
- Cowntas, *s* countess, 3045, *pl* cowntasses, 4337
- Cowntere, *s* accountant, 1672
- Cownterez See *Countere*
- Cowpe, *s* cup, 209, *pl* cowpes, 210, 237, coupes, 3375
- Cowpez, *v* 3 *s* smites, strikes, 799, 2059, *pl* cowpenc, 2543
- Cowthe See *Couthe*
- Crachynge, *s* crashing, 3669
- Crafe, *v* crave, 1681, 3522
- Craffe, *s* skill, art, 752, 3667, *pl* craffez, 284, craftys, 24

- Craftely, 3351, Craftyly, 196, *adv* skilfully  
 Crafty, *adj* skilfully made, 211  
 Crage, *s* crag, 876  
 Cramede, *p p* ciammed, 477, 1051  
 Crasseches, *v pl pres ind* crush, 3670, *met* craschede, 2114, *ciassch* ede, 1109  
 Crauaunde, *adj* craven, 133  
 Crayers, 738, Krayers, 3666, *s pl* small vessels "And, for the Revictallyng and Refresshyng of the said Shippes with Water and other Necessaries, the said Admirall shall, over and above the said Shippes, have Two *Crayers*, the one being of the Portage of Thre Score and fyfty [<sup>p</sup>fifteen] Tonnes, wherem shall be the Master Twelve Mariners and One Boye, and the other *Crayer* shall be of the Portage of fifty five Tonnes, wherem shall be the Maister with Ten Maryners and one Boye"  
*Indentura inter Dominum Regem & Edwardum Howard Capitaneum Generalem Armata super Mare* (A D 1512) Rymer, *Federa*, tom xiii p 328, col 2  
 Craysed, *p p* broken, 2150 *Fr* *écrasé*  
 Creatoure, *s* creature, 534, 859, *pl* creatours, 4102  
 Credens, *s* credentials, 88, 3522  
 Creest, Creeste, *s* crest, 1108, 1133, 1185  
 Creette, *s* a kind of wine, 200  
 Crepers, *s pl* grapnels, 3667 (*Hallwell*)  
 Cresmede *See* Crysmede  
 Cretoyne, *s*, 197 "A sweet sauce" *Hallwell* Compare "Cretons Lard coupé menu qu'on fait frire dans la poêle" *Roquesfort*  
 Crewelle, 132, 1909, Crouelle, 118, Crowelle, 2544, 3424, Cruelle, 43, 88, *adj* cruel, fierce, angry, &c  
 Crispid, *p p* 1003  
 Cristene, Cristyne, *adj* Christian, 3429, *sb* 1187, 2786, 4112  
 Cistenly, *adv* like a Christian, 1208  
 Cristyndome, *s* Christendom, 2036  
 Cristynmesdaye, *s* Christmas-day, 70  
 Cristynmese, 64, Cristymesse, 839, Crystynmesse, 544, *s* Christmas  
 Cionycle, *s* chronicle, 3445, *pl* cionycles, 3218  
 Crose, 3428, Crosse, 3335, cross, one crosse, across, 3667  
 Crosse-dayes, *s pl* 3212  
 Crosselettes, *s pl* 3336  
 Crouelle *See* Crewelle  
 Crounes *See* Corone  
 Ciowelle *See* Crewelle  
 Crownede *See* Coroune, *v*  
 Cruelle *See* Crewelle  
 Cruschene, *v inf* crush, 1134  
 Cryande, *v p* crying, 1137  
 Crysmede, 1051, Cresmede, 1065, Krysmede, 3185, *adj* anointed with chrism  
 Crystenede, Crystnede, *p p* christened, 3337  
 Crysume, 142, Krysome, 2447, 3435, *s* chrism  
 Cukewalde, *s* cuckold, 1312  
 Cundit *See* Condethe  
 Cunvayede, *v met* convoyed, 482.  
 Cure, *s* care, 673  
 Curius, *adj* curious, 61  
 Curlues, *s pl* curlews, 196  
 Curtais, 2394, Curtaise, 209, 417, Curtays, 125, 1318, Curtayes, 481, Courtays, 21, *adj* courteous  
 Curtaisie, *s* courtesy, 1274, 1681  
 Cury, *s* cookery, 1063

- Dagges, *v pl* pierce, 2102, *i p* daggaide, 3749
- Dagswaynes, *s pl* garments "of irize, or some material with long thrums like a carpet," 3609 See *Daggysweyne* and notes thereon in *Promptorium Parvulorum*
- Dalte, Daltene See Dele
- Damesels, *s pl* young ladies, 3044
- Dampnade, *pp* damned, condemned, 3277, 3299
- Danke, Dannke, *adj* dank, damp, 313, 3750
- Dare, *v* lie hid, lie still, 4007, 3 *s* dares, 3225 "Daiyn', or drowpyn', or prively to be hydde *Latito, lateo, Cath*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*
- Darielles, *s pl* a kind of dish, 199 See the recipe *For darials* in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed Morris, p 38
- Dauncesyng, *s* dancing, 2030
- Daugere, Dawngere, *s* power, 579, 3067, danger, 1935, 2935
- Daweyng, *s* dawn, daybreak, 1601
- Dawez, *s pl* days, done of dawez, killed, 2056
- Daynteez, *s pl* dainties, 199
- Daynteuous, *adj* dainty, 4196
- Daynttehely, *adv* daintily, 723
- Debles, 2934
- Dede, *s* deed, *pl* dedes, 48, dedys, 13
- Dede, *adj* dead, 975, 1722
- Dede, *s* death, 1253, 1935
- Dede-thrawe, *s* death-pang, 1150
- Deesse, *s* dais, 218
- Defadide, *pp* faded, 3304
- Defawte, *s* default, 2939
- Defawtes, *v pl* are wanting, fail, 2928
- Deffuse, *s* prohibition, 256 Compare "Defaux, deffais, deffois, deiois Lieux défendus, où il n'est pas permis de pêcher ni de chasser, empêchement, défense" *Roquesfort* But it is more than probable that we ought to read "deff[e]nse" = forbidding, prohibition
- Degré, *s* degree, 84
- Dele, *v* deal, 1278, *pret* delte, 49, 3088, *pret pl* daltene, 2101, dalte, 3693, 3749, *pp* delte, 1216, 1277, 1564
- Delygens, *s* diligence, 1934
- Delytte, *s* delight, 1970
- Delyuerede, *pp* set free, 1688, 2081
- Demenys, *v* 3 *s* leads, 1988, *pl* demenys, 4076 O Fr *demenier*
- Demyd, Demyde, *pp* deemed, judged, 219, 1564, doomed, 4158
- Depayntide, *pp* depicted, 3355
- Depez, *s pl* deeps, 750
- Depnesse, *s* depth, 746
- Dere, *v* hurt, injure, 1783, 3248, 3611, 4200, 3 *s* derys, 2099 A S. *derian*
- Dere, *adj* dear, 974, 1216
- Derefulle, *adj* 4053 Qu for *derffulle*, full of pain or care Compare *derf*, hardship, affliction, pain, in *Stratmann*.
- Dereliche, 3379, Derely, 1277, *adv* dearly
- Dereworthily, *adv* precious, 3251
- Derfe, *adj* hard, strong, severe, 312, 332, 811, 2052, 2102, 2652
- Derflyche, *adv* severely, 3277
- Derke, *adj* dark, 754
- Derlynge, *s* darling, 4196
- Derygese, *s pl* dirges, 4017
- Despyne, 183 See Porke despyne

- Destanye, 3436, 3779, Desteny, 1563, *s* destiny  
 Destaynede, *pp* destined, 664, 4090, 4153, 4157, 4306  
 Destruede, *pp* destroyed, 1181  
 Deuer, *s* duty, 1940  
 Devisede, *v pret* divided, 3527  
 Deuorande, *i p* devouring, 2054  
 Deuotly, 296, Devottly, 347, *adv* devoutly  
 Devyse, *v* divide, 2400, *pret* deysede, 3033  
 Dewly, *adv* duly, 4006  
 Deworyde, *pp* devoured, 851  
 Deynttely, *adv* daintily, 2643  
 Diamawndis, *s pl* diamonds, 3297  
 Dictour, *s* spokesman, 712  
 Dighte *See* Dyghte  
 Dischayte, *s* deceit, 3789  
 Discouerours, *s pl* scouts, spies, 3117  
 Diskoueres, *v ind pres pl* search, 3119, *imp pl* 2 discoueres, 1641  
 Disseuere, *v* separate, 1575, 3 *s* disseuerer, 1978, *pret* disseueride, 3529  
 Disspite, *s* spite, 3163  
 Disspysede, *pp* despised, 269  
 Dogge-son, *s* dog-son, 1072, 1723  
 Dole, 3067, 3299, 3885, Dule, 256, 704, 2777, *s* sorrow  
 Dolefulle, *adv* sorrowful, 2054  
 Dolphyne, *s* 2054  
 Doluene, *pp* burned, 975  
 Domesdaye, *s* day of judgment, 1278, 3442  
 Doo, *v* do, 1934, 2322, 2 *s pres ind* dosse, 1954, *pl pres ind* dosse, 4333, *pp* donne, 1940  
 Doubbyd, 48, Doubbyde, 3613, *v pret* dubbed  
 Douce, *adv* sweet, pleasant, 1251  
 Doughttily, *adv* valiantly, 1939  
 Doughty, 20, Doughtty, 1738, 2777, Doughtty, 3798, *adv* valiant, *superl* doughtyeste, 219  
 Doughtynes, 1563, Doughtynesse, 3884, *s* valour  
 Dout, *v* doubt, 3061  
 Dowbille, *adv* double, 2834  
 Dowblede, *pp* doubled, 3609  
 Dowblettez, *s pl* doublets, 2625  
 Dowcherys *See* Ducherye  
 Doweie, *s* dowry, 3089  
 Downkyng, *s* moisture, 3248  
 Dowte, Dowtte, *s* doubt, 2043, fear, 3225  
 Dowtte, *v* fear, 312  
 Dowttouse, *adv* dreadful, terrible, 3967  
 Drafe *See* Dryffes  
 Dragges, *s pl* drags, 3615  
 Dragouns, *s pl* dragons, 1252  
 Drawe-bridg, *s* drawbridge, 2474  
 Drawes, *v* 3 *s* draws, proceeds, 1251, *pl* drawene, 3615, *pp* drawene, 3924  
 Dreche, *v* tarry, delay, abide, 1504, 3 *s* dreches, 2940, 4052, *pl* dreches, 1254, 2154, *pret* drecchede, 754  
 Drechede, *pp* troubled, harassed, 811  
 "Ac sathanas þe frecche  
 Þe saule wule drecche,  
 Hwan he agult habbeþ"  
*Jesus Coll. MS 29, leaf 249*  
 Drede, *v* dread, fear, 829, 2235, *pret* dredde, 20, *pp* dredde, 3298  
 Drede, *s* dread, fear, 46, 754  
 Dredlesse, Dredlez, *adv* without doubt, certainly, 1504, 2043, 4053  
 Drefene *See* Dryffes  
 Dreghe, *s* duration, continuance, 2915

- Dreghe, one, *adv* aside, back, 786, 787, 3968, 4219
- Dreghe, *v* suffer, endure, 3276, 3437
- Dreghely, *adv* enduringly, continually, 2028
- Dremyd, *impers v pret* 760  
Hym dremyd = he dreamed
- Dienschene, *v inf* drown, 761
- Drerely, Drerily, *adv* drearily, 2154, 2969
- Dresce, 550, Dresse, 1072, 2042, 2401, *v* direct, arrange, adjust, dispose, prepare, array, 3 *s* dresses, 2026, dresse, 2833, *pl* diesses, 2473, *pret* dressede, 786, 1055, dresside, 579, diussede, 2052, dryssede, 46, *pp* dresside, 1252, drissid, 218, dresses *vp* = rears
- Dreuene, Drife *See* Dryffes
- Drightene, 4008, Dryghttene, 1278, Dryghttyne, 3799, *s* the Lord, *gen* Dryghtyns, 664, Dryghtyne, 1564 *AS Drihten*
- Diussede *See* Dresce
- Dromondaries, *s pl* dromedaries, 2286
- Dromowndes, *s pl* swift ships, 3615 "Dromon, diomont Gondole, vaisseau de guerre" *Roguefort* "Dromones, Naves cursoriæ, expediti cursus navigia" *Ducange*
- Droupe, *v* lie hid, lie still, 4007 *See* Dare
- Drowghte, *s* dryness, 3249
- Drowppande, *i p* falling, 4053
- Drye, *v* suffer, 704, 1546, 1632
- Dryffes, *v pl* drive, rush, 2757, *pret* drafe, 787, drife, 3276, *pret pl* dreuene, 2914, *i p* dryfande, 761, 816, *pp* drefene, 3224
- Dryghttene *See* Drightene
- Drynchene, *v inf* to drown, 816
- Drynkle, *adj* drinkless, 4172
- Drynkyne, *v pl* drink, 2028
- Dryssede *See* Diesce
- Dubbyde, *p p* adcrned, 3609
- Ducherye, *s* duchy, 2400, 2937, *pl* ducherés, 1728, ducheryes, 3614, dowcherys, 49
- Duchez, *s* duchess, 852, 974, 3044
- Duelle, *v* dwell, tarry, abide, 3067, *pret* duelledede, 3321, duellyde, 219, *i p* duelland, 3443, *pp* duellyde, 1200
- Dukkes, Dukkez, *s pl* dukes, 723, 2029
- Dule *See* Dole
- Dule-cotes, *s pl* mourning garments, 4336
- Dusperes, 66, 1254, Duspers, 145, Dusseperez, 2029, Duzseperez, 723, Duszepers, 3751, Duszepers, 4336, *s pl* peers, lit twelve peers (Fr douze pairs) Dussepere, *sg* one of such peers, 2329, 2642
- Duttez *Read* Dinttoz, *s pl* strokes, 787
- Dyaperde, *adj* 3251
- Dyghte, *v* order, arrange, dispose, 1253, 1 *s* dyghttes, 2625, *pret* dyghte, 2970, *pp* dyghte, sent, 3066, dressed, 3251, dighte, adorned, 3353
- Dyked, *pp* buried, 975
- Dyme, *adj* dim, 1723
- Dyne, *s* din, noise, 2031
- Dynned, *v pret* sounded, resounded, 2031
- Dynnynge, *s* noise, 2030
- Dynt, 1073, Dynte, 312, 1118, *s* stroke, blow, *pl* dynttez, 1127, dynttys, 332
- Dysfegoures, *v 3 s* disfigures, 2769
- Dyspens, *s* spending, 538
- Dyssauryde, *pp* deceived, 683
- Dyuerse, *adj* divers, various, 49, 1935



- Dyuysyde, *v pret* divided, distributed, 49, 1389
- Efte, *adv* again, 470, 529, 2349  
A S *eff*
- Egerly, 1125, 1148, 1411, 1591,  
Egyrly, 1499, *adv* sharply, fiercely
- Egge, 2567, 2958, Eghge, 4194,  
s edge A S *ecg*
- Eghelynge, *adv* edgewise, 3675
- Eghene, 3790, Eghne, 116, 358,  
Eughe, 1920, Eyghene, 3985,  
Eyghne, 1083, 4044, Eyne, 3282,  
s *pl* eyes A S *edge*, *pl eāgan*
- Eghge See Egge
- Egle, *s* eagle, 2067, 2245
- Egee, *adj* sharp, eager, 507
- Eke, *conj* also, 44, 572.
- Ekkene, *v inf.* increase, 2009,  
3 *s pres ind* ekys, 3965
- Elagere, 2977, is certainly mis-  
written The alliteration requires  
*sl*, perhaps we ought to read  
*sleyghte*, skill, dexterity
- Eldare, *adj comp* older, 4151
- Elde, *s* age, 301, old age, 4220  
A S *gldo*
- Elders, Eldyrs, *s pl* ancients, 13,  
ancestors, 99, 272, 293
- Elfaydes, *s pl* animals of some  
kind, 2288
- Elles, *adv* else, 1191, 1209, 2020
- Emange, *prep* among, 375 1917,  
2060 See Amange
- Eme, *s* uncle, 1347 A S *edm.*
- Enamelde, 2565, 3355, Enamel-  
ede, 2027, *pp* enamelled
- Enangylles, *v 3 s* en-angles, 1 *e*  
surrounds by troops formed in an  
angular figure(?), 3781 Comp  
en circles
- Enarmede, *pp* 910
- Enbraces, *v pl* put on the arm,  
4111, enbrassez, 1753, *pp.* en-  
brassed, 2459, 2518
- Enbuschement, *s* ambush, 1407,  
3115
- Enbusches, *v 3 s pres ind* sets  
in ambush, 1981, *pp* enbuschede,  
1712, enbuschide, 1403, ambushed
- Enclesside Read Enclosedc,  
enclosed, 2396
- Enclined, 479, Enclinede, 1706,  
*v pret* bowed
- Enclines, *s pl* bows, 83
- Enclosez, *v 3 s* 1134, *pp* en-  
closede, 4206, enclosyde, 3238
- Encontre, 1320, 1787, Encount-  
ire, 3491, Encownteie, 4180, *v*  
encounter, *pl* encounters, 2153,  
*pret* encontrede, 1185
- Encorowmentes, *s pl* corona-  
tions, 4197
- Encroche, *v seive*, obtain, 3426,  
3 *v* encrochez, 1213, *pret* en-  
crochede, 2036, *pp* encrochede,  
3525
- Encroyssede, *v met* crossed,  
4112
- Endente, 3297, Endenttyd, 2052,  
*pp* endented (Her)
- Endittede, *v pret* indited, com-  
posed, 3120
- Endordide, *pp* gilt, 199
- Enewe, 2657, Enowe, 504, *adv*  
enough
- Enfeblesches, *v pl pres* become  
weak, 2484
- Enflureschit, *pp* flowered, 198
- Enforce, *v* exert, enforce 30w,  
endeavour, 225, enforssse, strength-  
en, reinforce, 364
- Engenderde, *pp* begotten, 843
- Engendure, *s* begetting, 3743
- Engeynes See Engynes
- Englaymez, 1131, Englaymous,  
3684, *v pl* render slimy "Gley-  
myn", or yngleymyn' *Visco, in visco*  
*Promptorium Parvulorum*
- Engowschede, *pp* swollen, in-

- flated, 2053 "Engousser Enfler, grossir" *Roquefort*
- Engrelede, *pp* engialed (Her), 4182
- Engynes, 2481, 3036, Engeynes, 2423, *s pl* engines
- Engyste, *v* assign lodgings, 445 "Gister, giter Assigner un gîte" *Roquefort*
- Enhorilde, *pp* surrounded, 3244 See *Enourled* in Alliterative Poems (Reprint), B 19 and Glossary
- Enis See Eynes
- Enjoynes, 2897, Enjoynys, 4109, *v pl* join in battle, *pret* enjoynede, 2087
- Enkerly, *adv* ardently, eagerly, 507, 2066, 2222, 2839
- Enmy, Enmye, *s* enemy, foe, 519, 642, 1952, *pl* enmyse, 1205, 1240
- Ennelled, *pp* onameled, 1294
- Ennoyntede, 50, Ennoynttyde, 101, Enoyntede, 142, Enoynttede, 544, 2447, *pp* anointed
- Enowe, *adv* enough, 504
- Enpeyrede, *pp* impaired, damaged, 474
- Enpoyson, *s* poison, 213
- Ensege, 441, Ensegge, 1337, *v* besiege, 3 *s* enseggez, 623, *pp* ensegede, 1696
- Enserchede, 3942 Read Enserclede, encircled
- Enserches, *v* 3 *s* searches, examines, 4311, *pl* enserches, 2466
- Ensure, *v* assure, 1689, 2324, 3734
- Entamede, *v pret* cut, wounded, 2203, *pp* 1160, 2708 "Entamer, entamer, trancher, blesser, léser, enlever l'intégrité" *Burguy*
- Entayllide, *pp* entailed, 3542
- Entire, *v* enter, 1967, *ind pres* 3 *s* enteres, 2007, 2387, *pl* entres, 4309, *pret* enteride, 2805, *pp* enteride, 3448, entrede, 4069, entyrde, 1691
- Enverounes, *v pl* environ, surround, 4124, *pret* enuierounde, went round or about, 2051, 2094, *pp* enuierownde, surrounded, 3242
- Enueryde, *pp* (?) 1694
- Enuyous, *adv* 2047
- Enys See Eynes
- Er, *v pl* are, 166
- Erbeis, *s pl* gardens, 3245
- Eicheuesques, *s pl* archbishops, 67
- Ere, *v pl* are, 1538, 1582, 2547
- Ere, *adv* before, 1840
- Erle, *s* earl, 1659, *pl* erlez, 1904, elles, 3528, 3933
- Erledoms, *s pl* earldoms, 42
- Erles, *s pl* earnest, deposit, 2687
- Erne, *s pl* ears, 1086
- Ernestly, *adv* 2838, 2903
- Erawnte, *adv* arrant, 2895
- Erthe, *s* earth, 109, 161
- Erthely, *adv* earthly, 1664, 4169
- Es, *v* 3 *s* is, 16, 88, 89, *pl* es (= are), 1666, 3448
- Eschape, *v* escape, 1020, 2957, *pret* eschappede, 1881, eschappide, 2367, *pp* eschapede, 1117, 3576
- Escheffe, *v* 2301
- Escheue, *v* attain, 3347, *pret* escheuede, 3000, eschewede, fell out well, 2956, eschewede, met with good fortune, 1620, *pp* escheuyde, 3021, eschewede, 1539, 3027
- Eschewes, *v* 3 *s* draws back, retreats, 1116, *pret* eschewede, 1881, *imp* 2 *pl* eschewes, 1750 "Eschiver, eskiver, escheveur, éviter, fuir, esquiver" *Burguy*
- Ese, *s* ease, 3208
- Este, *adv* east, 1740, 3210
- Esterne, 1006, Estyre, 554, Easter

- Etene, *pp* eaten, 2716.  
 Ethenys, 4163, Ethyns, 4122, *s*  
*pl* giants. See *Elayn in Sir Ga-*  
*wayne and the Green Knight*, II 110,  
 723 A S *coln*  
 Ettylle, *v* purpose, 554, 3 *s*  
 ettelles, 520, etles, 3077  
 Euene, 2073, Euenne, 4055,  
 Euyne, 78, Evyne, 3596, Ewynne,  
 3597, Ewene, 762, Ewyne, 618,  
 1122, Ewynne, 2961, *adv.* even,  
 straight, right, just  
 Euensange, 894, Euesange, 900,  
*s* evensong, vespers  
 Eueriche a, 2037, Euer-ilk a, 212,  
*adj* every  
 Euylle, *adv* ill, 1117  
 Ewene. See Euene  
 Ewyne, *s.* evening, eve, 1006,  
 1788.  
 Ewyno, Ewynne. See Euene  
 Ewyre, *adv* ever, 8  
 Eye-liddis, *s* *pl* eyelids, 3952.  
 Eyghene, Eyghne, Eyne. See  
 Eghene  
 Eynes, 1283, 2308, Eynoz, 1760,  
 Eyns, 2516, Eynys, 1879, Eynyes,  
 2275, Enis, 2886, 3376, Enys, 3466,  
*s. pl* narrow passages, passes A S  
*enge*, narrow, Germ *enge*, a narrow  
 passage  
 Faa-mene, *s* *pl* foemen, 303  
 Fadire, 3432, Fadyr, 112, Fadyre,  
 1169, *s* father  
 Fadome, *s* fathom, 1103  
 Faees, *s* *pl* foes, 403  
 Faghte. See Feghte  
 Faire, *adv* well, 1110, 3247  
 Fairly, *adv* nicely, 954  
 Faith, *s* 1155  
 Faithely, Faythely, *adv* assured-  
 ly, 3864, 4031  
 Fakene, *v* *pl* coil, 742 "Fake,  
 one of the circles, or windings, of a  
 cable, or hawser, as it lies disposed  
 in the coil. The fakes are  
 greater or smaller in proportion to  
 the extent of space which a cable is  
 allowed to occupy where it lies"  
 Falconer's *Marine Dictionary*, ed  
 Bunney. See *fak*, a fold (*Jamieson*)  
 Falle, *r* betide, 1006, 3 *s* fallies,  
 belongs, 2480.  
 Falow, *adj* pale, 1402  
 Falowede, *pp* turned pale, 3954  
 Fals, *adj* false, 1307  
 Falsede, 3918, Falssede, 2860, *s*  
 falsehood, error  
 Falteredre, *r.* *met* quivered, 1092  
 Fande. See Fynde  
 Fande, 557, 867, 984, Fannde,  
 656, *v* endeavour. See Fonde  
 Fannge, *r* seize, take, receive,  
 425, *ind* *mes* 3 *s* fangcz, 1005,  
 1249. See Fongene  
 Fare, *r* go, 3581, *ind* *mes* 3 *s*  
 fares, proceeds, behaves, 788.  
 Fare, *s.* journey, course, 393  
 Fare-waye, *s* course, 1357  
 Farlande, *s.* foreland, 880, 984,  
 1188  
 Farly. See Ferly.  
 Faucetez, *s* *pl* taps, 205  
 Faughte, Faughtite, Fawghte  
 See Feghte  
 Fawcone, 788, Fawkone, 4003, *s*  
 falcon, *pl* fawcouns, 925  
 Fawe, *adj* variegated, particolour-  
 ed, 747 A S *fah*.  
 Fawnelle, 2765. Read Fawuelle,  
*s* a horse of a yellowish chesnut  
 colour "Fauvel, fauvau, fauvelle  
 De couleur rousse, fauve, tirant sur  
 le jaune, *fluvor, fulvus*" *Roquesfort*  
 Fawntkyne, 2440, 2736, *s* little  
 child, baby, *pl* fawntekyns, 845  
 Fawte, *s* lack, 160, fault, 2737  
 Fax, *s* hair, 1078 A S *feax*

- Fay, *adj* fated to die, dead, 394, 438, 971, 3828, fey, 121, 517, feye, 2847
- Fay, Faye, *s* faith, 2842, 2860, 3073
- Fayfully, *adv* faithfully, 1715
- Fayled, 3308, looks like a mistake through confounding this line with the next, qu faldede, folded
- Fayne, *adj* glad, 1160
- Faythefully, *adv* 1345, 1735, 1913
- Faythely *See* Faithely
- Feble, *adj* weak, bad, 226, 2929
- Fecchede, *v pret* fetched, 169, *pp* techede, 111, fechyde, 437
- Feedde, *pp* fed, 2492
- Feelde *See* Felde
- Feemene, *s pl* herdmen, keepers of cattle, 2488 A S *feoh*, cattle
- Feghte, 367, 1715, Fyghte, 1345, 1735, *v* fight, 3 *s* feghtys, 789, fyghttez, 2091, *pl* feghttes, 1495, feghttez, 2163, feghttene, 2555, *pret* faghte, 1174, faughte, 2164, faughtte, 1898, fawghte, 2799, *i p* feghtande, 4257, fyghtande, 4066, 4121, *pp* foghtene, 3019, foughtene, 1535, foughttene, 2365
- Feghte, *s* fight, 4254
- Fegue, *s* figure, shape, 781, 3301
- Fekulle, *adj* false 2860
- Felde, 972, 985, Feelde, 1432, *s* field
- Fele, *adj* many, 845, 1247, 1496
- Fele, *v* hide, conceal, 3237 *See* *felen* in *Stratmann* ON *fela*, M Goth *filhan*
- Fele, *v* feel, *pret* felede, 1874
- Feletez, 1158, Felettes, 2174, 4237, *s pl* illets
- Felwes, *v pl* follow, 2758
- Feleyghes, *s pl* felly, circumference of a wheel, 3308 A S *felge*
- Felle, *s* skin, 1081 A S *fell*
- Felle, *s* mountain, 2489, 2509
- Felle, *v* fell, 1139, 3 *s* fellez, 1247, *pp* fellide, 1851, fellde, 2376
- Felle, *adj* fierce, cruel, severe, 1401, 2769
- Felly, *adv* fiercely, 2141
- Felowez, *s pl* fellows, companions, 1381
- Felschene, *v inf* (?) renovate, 1975 Halliwell has "*Felsh* To renovate a hat"
- Fende, *s* fiend, devil, 871, 954, *pl* fendez, 843
- Fente, *s* (?) 4249
- Fenyste, *pp* finished, 4254
- Ferant, 2259, Feraunte, 1811, 2140, Ferawnt, 2451, *adj* seemly
- Fercostez, *s pl* ships of some kind, 743 "Farkost, *Navis*" *Felshus*, under the word *Kost* *See* *Farcost* and *Fercost* in *Jamieson*
- Ferde, *pp* afraid, 403, 526, 3227, *s* fear, 1875, 3069
- Ferdnesse, *s* fear, 121, 2258
- Fere, *s* fear, 3918
- Fere, *s* companion, *pl* feres, 1608, ferez, 1789, feris, 1578, ferys, 2126 A S *gefera*
- Fere, 1232 *See* Ferre
- Fere, *adj* sound, unhurt, 2796, 3017
- Ferke, *v* move, go, 984, 1037, ferkke, 4152, 3 *s* ferkez, 933, 949, *inf* ferkene, 3907, *i p* ferland, 1452, ferkande, 2452
- Ferly, 2842, Ferlyche, 925, *adj* strange
- Ferly, 2440, 2947, Farly, 2485, *s* strange thing, wonder
- Fermes, 425, Fermez, 1005, *s pl* rents, tribute
- Fermysonne, *s* (?) some kind of sauce, 180
- Ferre, *adj* far, distant, 3547, fere,

- 1232, *be ferre* = *by far*, 11176, *comp ferrere*, further, 1190, 3063, 4237, *superl ferreste*, furthest, 2711
- Ferreis, *s* a kind of wine, 2711
- Ferrours, 2752 *Reul Fomours*, foragers
- Ferrone, *adj* far, foreign, 3578, *o ferrone* = *afar*, 856, 931, 2100
- Fers, 2161, Ferse, 1451, 1537, *adj* fierce
- Fersely, 1115, 3402, Fer-ly, 1118, *adv* fiercely
- Fersenese, *s* fierceness, 3826
- Ferthe, *adj* fourth, 3412
- Ferthynges, *s pl* round spots, 3472
- Feryne, *adj* far, foreign, 3711
- Ferynne, *s* fern, 1875
- Ferys *See* Fore
- Fesantcz, 925, Fesaunter, 198, *s pl* pheasants
- Fesode, *pp* worried, 2842
- Feste, *adj* fast, 2142
- Festenesse, *v 3 s* fastens, 1118, *pl* festenez, 934
- Fetche, *v* 1188.
- Feteled, *pp* fettled, set in order, 2149
- Fethers, *s pl* feathers, 2098.
- Fette, *v* fetch, 557
- Fettede, *pp* fitted, ordered, arrayed, 4067 *See* Fitt
- Feuerzere, *s* February, 436
- Fewle, *s* fowl, bird, 2071, *pl* feulez, 926
- Fewtee, *s* fealty, 112
- Fewtere, 1791, Fewtire, 1769, Fewtyre, 1366, *s* rest for a lance
- Fewters, *v 3 s* lays in rest, 3775, *pp* fewterde, 1711, fewtrede, 1756, with spears in rest
- Fey *See* Fay
- Feyede, *v met* cleansed, wiped, 1114
- Feyne, (i) foin, 1734
- Feyne = fine, *v* cease, 1147
- Feyne, *v* feign, 1913
- Feynte, *adj* faint, 1874
- Feyntly, *adv* faintly, 1734
- ff Words beginning with *ff* are entered under single *f*
- Fichene, *v pl* fix, pierce, 2098, *met* fichede, 4239
- Fit, *adj* five, 1756
- Fifte, *adj* fifth, 3306
- Fillez, 1402, Fillis, 1038, *v 3 s* fills, *pp* fillede, satisfied, 1032
- Filsmez, *v 3 s* lurks, 881 *Compare* "Fylskni, *Latibulum*" *Verelius*
- Filterede, 1078, 2149, Filtyrde, 780, *pp* matted, mixed
- Futhe, *s* wood, 1708, 2144
- Fische-halle, *adj* sound as a fish, 2709.
- Fitt, *v* fit, set in order, array, 2139, *3 s* fittes, 1989, fittcz, 1755, 2072, *pp* fittyde, 2455
- Flammande, *v p* flaming, resplendent, 198
- Flappes, *v* strikes, 2781
- Flawez, 773, Flavcs, 2556, *s pl* blasts, gusts.
- Flawmande, *v p* flaming, 945, 1975, flashing, 1365, 1494
- Flawmez, *v 3 s* flames, 1037, *pl* flawmes, 2556
- Flawnke, *s* flank, 1158, 2174, *pl* flawnkkes, 2100
- Flay, *v* frighten, terrify, 2779, *pp* flayed, 2441
- Flayre, *s* flame, 772
- Flede *See* Flee
- Flee, *v* 2021, *pret.* fleede, 494, 1432, 2729, fiede, 3236, *pp* fiede, 2488

- Fleete, *v* float, 803, *pret* fletyde, 3602  
 Flemede, 2738, Flemyde, 1155, *pp* banished  
 Flemesche, *adj* Flemish, 743  
 Flenges, *v* 3 *s* flings, 2762  
 Fleryande, *i p* gibing, scoffing, 1038, 2778 *Sc* *fleer*  
 Flesche, *s* 1160, 2099  
 Fleschez, *v pl* flit about, 926  
 Flete, *s* fleet, 1189  
 Fleterede, *pp* (?) fitted for flight, 2097  
 Flethe, *s* (?) 2482  
 Flieghe, *v* 3 *s* flies, 4002  
 Flitt, *v* shoot (with arrows), 2097  
 Flode, *s* flood, 773, 803, 1189  
 Floke, *s* flock, company, 2849  
 Floke-mowthede, *adj* fluke-mouthed, having a mouth like a flat fish, 2779  
 Flones, 3619, Flonez, 2097, *s pl* arrows *A S* *flá, flán*  
 Florenez, *s pl* florins, 885  
 Flores, *s pl* fields, plains, 2694, 3249  
 Floresche, *v* flower, flourish, 2555, *pret* floreschede, 3246, *pp* floreschede, 771, 1708, 3472, floreschte, 924, 1366  
 Flour, *s* flower, 1709, 1990, *pl* flourez, 970  
 Flourdelice, *s* lily-flower, 3333  
 Flowe, *v pret* flew, 772, 2100  
 Floynes, *s pl* a kind of small ships, 743 *A Jal* in his *Glossaire Nautique* gives "*Floun* Nom d'un petit navire ponté qui pouvait naviguer à la voile et à l'aviron"  
 Flude, *s* flood, 494  
 Fluke, *s* flounder, or other flat fish, 1088  
 Fluriste, *pp* flowered, 180  
 Flyeande, *i p* flying, 2451  
 Flyngande, *i p* flinging, dashing along, 2757  
 Flyschande, *i p* slashing, 2141  
 Flysches, *v* slashes, cuts, 2768  
 Flyttinge, *s* shooting (with arrows), 2099  
 Foddenid, *pp* produced, 3246  
 Foghtene *See* Feghte  
 Folde, 315, 2151, Foulde, 1071, Fowlde, 3302, *s* earth  
 Fole, *s* foal, 449, 2783  
 Fohly, *adv* foolishly, 2841  
 Folowes, *v* 3 *s* follows, 1118, *pl* folous, 1360  
 Fomand, 3307, Fomande, 2233, Fomannde, 780, *i p* foaming  
 Fome, *s* foam, 1079  
 Fonde *See* Fynde  
 Fonde, 3370, (miswritten) Fonode, 205, *v* try  
 Fondene *See* Fynde  
 Fongene, *v pres pl* take, 2799, fongez, 2753, *pret* fongede, seized, 3308  
 Fonode *See* Fonde  
 Foo, *s* foe, 1536, 3395  
 Foode, *s* offspring, child, person, 3776  
 Foomene, *s pl* foemen, 3020  
 Foonde, *v. go*, 366, 2489  
 Forbere, *v* forbear, 1913  
 Forbrittenede, *pp* cut up, slaughtered, 2273.  
 Forclupe, *s* foreship, 3678  
 Forcyere, *adj comp* stronger, 1176  
 Fordremyde, *pp* wearied by dreaming, 3392  
 Fore, *prep* for, 256, *conj* for, 1179  
 Fore-breste, *s* front, 1494, 1990  
 Fore-brustene, *pp* burst, 2272

- Foregyffe *See* Forgyffe  
 Forejustyde *See* Foijuste  
 Forelytenede, *pp* lessened, 254  
 Fore-magledede, *pp* mangled, 1534  
*Se magil, magil, to mangle (Jamieson)*  
 Forestayne, *s* prow of a ship, 742  
 Foretoppe, *s* forehead, 1078  
 Fore-trauailledede, *pp* fatigued, 806  
 Forfette, *v* forfeit, 557, *pp* forfeitede, 1155.  
 Forfoughttene, *pp* wearied with fighting, 3792, 4179  
 Forgyffe, 3488, Foregyffe, 4324, *v* forgive, *pp* forgeffene, 2184  
 Forheuede, *s* forehead, 1080  
 Forjuste, 2895, Forjustede, 2088, 2134, 2908, Forejustyde, 1398, *pp* overcome in a joust, defeated  
 Formaylle, *s* female hawk, 4003  
 Forraye, *v* forage, 2489, 3 *s* forrayse, 1247, *pret* forrayede, 3017  
 Forreours, *s pl* foragers, 2450, 2901  
 Forsake, *v* refuse, 1686, 2734, deny, 1945, 4142.  
 Forsesy, *adv* strong, powerful, 3300, 3307  
 Forsett, 2012, 2018, Forsette, 1714, 1896, 1979, Foresett, 2161, *pp*  
 Forsterne, *s* forepart of the stern, 3664  
 Fortethe, *s* front teeth, 1089.  
 Forthermaste, *adv* first, 1365  
 Forthes, 2827, Forthis, 1850, *v* 3 *s* proceeds  
 For-thi, 152, 225, For-thy, 1172, Fore-thy, 3009, Fore-thi, 3346, *adv* therefore  
 Forthire, 261, Forthyre, 340, *adv* further  
 Forthine, *v* afford, furnish, 300, 1509  
 Forthumaste, *adv* first, 3330  
 For-thynkkes, 4252, For-thynk-kys, 971, *impers v* repents, me *f* = I regret, repent  
 Fortiodyne, *pp* trampled, 2150  
 Fote, 801, 1079, Fott, 4058, Fotte, 933, 1855, *s* foot  
 Fote-mene, *s pl* infantry, 1989  
 Foughtene, Foughttene *See* Feghte  
 Foulde *See* Folde  
 Found, 452, Founde, 495, 1189, *v* go, proceed, *pl* fowndes, 3112, fowndys, 2756, *pret* foundide, 1412  
 Foundene, Foundyne *See* Fynde  
 Fourmede, *r pret* formed, 3808, *pp* 781, 861, 1061  
 Foute, *adv* fourth, 3300  
 Fourtedele, *s* fourth part, quarter, 916  
 Fowlde *See* Folde  
 Fowle, *s* bird, 4002  
 Fowly, *adv* foully, 1089  
 Fowndene *See* Fynde  
 Fowndes *See* Found  
 Foyle, *s* leaf, 2704  
 Foynes, *v pl* fence, thrust, 1494, 2141, 2163, *pret* foynede, 1898  
 Fra, *prep* from, 47, 591  
 Fraisez, 1248 *Read* Frayes, terrifies  
 Fraiste, Frayste, *v* try, test, 435, 881, 3395, 3 *s* fraystez, 1227, *pp* fraistede, 2774  
 Fraknede, *adv* freckled, 1081  
 Franche, *adv* French, 1250  
 Fransye, *s* frenzy, 3826  
 Frape, 2804, Frappe, 2163, 3548, *s* company, troop  
 Frappez, *r* 3 *s* smites, 1115.

- Frauncenez, *s* liberty, 1248  
 Fiawghte, *pp* laden, freighted, 3547  
 Frawnke, *s* enclosure, 3247  
 Frayed, *pp* frightened, 2260  
 Fraynes, 507, Frayne, 337, 954, 1441, *v* 3 *s* asks, inquires  
 Frayste *See* Fraiste  
 Fre, Free, *adj* noble, 1711, 3247  
 Frechely, *adv* (?) boldly, (?) freshly, 3691  
 Freely, 3330, Frely, 970, Freliche, 2488, 3371, 3808, *adj* noble  
 Freely, *adv* 2072, 2140  
 Freke, *s* man, fellow, 557, 873, 973, *pl* frekes, 742, frekkes, 1360, frykis, 2898  
 Freke, 2759, 2821, Frekk, 2139, Frekke, 2454, *adj* bold, *superl* frekkeste, 1536, 2164  
 Frekly, 1360, 1451, Frekkly, 3927, *adv* boldly  
 Freliche, Frely *See* Freely, *adj*  
 Fremdly, 2738, Fremedly, 1250, Fremydly, 3405, *adv* strangely  
 Fremmede, *adj* strange, foreign, 3343  
 Frenchep, *s* friendship, 656  
 Frendez, *s* *pl* friends, 1442  
 Frendely, *adj* friendly, 3343  
 Frendles, *adj* friendless, 3305  
 Freschely, 1367, 1441, Fresche-liche, 4249, Frescly, 2097, Fresclyche, 2900, *adv* freshly, briskly, vigorously  
 Freschene, *v* refresh, 1452  
 Fresclyche, *adj* fresh, 2502  
 Fresone, *s* (?) Friesland horse, 1365  
 Fretene, *pp* (?) adorned, 2142  
 A S *fretman*, to adorn  
 Frette, *pp* (?) rubbed, 2708  
 Fr *frotter*, to rub  
 Fretted, *pp* 1364  
 Fretyne, *pp* devoured, 844  
 Frithez, *s* *pl* woods, forests, 924  
 Frithed, *pp* wooded round, hemmed in with forest, hedged, 3247. Occurs in *Piers the Plowman*, ed Skeat, Text B, v 590  
 Fro, *prep* from, 3, 376, 1138  
 Fromonde, *s* (?) 1112  
 Froske, *s* frog, 1081. A S *frosce*  
 Frount, 1080, Frounte, 1711, 1756, Frownte, 2455, Fiunt, 1112, Fronte, 1495, *s* brow, forehead, front  
 Frountere, 2861, Frowntere, 2898, *s* front of an army  
 Frowarde, *adj* perverse, 3345  
 Froyte, *s* fiunt, 2492, 2707, *pl* froytez, 3246  
 Frumentee, *s* a dish made of wheat and various other things, 180 *See* the recipe in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed Morris, p 7  
 Frunt *See* Frount  
 Frusche, *s* dash, charge, swift attack, 2900  
 Fruschene, *v* *pl* dash, smite, 2804 "Frousser, frusser, écraser, froisser, briser" *Burguy*  
 Frykis *See* Freke, *s*  
 Frysthez, 1248 *Read* Frythez, spares  
 Frythes, *v* *pl* spare, 2159, *imp* 2 *pl* 1734, *pp* frythede, 656  
 Fude, *s* food, 160, 2486  
 Fulfille, *v* fill up, 3438  
 Fulle, *adv* foul, 1154, 2436  
 Fulsomeste, *adj* foulest, 1061  
 Fundene *See* Fynde  
 Furlange, *s* furlong, 873, 946, 1538  
 Furthe, *adv* forth, 262, 632, 1229  
 Furthe, *s* path, ford, 1227, 1525, 1714, 1897, 2144



- Fute, *s* foot, 461  
 Fyche, *v* fix, 2162  
 Fyfe, *adj* five, 844, 856  
 Fyfte, *adj* fifth, 3414  
 Fyghtande *See* Feghte  
 Fygyred, *p p* 2151  
 Fylede, *p p* defiled, 978  
 Fylth, *s* foul lust, 1032, 1071  
 Fynde, *v* find, *pl* fyndez, 1357,  
*pret* fandē, 1160, fonde, 2775, *p p*  
 fundene, 1176, fondene, 675, 808,  
 foundene, 92, 163, foundyne, 435,  
 fowndene, 3339  
 Fyrthe, *v* spare, 3370  
 Fyrthe, *s* wood, forest, 1409,  
 1850, 1875, 1897, 2159  
 Fysnamye, 1114, Fyssnamy, 3331,  
*s* physiognomy, face  
  
 Gaddes, 3621, Gaddys, 3683, *s*  
*pl* goads, pricks  
 Gaderide, *p p* gathered, 3295,  
*pret* gadyrede, 594  
 Gadlynges, 2443, 2728, Gad-  
 lyngez, 2854, Gedlynges, 2884, *s*  
*pl* fellows, worthless fellows  
 "So is mony gedelyng,  
 godlyche on horse,  
 and is peyh lutel wurp,  
 wlonk bi þe glede,  
 and vuel at pare neode"  
*The Proverbs of Alfred*, Jesus  
 Coll MS 29, leaf 264  
*A S gædelung*, companion  
 Gafe, *v pret.* gave, 2628, gavest,  
 1018, gaffe, gave, 85  
 Galaye, *s* galley, 3724, *pl* ga-  
 lays, 3096  
 Galedē, *v pret* sang, 927 *A S*  
*galan*  
 Galte, *s* swine, 1101  
 Galyarde, *adj* gay, 721, 1265,  
 1279 *Fr gaillard*  
 Gamene, *s* game, sport, 2811,  
*pl* gamnes, 1730, 3174  
 Ganggyngē, *s* going, 706  
  
 Gardwynes, *s pl* guerdons, re-  
 wards, 1729  
 Garette, *s* watch-tower, 562, 3104  
 "þe garettes oboven þe yhates  
 bryght  
 Of þe cetē of heven, I lyken þus  
 ryght,  
 Tylle þe garettes of a cetē of gold,  
 þat wroght war, als I before told,  
 Of fyne curalle and rych rubys,  
 And of other stanes of gret  
 prys, " *Hampole's Pricke*  
*of Conscience*, ll 9101-9106  
 Garneschit, 722, Garnescht, 563,  
 1000, *p p* garnished, furnished  
 Garnisone, 3105, Gainysone,  
 2471, 2655, Garysone, 3007, *s*  
 garrison  
 Garte *See* Gere  
 Gas *See* Goo  
 Gate, *s* going, 4144, road, 4308  
 Gayliche, Gaylyche, *adv* gaily,  
 913, 2655, 3162, 3684  
 Gayne, *v* avail, 165, 3 *s* gaynes,  
 4303, *pl* gaynez, 1731  
 Gayneste, *adj* nearest, 487, 1041,  
 3006  
 Gayspande, *v p* gasping, 1462  
 Geant, 3410, Geante, 2889, Gy  
 aunt, 1122, 1222, *s* giant, *pl*  
 geauntez, 375, gyawntis, 2908  
 Gedlynges *See* Gadlynges  
 Gedyre, *v* gather, 592  
 Gemows, *s pl* hinges, 2893  
 "Gymowe of a sperynge *Verte-*  
*nella, gemella*" *Promptorium Par-*  
*vulorum* *See* Way's notes on this  
 word  
 Genatours, *s pl* riders on jennets,  
 light horsemen, 2897 "Génetaire,  
 génesteur, génète, génetaire Sorte  
 de cavalier, suivant Philippe de  
 Commines" "Genitaires Cavale-  
 rie légère" *Roquefort*  
 Gentilla, *adj* gentle, well-born,  
 &c, 987, 1161, 2088, *superl.* gentil-  
 este, 862

- Genyuers, *s pl* (?) 375
- Gere, *v* make, cause, 3640, 3 *s* gers, 3572, 3921, *pret* garte, 1886, 3709, gerte, 1780, 1946, 1975, gerte kepe hym = caused him to be kept
- Gere, *s* gear, tackle, 2539, 3008
- Gerefawcone, *s* geifalcon, 4004
- Gers *See* Gere, *v*
- Gersoms, *s pl* treasures, 165, 1729
- Gerte *See* Gere, *v*
- Gessenande, (?) 2521
- Gesserawnte, 2892, Jesseraunt, 904, Jesserawnte, 4238, *s* coat of jazeran, *pl* gesserawntes, 2909 "Jazeran Particular kind of armour, so called from the Italian ghiazerino, being made of overlapping plates of iron rivetted on canvass covered with velvet, red, black, or blue, and ornamented externally with brass studs" *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms* "Jaserant, jazerant, cotte de petites mailles" *Burguy*
- Gestes, *s pl* stornes, 2876
- Gettlesse, *adj* without getting anything, 2727
- Getyne, *pp* gotten, 886
- Ghywes, *s pl* gyves, fetters, 3621
- Gife, 2630, Giffe, 2632, *conj* if
- Gife, 1179, Giff, 1060, Giffe, 2321, *v* give, *pp* gifene, 1729
- Girde, *v* smite, 3709, 3 *s* girdez, 1792, gyrdes, 1370, gyrdez, 1470, gyrdis, 2563, *pret* gyrd, 2971, *pp* girde, 3938
- Girdille, Girdylle, *s* girdle, 3458, 3923.
- Girse, *s* grass, 3944
- Gladchipe, *s* gladness, 59, 928
- Gladdez, 2883, Gladdis, 2852, *v* 3 *s* gladdens, encourages, *pl* glad-dene, 928
- Glade, *adj* glad, 1386
- Glade *See* Glydez
- Glaueiande, *i p* talking foolishly, 2538
- Glafte, *s* 3761 "Glawe A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff" *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms*
- Gledys, *s pl* sparks, live coals, 117
- Glent, *s* stroke, 3863
- Glentes, 4244, Glentis, 2563, Glentys, 2780, *v* 3 *s* glances, glides
- Gleterande, *i p* glittering, 595, 1280, 2853
- Ghftis, 3949, Glyftes, 2525, *v* 3 *s* looks
- Gloppynyng, *s* fright, amazement, 3863
- Glopyne, *v* terrify, 2580, be terror-struck, 3 *s* glopyus, 3949, *pret* glonpede, 1074, *imp pl* 2 glo-pyns, 2853, *i p* gloppynande, 4329
- Glorede, *v pret* stared, 1074
- Glotione, *s* glutton, 1074
- Glydez, *v* 3 *s* glides, 1371, *pret* glade, 2972, *i p* glydande, 799
- Glyftes *See* Ghftis
- Gobbede, *adj* full of gab or derision, 1346 *Sc gabbed*, loquacious
- Gobelets, *s pl* glove-ornaments of some kind, perhaps little cups, 913 Compare *Gobelot de gland* = acorn-cup (*Roquesfort*)
- Gobone, *v* (?) 4164
- Gode, *adj* good, 3476
- Gole, *s* 3725 "A ditch or small stream" *Hallwell*
- Golet, *s* gullet, 1772
- Gome, 85, 1209, Gume, 3409, *s* man, *pl* gomes, 1461, gomys, 3683, 3684 A *S guma*

- Goo, *v* go, 213, 1279, 3 *s* gas, 3006, gos, 3727, gosse, 3101, *pl* gosse, 497, *imp* 2 *pl* gose, 1266
- Gorge, *s* throat, 3760
- Gorgere, *s* gorget, piece of armour for the throat, 1772
- Gorre, *s* gore, 1130, 1370
- Gos, Gose *See* Goo
- Gosesomere, *s* gossamer, 2687
- Gosse *See* Goo
- Gossehawk, *s* goshawk, 4001
- Gouverneur, *s* 1201
- Gowces *Read* Gowtes, drops, spots, 3759
- Gowke, *s* cuckoo, 927 *A S* *geac*
- Gowles, 3646, 3759, Gowlles, 3945, *s* gules (Her)
- Gracious, *adj*, 187
- Grame, *s* anger, 1077, 3008 *A S* *grama*
- Granes, *v* groans, 2562
- Grape, *v* grope, search, 2725
- Grassede, *p p* fattened, fat, 1091
- Graue, *p p* engraved, 3462
- Graunt, 2820, Graunted, 1202, *p p* granted
- Grayhondes *See* Grehownde.
- Graynes, *s pl* 913, 3463
- Graythe, *v* make ready, prepare, equip, 1279, convey, 4303, proceed, hasten, go, 1266, 3 *s* graythes, goes, 1353, 1384, 3761, *p p* graythede, equipped, 589, 602, graythide, 373
- Graythelyche, 722, Graythely, 1369, 1384, 1387, Graythly, 1000, *adv* readily, speedily
- Graytheste, *adj* readiest, promptest, 1201
- Gre, 2748, Gree, 1936, 2645, *s* will, pleasure
- Gree, *s* (degree) ascendancy, 3706, 4298.
- Grees, *s* grease time, the time when deer are fat and fit for killing, 658 *See Grease* in Halliwell
- Greesse-growene, *adj* grown over with fat, 1101
- Greffe, 1077, Greefe, 1471, 2562, Greffe, 3007, 4324, *s* grief, anger, vexation, pain, sorrow
- Greffe, *v* grieve, 705, *p p* grefede, hurt, 1282, greffede, 1463 *See* Greue
- Giefes *See* Greue, *s*
- Grehownde, 3464, Grehownde, 1075, Grehownde, 4001, *s* grayhound, *pl* grewhoundez, 1730, grayhondes, 2521
- Grekkes, *adj* Greek, 594
- Grene, *adj* green, 1266, 1281
- Grenede, *v pret* grinned, showed his teeth, 1075
- Gresse, *s* grass, 1131
- Gret, 256, Grete, 207, Grett, 1, 165, Grette, 539, *adj* great, *comp* gretter, 3243, *superl* gretteste, 1469
- Grete, *v* greet, 1282, 3 *s* gretez, 1077, *pl* gretes, 1233, *pret* giette, 84, 3476
- Grete, *v* weep, 3 *s* gretes, 2962, *pret* grette, 3790, *i p* gretand, 951, 3912
- Gretez, *v* 1774 *Qu* gredez, calls
- Greue, *s* grove, 2540, *pl* greues, 1874, greuez, 927, grefes, 2881
- Greue, *v* grieve, vex, annoy, *pret* greuyde, was vexed, 1352, *p p* greuede, 134, 266, 1173, greuyde, 1022
- Grehownde, Grehownde *See* Grehownde
- Gripe, *v* seize, gripe, grasp, 3008, 3 *s* grypes, 1163, 2526, gryppes, 1369
- Grisely, 3105, Grysly, 1075, Grysely, 951, Gryeslye, 1469, Gry[s]-lych, 1101, *adj* horrible, grisly.

- Grisely, 1462, 3950, Grysely, 3912, Gryselyche, 1373, *adv* horribly
- Groffe, 3850, Grouffe, 3944, Growffe, 3869, *s* On *g* = flat, sprawling
- Grome, *s* groom, 2526, 3489
- Gronande, *i p* groaning, 1373, 3938
- Grouche *See* Gruche
- Grouffe *See* Groffe
- Groundene, 1371, 2972, Grown-dene, 1281, Grundyne, 1461, *pp* ground, sharpened
- Growffe *See* Groffe
- Growndene *See* Groundene
- Gruche, 706, 2644, Grouche, 2819, *v* be dissatisfied, grudge, *pret* grychgide, 2557, *i p* grucchande, 1076, 1353, 1462
- Grundyne *See* Groundene
- Grychgide *See* Gruche
- Gryeslye *See* Grisely
- Gryffounne, *s* griffin, 3869
- Grygynge, *s* (graying) dawn, 2510
- Grylych, 1101 *Read* Gryslych, *and see* Grisely
- Gryme, *adj* grim, 3621, 3760, *superl* grymmeste, 3419
- Grymly, *adv* grimly, fiercely, 1471, 2558, 3813
- Grypes, Gryppes *See* Gripe
- Grysely, Gryselyche, Grysly *See* Grisely
- Guchede *Read* Guthede = gouted, goutté, bedropped, spotted, 3937
- Gud, 2851, 2853, Gude, 559, 563, *adj* good
- Gudes, 295, Gudez, 1213, 1249, *s pl* goods
- Gudly, *adv* well, 677, 3005
- Gumbaldes, *s pl* (?) dainties, 187
- Gume *See* Gome
- Guschez, *v pl* gush, 1130
- Guttes, 1130, Guttez, 1370, *s pl* guts
- Guyte, *s* child, 2963 *See* *Get* and *Gyte* in Jamieson
- Gwerdones, 4277, Gwerddouns, 2820, *s pl* guerdons, rewards
- Gyaunt, Gyawntus *See* Geant
- Gydes, *v 3 s* gudes, 3005
- Gydes, *s pl* gudes, 3006
- Gye, *v* guide, 4, *pret* gyede, 3860
- Gyf, 3058, Gyfe, 1598, Gyffe, 4, *v* give, 3 *s* gyffes, 1774, *pp* gyfene, 4277, gyffene, 1202, gyffes = makes account of, 539
- Gyrd, Gyrdes, &c. *See* Garde
- Haa, *int* 133
- Habite, *s* dress, 3917
- Habydes, *v 3 s* abides, waits for, 596, *pl* habyddez, remain, 1431.
- Hade *See* Hafe
- Hafe, 252, 286, Haffe, 1616, *v* have, 2 *s* has, 100, 140, hase, 1805, 3 *s* has, 846, *pl* has, 12, 369, *pret* hade, 26, 52
- Halsez, *v 3 s* greets, salutes, 1058.
- Hakenayes, 484, Hakenays, 2284, Haknays, 734, *s pl* hackneys
- Halde, *v* hold, 424, 3 *s* haldes, 64, haldez, 1135, *pret* helde, 1196, *pp* haldene, 387, 1456
- Hale, *v* draw, haul, 748
- Hale, 1260, 2108, Halle, 2651, *adj* whole
- Halely, 764, Hally, 1001, 1085, Holly, 748, *adv* wholly, entirely
- Halfe, *s* half, part, side, *pl* halves, 1853, halfez, 1979, halues, 1966, 3530
- Halowes, *v 3 s* shouts, hollas, 3319
- Hals, *s* neck, throat, 764, *pl* halses, 4120, halsez, 1798

- Haly, 297, 309, Holy, 348, *adj*  
 Hame-holde, *adj* domestic, 1843  
 See *Hamald* in Jamieson  
 Hanche, 1100, 1119, Haunche,  
 1157, *s* haunch  
 Handez, *s pl* hands, 1137  
 Handilez, *v pl* handle, feel, 1156  
 Handsomere, *adj comp* more  
 handy, 2128  
 Hannde-brede, *s* handbreadth,  
 2229  
 Hansemane, *s* henchman, page,  
 2662, *pl* hansemene, 2743 See  
*Henseman* in Jamieson  
 Hape, 1937, Happe, 2446, *s* hap  
 Happe, *v* have good fortune, suc-  
 ceed, 2630  
 Happene, *v* 1269, obtain, 3433,  
*pp* hapnede, happened, 1154, 3304  
 Happy, *adj* fortunate, 1741, 2974  
 Happyng, *s* good fortune, suc-  
 cess, 3958  
 Harageous, *adj* 1645, 1742, 1834,  
 2248, violent, stormy (Wright)  
 Harawde, 2294, 3029, Hawrawde,  
 3013, *s* herald  
 Harbergage, *s* quarters, 2475  
 Hardare, *adj comp* harder, 4194  
 Harde See Here, *v*  
 Hardly, *adv* closely, 1084.  
 Hardynes, *s* boldness, courage,  
 3959  
 Hare, *s* hair, 1001  
 Hare, *s* 2504  
 Harlotte, *s* ribald, rascal, low  
 fellow, 2446, *pl* harlottez, 2743  
 Not used in the modern sense  
 Harmes, 2437, Harmez, 1842, *v*  
 3 *s* harms  
 Harnayse, *s* armour, 2629  
 Harrawnte, *v* (?) 2449  
 Harske, *adj* harsh, hard, 1084  
 Has, Hase See Hafe  
 Hastily, *adv* hastily, quickly,  
 167  
 Hathelle, *adj* noble, 358, 1659,  
 1662, *superl* hatheldest, 988, ha-  
 theleste, 2109  
 Hawberke, *s* hauberk, coat of  
 mail, 1156, 2078, 2552 Ger  
*halsberg*  
 Hawe, *s* (?) 3704  
 Hawle, *s* hall, 3879  
 Hawrawde See Harawde  
 Hawtayne, *adj* haughty, 1058,  
 2612, 2910  
 Hawtayne, (?) 3029  
 Haylede, *v pret* projected, 2077  
 Haythemene, *s pl* (?) heathen  
 men, 2295  
 Haythene, 1260, 2274, Hathene,  
 1284, Heythene, 2285, 3642, He-  
 thene, 1834, *adj* heathen  
 Hedde, *v* behead, 2311  
 Heddys-mene, *s pl* headmen,  
 chief men, 281  
 Hede See Heuede  
 Hede-rapys, *s pl* head-ropes,  
 3668  
 Hedire, *adv* hither, 2614  
 Hedlyngs, *adv* headlong, 3829  
 Hedoyne, *s* (?) 184  
 Hedyrwarde, *adv* hitherward, this  
 way, 25  
 Hedys See Heuede  
 Heghe = hethe, heath, 2476  
 Heghe, 158, 167, 499, Heyghe,  
 3471, Hey, 3467, 3485, Hye, 39,  
 58, Hyghe, 3014, *adj* high, *superl*  
 hegheste, 3369  
 Heghe, 1261, 1832, Hye, 194,  
 1119, *adv* high  
 Heghe, *s* high place, height, 1146  
 Heghely, *adv* hastily, 2294  
 Heghte = aughte, *adj* eight,  
 2830.  
 Heghte = hethe, *s* heath, 2295

- Heghte, 1157, 2613, Highte, 3626, *s* height, *pl* heghttez, 798  
 Hekes, *s pl* horses, 2284  
 Helledede, *v pret* bowed down, inclined, 3368  
 Hele, *s* health, prosperity, 2630, 3958  
 Hele, *v* hide, conceal, 3286, *pret* hild, 1120, *pp* hilyd, 3606  
 Hele, *v* heal, be healed, recover, 3688, 3 *s* heles, 2209, *pret* helyde, 1825, *pp* helyd, 3030  
 Helme, *s* helmet, 1832, *pl* helmes, 380, 730, hellmes, 2551  
 Helmede, *adj* having helmets, 1647, 3626.  
 Helpene, *v inf* help, 1646, *pp* holpene, 2631, 2661  
 Helych, *adv* loudly, 1286  
 Hemmes, 1359, 1648, Hemmys, 2219, *s pl* borders  
 Hende, *adj* courteous, 167, 1135, 1283  
 Hente, *v* seize, take, receive, 3 *s* hentez, 1132, hentes, 2917, *pret* hente, 2973, *pp* hente, 1842, 3319  
 Herbariours, *s pl* harbingers, men who went forward to find places for others, 2448.  
 Herberde, *pp* harboured, lodged, 158, 166, 2650  
 Herbergage, *s* lodgings, quarters, 1285, 2285  
 Here, *v* hear, 12, *pret* herde, 1285, harde  
 Herede, *adj* haired, 1083  
 Heretyke, *s* heretic, 1307.  
 Herkene, *v* hearken, 1646, 3899, *imp 2 pl* herkenes, 25, herkynes, 15.  
 Herne-pane, *s* brain-pan, skull, 2229  
 Herte, *s* heart, 251, 262  
 Herte, *v* take courage, 1181  
 Hertelyche, 2551, Hertily, 1835, *adj* severe.  
 Hertily, 3642, Hertely, 2991, *adv* heartily, severely  
 Heslyne, *adj* of hazel, 2504  
 Heste, *s* command, 2294, 3368, 4307  
 Hetches, *s pl* hatches, 3682  
 Hete, 2127, 3030, Hette, 2631, 3369, *v* promise, assure  
 Hethe, 1834, 2308, Heghe, 2476, Heghte, 2295, Heyghe, 2651, *s* heath  
 Hethely, *adv* scornfully, 268  
 Hethynge, *s* scorn, 1843.  
 Hette *See* Hete  
 Heuande, *i p* rising, 3704  
 Heuede, 262, 1178, 1354, head, chief, 1344, *pl* hedys  
 Heuedede, *pp* beheaded, 463  
 Heuen, *v* raise, 1937 *See* *Heuen* in the Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*, ed Morris  
 Heuene, 1167, 1261, Hewene, 705, Hewyne, 2184, *s* heaven.  
 Hewe, *s* hue, colour, 207, 768, 2524  
 Hewede, *adj* coloured, 3252  
 Hewene, *v pl* hew, 1860, *pp* hewene, 1825, 2663  
 Hewys, *v 3 s* raises, 4156, *pp* hewede, 4091  
 Hey, *adj See* Heghe  
 Hey, *s See* Hye  
 Heyghe, *adj See* Heghe  
 Heyghe, *s See* Hethe  
 Heyly, *adv* quickly, 464, 2663, 2920  
 Heyndly, *adv* courteously, 15  
 Heynne, *adv* hence, 2436  
 Heynzous, *adj* heinous, 268  
 Heythene *See* Haythene  
 Highte, *pp* called, named, 2899  
 Hild, Hilyd *See* Hele, *v*

- Hilt, *s* hilt, handle of a sword, 1121, *pl* hiltes, 2239, hiltex, 1056, 1149  
 Hiltede, *adj* 2274, 2911.  
 Hir, 84, 980, Hire, 956, *pron* her  
 Hirste, *s* wood, forest, 3369  
 Hittez, *v* 3 *s* hits, 1112, 1125, 1149  
 Hode, *s* hood, 3459  
 Hodles, *adj* hoodless, bareheaded, 2308  
 Holdene, *v* *pl* hold, 4128, *pp* holdene, 1579, holdyne, 40, 166  
 Hole, *adj* hollow, 1083  
 Hole, 1647, 2661, Holle, 3687, 4128, *adj* whole, all *See* Hale  
 Holly, *adv* wholly, entirely, 748, 3368, 3590  
 Holpene *See* Helpene  
 Holte, *s* wood, 1283, 1645, *pl* holtez, 1259  
 Hom, *adv* home, 3014  
 Homager, *s* one who does homage, 3147  
 Hondene, *v* (?) serve with hands, 3209  
 Hondrethe, 844, Howndrethe, 2108, Hundrethe, 930, *s* hundred, *pl* hundrethes, 281, hunndrethez, 1879  
 Honeste, *adj* honourable, good, 3245  
 Honnde, *s* hand, 1807, *pl* hondes, 2255, hondez, 1114.  
 Honourliche, *adj* honourable, 2298  
 Hope, *v* suppose, 2209  
 Hopes, *s* *pl* (?) 2503  
 Horde, *s* treasure; *pl.* hordes, 3145  
 Hore, *adj* hoar, hoary, 1082  
 Hornez, *s* *pl* horns, 1286  
 Horsse, *s* 463, *pl* horsez, 734, horsesys, 3721  
 Horsede, 1179, Horsesede, 2944, Horsesyde, 1647, *adj* horsed, mounted  
 Hostaye, *v* lead a host, or make war, 555  
 Hotchene, *v* *pl* hack, chop, 3687  
 Houe, Hufe, 1688, *v* tarry, 3 *s* houys, 915, howes, 2010, hufes, 1260, *pl* houez, 1283, houys, 377, 2118, *pret* houede, 2031, *v* *pl* houande, 1648  
 Hoursches, *v* *pl* (?) rush, 2110  
 House, *v* dwell, 4284  
 Howes *See* Houe  
 Howge *See* Hüge  
 Howndrethe *See* Hondrethe  
 Howntes, *v* *pl* hunt, 4258  
 Howselde, *pp* houseled, *be* h = receive the housel, or consecrated host, 4315  
 Howsyng, *s* dwellings, quarters, 1284, 2285  
 Hufe *See* Houe  
 Hüge, 1086, Hugge, 583, 1634, Howge, 2889, *adj* huge  
 Hukes, *s* *pl* 734 Miswritten for *hakes*, or *hekes*, horses  
 Huke-nebbyde, *adj* hooknosed, 1082.  
 Hulke, *s* a great awkward fellow, 1058, 1085, 1121, 1149.  
 Hunde-fisch, *s* houndfish, 1084.  
 Hundrethe, Hunndrethez *See* Hondrethe  
 Hurdace, *s* fence, palisade, barrier, 3626.  
 Hurdez, *v* 3 *s* (?) lurks, 1010.  
 Hurles, *v* 2 *s* rushest, 262  
 Hurtez, *v* 3 *s* thrusts, 1772  
 Hy *See* Hye  
 Hyde, *s* skin, 1157  
 Hydede, *pp* hided, skinned, covered, 1001.

- Hye *See* Heghe  
 Hye, 463, 2108, Hy, 2109, Hey, 166, *s* haste  
 Hye, *v* hasten, 1645  
 Hyely, *adv* hastily, quickly, (or perhaps) loudly, 1058  
 Hyene, *adv* hence, 2582, 2744  
 Hyled, *pp* hidden, 184 *See* Hele  
 Hyme, *pron* him, 1133, 1134  
 Hymlande, (?) 2503  
 Hyndire, *s* hindpart, 3626  
 Hynge, *v* hang, 3 *s* hynnges, 3473, *pret* hyngede, 281, 2 *p* hyn-gande, 1083, *pp* hynggyde, 3590  
 Hynter, *s* hindpart, 3605  
 Hyrdez, *s pl* shepherds, 3245  
 Hyre, *pron* her, 854  
 Hyttez, *v* 3 *s* hits, 1122, 1387  
  
 Iche *See* Ilke  
 Iche, *v* sally forth, rush out, 1412 O Fr *issir*  
 Idene, (?) 3061  
 Ife = if, 420, 2438  
 Ile, *s* isle, 4309, *pl* ilez, 575, illes, 2359  
 Ilkane, 279, Ilkone, 3691, *pron* each one, each  
 Ilke, *adv* same, 65, 232, 1311 A S *ilc*  
 Ilke, 1006, 1093, Ylke, 2460, 2480, Iche, 589, 1004, Yche, *adv* each Often followed by *a* ilke a, 83, 194, iche a, 2144, 3062, yche a, 3634  
 Illes *See* Ile  
 Imangez, *prep* amongst, 3169  
 In-come, *s* coming in, 2009, 2171  
 Ine = in, 1797  
 Inewe *See* Inowe  
 Inglisce, *s* English, 2529  
 Inns, *s pl* dwellings, 3041  
  
 Inowe, 3095, Inewe, 3161, Ynowe, 1626, Ynewe, 1360, 1970, *adv* enough  
 Irene, 1186, Iryne, 2104, Yryne, 1182, *s* iron  
 Iresche, 3934, Irsche, 4123, 4161, *adv* Irish  
 Irous, 1329, Irows, 1592, Irus, 1957, *adv* wrathful  
 Iroulye, *adv* wrathfully, 2530  
 Ischewe, *s* issue, 1943  
 Isschewis, *v* 3 *s* issues, 4060, *pl* ischewis, 3116  
 I-wis, 3339, I-wys, 2020, 2332, 2828, I-wysse, 322, 546, 2685, *adv* certainly  
  
 Jaggede, *v pret* jagged, chopped, 1123, 2087, *p p* 905, 2909  
 Jambe, 2894, Jamby, 373, *adv* active, numble, lit leggy, from Fr *jambe*, leg  
 Japer, *s pl* tricks, 1398  
 Jentille, Jentylle, *adv* gentle, 115, 904, 3411.  
 Jerodyne, *s* (?) 905  
 Jerownde, *adv* gyronny (Her), 2891  
 Jeryne, *s* (?) 903  
 Jesseraunt, Jesserawnte *See* Gesserawnte  
 Jocunde, *adv* 2896  
 Jogges, *v* 3 *s* jogs, thrusts, 2891, 2893  
 Jolyly, Jolyly, *adv* gaily, hand-somely, 245, 373, 2088, 4109  
 Joly, *adv* gay, trim, handsome, jolly, 3414, *comp* jolyere, 4110, *superl* jolyeste, 1658  
 Jonede, *pp* joined, 2890  
 Jopowne, 4238, Jupone, 905, jupon.  
 Jorné, 3411, Journé, 2875, Journee, 340, 372, 825, Jurnee, 2894, *s* a day's travel, a day's fight, a day's work



- Jowelle, *s* jewel, 862  
 Joye, *s* 1161  
 Joyes, *v* 3 *s* rejoices, 2896  
 Joynenyge, *s* joining, encounter, 2133  
 Joynez, *v* *pl* join, 2112  
 Joynter, *s* joint, 2893  
 Juggede, *p p* judged, 2877  
 Juggesz, *s* *pl* judges, 246  
 Jumette, *s* 1122 *Read* Inmette, *s* intestines *See* Inmeats in *Jamesson*  
 Juny, *s* June, 345  
 Jupone *See* Jopowne  
 Jurnee *See* Jorné  
 Just, *adv* 1123  
 Justere, *s* jouter, 3412  
 Justyfy, *v* execute justice upon, punish, 663  
 Justyng, *s* jousting, 1657, 2875  
 Kabane *See* Cabane  
 Kaghte *See* Cachene  
 Kaire *See* Cayre  
 Kalander, *s* calendar, roll, 2640  
 Kalendez, *s* *pl* calends, 2371  
 Kambe, *s* comb, 3351  
 Kampe, *s* fight, 3670, 3701  
 Kane, *v* can, 2750  
 Karede, *v* *pret* 2882 *See* Cayre  
 Kare *See* Care  
 Karfuke, *s* place where four roads meet, 2003 A well-known cross-road at Oxford is called *Carfax* *See* *Carfonkes* in the *Romans of Partenay*, ed Skeat, also a note in *Notes and Queries*, Series III, vol x p 184 O Fr. *carrefour*  
 Karnede, 1887, Karyed, 4010, *v* *pret* carried  
 Karpe *See* Carpe  
 Karyage, *s*, baggage, luggage, 2282  
 Kaughte *See* Cachene  
 Kaunt, *adv* stout, bold, 2195  
 Kay, 3111, Keye, 1867, *s* key, *pl* layes, 3064  
 Kayere, Kayre *See* Cayre  
 Kaysere, *s* emperor, 1651, 1959, *pl* kayseres, 1894, kaysers, 2391  
 Kele, *v* cool, 1839, *pret* keled, 2712  
 Kelle, *s* caul, net (which ladies wore over their hair), 3258  
 Kembede, *v* *pret* combed, 3351  
 Kempe, *s* warrior, *pl* kempis, 1003 A S *empa*  
 Kempe, *v* fight, 2633  
 Kene, *v* tell, 2619, 3521, show, 876, *pret* kende, 481, 2194, kend, handed over, 1590  
 Kene, *adj* keen, sharp, 47, 1106, bold, 641, 1152, 1725, 1785, fierce, 3669, *comp* kenere, 4194, *superl* keneste, 2721, 3490  
 Kenely, 935, 1243, 1271, Kenly, 943, *adv* sharply, boldly  
 Kenetez, *s* *pl* kennets, small hounds, 122  
 Kepare, *s* keeper, 3512  
 Kepe, *s* care, heed, attention, 156, 1682, 1746  
 Kepe, *v* keep, 1138, 1780, wait, watch, 2003, heed, regard, care, 2398, 3522, 4021, *imp.* 2 *pl* kepys, await, 628; *pret* kepede, 919, kepyde, 838, 2263, *p p.* kepede, 1586, kepide, 998, kepyd, 2171  
 Keppe, *v* catch, seize, 3484  
 Kepyng, *s* keeping, 4205  
 Kerfe, *s* cutting, 4194  
 Kerfes, 4231, Kerues, 2567, *v* 3 *s* cuts, *p p* coruene, 211, 3335, 3673  
 Keste *See* Caste  
 Kettle-hatte, *s* helmet, 3516, 3995; *pl.* ketelle hattes, 2993

- Keye *See* Kay  
 Kidd, 3673, Kydd, 1272, 1390,  
     Kydde, 96, 232, Kyde, 65, 1651,  
     *adj* celebrated, famous  
 Kirke, 4016, Kyrke, 1219, *s*  
     church  
 Kithe, 3866, Kythe, 28, 51, 542,  
     Kyghte, 3996, *s* nation, country  
 Kleuys *See* Clewes  
 Klokcs, *s pl* claws, paws, 792  
 Knafe, 2621, Knafe, 2637, *s*  
     servant, *pl* knafes, 2632, knaues,  
     3484, knaue = male, 850, 1025  
 Knaue, *v* know, 1003, 1581,  
     1672, acknowledge, 2637, 3  
     knawes, 1317, *pret* knewe, 2177,  
     *pp* knawene, 475, 1654, knowene,  
     3259  
 Knee, *s*, *pl* kneesse, 956, kneys,  
     4274  
 Knele, *v* kneel, 3 *s* knehs, 3951,  
     *pl* knehs, 3046, *pret* knelyd, 1199,  
     2312, *i p* kneland, 1137, 4337  
 Knyghte, *s* 1138, *pl* knyghttez,  
     1161  
 Knyghthede, 1320, 1581, 2619,  
     Knyghthode, 1682, 3883, *s* knight-  
     hood  
 Knyghtly, 2395, Knyghtlyche,  
     506, 1218, 4083, Knyghttly, 1649,  
     *adj* knightly  
 Knyghtly, 1707, 1724, Knyghttly,  
     1692, 1790, *adv* knightly, like a  
     knight  
 Knylles, *v pl* rning, 2353  
 Kombide, *pp* combed, 1003  
 Konynge, *s* cunning, skill, know-  
     ledge, 3883  
 Konyngeste, *adj* most knowing,  
     3177  
 Kosyne *See* Cosync  
 Kouerde, *pp* covered, 2381  
 Kowardely, *adv* cowardly, 1923  
 Krafty *See* Crafty  
 Kraftes, *s pl* crafts, 2543  
 Krakede, *v pret* cracked, 3269.  
 Krayers *See* Crayers  
 Kreuelleste, Krewelle *See*  
     Crewelle  
 Krysme, 2636 *See* Crysume  
 Kryspane, *i p* crispng, 3352  
 Kroke, *s* crook, curl, 3352 Dan  
     Michel uses the verb *croki*, to curl  
     "Of þise ydelenesse / ne byþ nazt  
     quitte þe men þet doþ zuo grat  
     payne ham to kembe and to pouri  
     ine sseaweres and ine hare here wel  
     to *croki* an to bleue be strengte"  
     —*Agenbite of Inwyrt*, ed Morris, p  
     176 *See* *Havelok the Dane*, ed  
     Skeat, Preface, p vii, footnote  
 Krouelle *See* Crewelle  
 Krysme *See* Crysume  
 Krysmede *See* Crysmede  
 Kwne, *v* can, know, 1565, kwne  
     thanke = return thanks  
 Kydd, Kydde, Kyde *See* Kidd  
 Kyghte *See* Kithe  
 Kynde, *s* nature, kind, 125,  
     2385, 3049, race, 3867  
 Kyndly, *adj* natural, proper,  
     good, 3883, 4188  
 Kyndlyche, 714, Kyndly, 2712,  
     Kyndely, 3521, *adv* naturally,  
     kindly  
 Kyne, *s* kin, 2618  
 Kyngryke, *s* kingdom, realm, 24,  
     1272, *pl* kyngrykes, 649, kyng-  
     rykez, 820  
 Kynredene, *s* kindred, 2604  
 Kynsemane, 3898, Kynyse-mane,  
     1778, *s* kinsman  
 Kyrke *See* Kirke  
 Kyrnelles, *s pl* battlements, 3046  
 Kyrtille, 998, Kyrtylle, 1024,  
     1191, *s* kirtle  
 Kyste, *s* chest, *pl* kystys, 2302,  
     2336, kystis, 2342, 2355  
 Kythe *See* Kithe  
 Kythe, *v* show, 1652, 4193

- Lacchene, 750, Lachene, 2541,  
*v pl* catch, take, *pret* laghte,  
 2693, 2702, laughte, 2226, 2292,  
 lached, 1515, *pp* laghte, 874,  
 laughte, 1817, 1828, 1902  
 Ladde, *s* lad, 4302  
 Lade-sterne, *s* loadstar, the polar  
 star, 751  
 Ladily, *adj* ladylike, 3254  
 Ladysse, *s pl* ladies, 3081  
 Laggene, *v pl* (?) get ready, 2542  
 Laghte *See* Lacchene  
 Laghturs, *s pl* laughter, 2673  
 Lake, *s* lack, 163  
 Lakes, *s pl* lakes, pools, 960,  
 2149  
 Lamede, *v pret* lamed, disabled,  
 4302, *pp* 3281  
 Langage, *s* language, speech,  
 3477  
 Lange, *adj* long, 1103, 1269,  
 one lange = along, 1045, 2703  
 Lange, *adv* long, 868, 1200,  
*comp* langere, 550, 587, lengere,  
 736, 889  
 Lange, *v* belong, 3 *s* langes,  
 402, lengez, 2082, *pl* langez, 1244,  
 langys, 244, lengez, 1410, 1479,  
*pret* lengede, 1492, 2221  
 Lannges, *v* 3 *s* longs, 383 -  
 Langoure, *s* languor, 4268  
 Languessande, *i p* languishing,  
 4338.  
 Lappe, *s* lappet, 3254, rag, 3286  
 Lappe, *v* wrap, fold, enclose,  
 3292, *pret* lappede, 2300  
 Lapyng, *s* lapping, 3235  
 Large, *adv* wide, away, 1040,  
 deep, 1120, greatly, freely, 1376  
 Largesce, *s* liberality, bounty,  
 163  
 Lasschene, *v pl* lash, smite, 2801  
 Lat, 3639, Late, 420, 1189, Latt,  
 4001, Latte, 398, 1139, 1321, *v*.  
 let, 3 *s* lattes, lets go, dismisses,  
 disperses, 1819, *pret* lete, 3886  
 Lates, 118, 248, 536, 2054, Latez,  
 1076, *s pl* features  
 Lathe, *s* (?) displeasure, 458  
 Latheliche, 3279, Laythely, 4302,  
*adj* loathly, ugly, hateful  
 Latte, Lattes *See* Lat  
 Laughene, *v pl* laugh, 3698,  
*pret* lughe, 248  
 Laughte *See* Lacchene  
 Launce, *s* lance, spear, 1379,  
*pl* launcez, 1459, 1754, lawnces,  
 2462  
 Launches, *v* 3 *s* leaps, springs,  
 2560, *pret* launschide, 194  
 Launchez, *v pl* launch, throw  
 out (?), 750  
 Launde, 1517, Lawnde, 2084, *s*  
 plain, lawn  
 Laundone, *s* (?) field, 1768 "Lan-  
 don petite lande, pâturage,  
 terres remplies de broussailles"  
*Roquefort*  
 Lawe, *adj* low, 154, 3720,  
*superl* laweste, 2431, on lawe =  
 down, 2281  
 Lawe, *adv* low, 1270  
 Lawnches, *v* 3 *s* cuts, 3831  
 Lawnde *See* Launde  
 Laye, *s* (?) 3721  
 Laye, *s* law, religion, 2593  
 Layere, *s* lair, camp, 2293  
 Layke, *s* game, 1599, 3386, 4093  
 Layne, *v* conceal, 419, 2398,  
 2593  
 Laysere, *s* leisure, 2430, 3095  
 Laythely *See* Latheliche  
 Layttede, *v pret* (?) 254  
 Leberalle, *adj* liberal, 2318.  
 Leburde, *s* lee-board, 3624.  
 Leche, *s* jelly, 194  
 Lechene, *v* heal, 2388

- Lechyde, *pp* cut into slices, 188  
 Lede, *s* nation, man, person, 138, 430, 997, *pl* ledes, 195, 1902, ledys, 2801  
 Lede, *s* lead, 750, 2300, 3954  
 Lede, 1268, Leede, 154, *v* lead, treat, *pl* ledes, 303, *pret* ledde, 1515, lede, 3380, *pp* lede, 1827, 1903  
 Ledyng, *s* rule, 3536, conduct, 3880  
 Lee, *s* shelter, 1446  
 Leefe, 2479, 3093, Lefe, 1035, 1335, Leue, 350, *adj* dear, lief, *comp* leuer, 872, 1344, 1573  
 Leefe, 3432, Lefe, 72, 429, Leue, 2082, *s* leave, permission  
 Lefe, *v* leave, 1340, *pl* leues, remain, *pret* left, 1516, *pp* lefede, 1397, leuede, 848, 978, leuyde, 394, 1900, 2208  
 Lefulle, *adj* allowable, lawful, 130  
 Lege, 1901, Liege, 1200, Lige, 1768, 3080, Ligge, 2221, 2389, Lygge, 1518, *adj* hege  
 Legyaunce, *s* allegiance, 2594  
 Lele, *adj* leal, honest, faithful, true, 14, 420, 647  
 Lelely, 672, 2328, Lelly, 1102, Lely, 3084, *adv* faithfully, honestly, truly  
 Lemande, *i p* shining, gleaming, 2462, 2463, 2672  
 Lemete, *pp* limited, 457  
 Lenand *See* Lene  
 Lende, *v* abide, 1970  
 Lendez, *s pl* loins, 1047  
 Lene, *v* lean, *pret* lenede, 2703, *i p* lenand, 1045, 2672.  
 Lenge, *v* abide, remain, dwell, 72, 128, 152, 3 *s* lengez, 129, *inf* lengene, 1588  
 Lengede, Lengez *See* Lange, *v*  
 Lengere, 736, 889, 1055, Lengare, 2154, *adv* longer  
 Lenghe, *s* length, 1102, 1126  
 Lenghene, *v* lengthen, 2845  
 Leppe, *v* leap, 2084, *pl* leppyne, 3697, lepyr, 3696, *pret* lepe, 3427, *i p* leppande, 1460.  
 Lere, *v* teach, 1035.  
 Leskes, *s pl* loins, 1097, 3279  
 Lesse, *conj* lest, 2300, 2439  
 Lesse, *adj* false, withowttyns lesse = truly, certainly, 139  
 Lesynge, 3079, Lesynng, 3721, *s* losing  
 Let *See* Lette  
 Letande, *i p* (?) appearing, 3831  
 Lete *See* Lat  
 Letherly, *adv* wickedly, 1268  
 Lett, *v* cease, desist, 2325  
 Lette, *v* hinder, prevent, 473, 1269, 1721, *pret* let, 3720  
 Lette, *s* hindrance, 92, 458  
 Lettyng, *s* hindrance, 371.  
 Leue *See* Leefe  
 Leue, *v* believe, 702, 1097, 2 *s* leues, 2593  
 Leuenynge, *s* lightning, 2463.  
 Leuere *See* Leefe  
 Leueré, *s* delivery, hence, granted or assigned place, 241, livery or uniform, and hence, the different parts of an army, 3078 *See* Lavery in Halliwell  
 Leues, *s pl* leaves, 1708  
 Leuetenaunte, *s* lieutenant, vice-roy, 646  
 Leuez, *v* 3 *s* lives, 1731  
 Life, 3723, Liffe, 1036, *v* live, *pret* lfede, 3961, *pp* liffyde, 252  
 Lifeliche, *adj* (?) real, actual, 3427.  
 Liffe, *s* life, 430, 1820  
 Lifte, *v pret* lifted, 3349  
 Lige, Ligge *See* Lege  
 Liggez *See* Lygge

- Lighames *See* Lyghame  
 Lightly, *adv* 3287  
 Likez *See* Lyke  
 Likynge, *s* pleasure, 130, 3381  
 Lire, 3281, 3954, Lyre, 4272, *s*  
     face, visage *AS hleor*  
 Liste, *s* desire, pleasure, 12  
 Liste, *v pret* desired, 4270  
 Lofte, on lofte = aloft, 163,  
     916, 942, appone lofte = aloft,  
     2800, 3623  
 Loge, 421, Lugge, 152, 454, *v*  
     lodge, *pl* lugegez, 2280, *pret*  
     luggede, 486, *i p* lugande, 1045  
 Loke, 1643, Luk, 3209, Luke,  
     135, *v* look, 3 *s* lukez, 113, *pl*  
     lukkes, 751, *pret* loked, 119,  
     lukede, 1313, *imp* 2 *pl* lokez,  
     1640, *i p* lukande, 3108  
 Lokerde, *pp* curled, 779 *Sc*  
     *lokker*, to curl (Jamieson)  
 Lokkes, *s pl* locks, 778, 3280  
 Lond, *s* land, *pl* londes, 878,  
     londez, 427, 1691, 1933  
 Londis, *v* 3 *s* lands, 3922  
 Longez, *v pl* belong, 2828, *pret*  
     lonngede, 3080  
 Loo, *int* lo, 974, 1349  
 Loos, 254, Loosse, 474, *s* praise,  
     renown, good name  
 Lordcheppez, 1727, Lordchipez,  
     253, 646, Lordechippez, 1970, *s*  
     *pl* lordships  
 Lordliche, 3638, Lordlyche, 570,  
     2032, 2281, 2541, *adj* lordly  
 Lordly, 2230, 2479, Lordely,  
     1818, 2227, *adv* in a lordly manner  
 Lorne, *pp* lost, 1153  
 Losels, *s pl* rascals, wretches,  
     252  
 Losse, 1599, Lossene, 2845, *v*  
     lose  
 Lotes, *s pl* features, 1462 *See*  
     Lates  
 Lothely, *adj* loathly, horrid, ugly,  
     778, 3231  
 Lothely, *adv* horridly, 2074,  
     3849  
 Lothene, 778, Lothyne, 1097, *adj*  
     hateful, detestable  
 Loue, *v* praise, 369, *pp* louede,  
     4305  
 Louely, 3478, Louelyly, 2292,  
     *adv* in a loving manner, kindly  
 Louerde, *s* lord, 3918  
 Lowde, on l = aloud, 1781,  
     2032  
 Lowe, *s* flame, 194  
 Lowkkide, *pp* closed, 3953  
 Lowrande, *i p* lowering, looking  
     sad, 1446, 4338  
 Lowttes, *v pl* bow, 505, *pret*  
     lowttede, bowed before, 2631, 3285,  
     3408  
 Loyotour, *s* embroidery (Perry),  
     3253  
 Lufe, *s* some part of a ship, 744,  
     750 "Loof" The windward side  
     of a ship. It is not easy to  
     make out exactly what part of the  
     ship the *loof* originally was. Du  
     *loef* is a rulloek or oar-pin, scal-  
     mus, but the loof was a timber of  
     considerable size, by which the  
     course of the ship was directed, it  
     would seem to be the large oar  
     used by way of a rudder, or per-  
     haps the tiller" *Wedgwood's Dic-*  
     *tionary of English Etymology*  
 Lufe, 703, 705, Luffe, 1256, 3381,  
     *s* love, sake  
 Luffe, *v* love, 1597, *pl* luffes,  
     12  
 Luffiche, 3623, Luffy, 1459, *adj*  
     lovely  
 Luffy, 505, Luffly, 248, Lufflyche,  
     2674, *adv* in a lovely manner  
 Lugande, Lugegez, Lugge, Lug-  
     gede *See* Loge  
 Lughe *See* Laughene

- Luk, Lukande, Luke, Lukkes *See* Loke
- Lukyng, *s* looking, 139
- Lumpe, 1819, Lumppe, 1814, 2280, *s* crowd, throng
- Lunggez, *s pl* lungs, 2168
- Lussche, *s* (?) thrust, 3848
- Lutterde, *adj* bowed, bent, 779  
*Sc luttard* (Jamieson)
- Luyschene, *v pl* (?) lash, 1459, *pret* luyschede, 2226
- Lyarde, *adj* gray, 2542, 3280  
" *Liart, harde*, gris, gris-pommelé "  
*Burguy* *See Liart* in Jamieson
- Lyefe, 2845, Lyffe, 1269, *s* life, *pl* lyfez, 1217
- Lyf, *v* live, 1903, 3 *s* lyffes, 405, 537, *pp* lyffede, 868
- Lyfte, *s* sky, 4272
- Lygeaunce, *s* allegiance, 244
- Lygge, *v* lie, 2 *s* lygges, 1060, 3 *s* lyggez, 805, lys, 3938, *pl* lygges, 459, lyggez, 1184, hgez, 1773
- Lyghame, *s* body, 3281, 3286, *pl* lighames, 4269 *AS lchama*
- Lyghte, *v* light, alight, 1270, 3 *s* lyghttez, 933, *pret* lyghte, 3594, *pp* lyghttede, 1782
- Lyghte, *v* lighten, 2846, 3 *s* lyghttys, 368, *pl* lyghttys, 251
- Lyghtenande, *i p* lightening, flashing, 2463
- Lygmane, *s* liegeman, 420, *pl* lyggemene, 1518
- Lyke, *v* be pleased, rejoice, 195, *usually an impers v* likez, 383, lykes, 55, lykez, 1190, lykys, 32, 186, pleases, *pret* lykede, 599, *i p* lykande, being pleased, 248, pleasing, 497, 2406
- Lykyng, *s* pleasure, 701, 2673
- Lyne, 459, 1097, Lymme, 1046, *s* limb
- Lympe, *v* happen, befall, 1643, *pl* lymppene, incur, 3119; lymppede, gamed, 3415, lympyde, 292  
*pp* lympppyde, incurred, suffered, 875
- Lynd, *s* tree, 454, 486
- Lyukwhyttez, *s pl* linnets, 2674  
*Sc luntwhite*, *AS lnet*, flax, *lnet-wig*, flax-finch, lnnet
- Lyone, *s* lion, 139, *pl* lyouns, 3234
- Lyppe, *s* lip, 119, *pl* lyppys, 1011, lppis, 3954
- Lyre *See* Lire
- Lys *See* Lygge
- Lythe, 1653 *Read* Kythe
- Lythe, *adj* gentle, 1517, 1600
- Lythe, *v* listen, 12, *pl* lythes, 1810
- Lythealy, *adv* badly, 1448
- Lythes, *s pl* (?) leases, tenements, 994 *See Luth* in Glossary to *Havelok the Dane*, ed Skeat, and *Lud* in Glossary to *William of Palerne*, ed Skeat
- Lythyre, *adj* wicked, bad, 23
- Lytalle, 1021, Litylle, 1719, Lyttille, 754, *adj or adv* little
- Lytte, (?) little, 550
- Lyue, *s* life, 1775, 3067, 3520.
- Lywyng, *s* living, 5
- Ma, *adj* more, 1829
- Mace, *s* 4210
- Mache, *s* match, 4070
- Machede, *pp* matched, 1533, 2904
- Maches, *s* (?) 2950
- Mad, *v pret* made, 50, 112, *pp* mad, 77
- Made, *s* madness, 4271.
- Magestee, 1236, Maigestee, 1303, *s* majesty
- Maister, 990, 2870, Mayster, 938, 3652, *s* master
- Masterede, *v pret* mastered, 2683

- Makk, *s* companion, fellow, 1166  
 Makles, *adj* peerless, matchless, 3875  
 Malle, *v* hammer, beat, 3038, 4037, 3 *s* mallis, 3841  
 Maluesye, *s* a kind of wine, 236  
 Malyncoly, *s* 2204, 4209  
 Man, *adj* See Mayne  
 Manace, *s* menace, threatening, 3383  
 Manacede, *v* *pret* threatened, 1383  
 Manere, *s* manor, 4310  
 Manere, *s* manner, 1383  
 Mangere, *s* 1588 Qu Mawgree, ill will.  
 Manhede, *s* manhood, 399, 434, 4278  
 Manliche, *adj*. manly, 2417  
 Manrede, *s* homage, service, 127  
 Manykyne, *adj* of many kinds, 3174  
 Manys = man's, 76  
 Marasse, 2505, Marras, 1534, Marrasse, 2014, *s* morass, marsh  
 Marche, *s* frontier, boundary, 318, 1588, *pl* marches, 631, marchez, 1232, marchys, 77  
 Marchez-mene, *s* *pl* bordermen, borderers, 1237  
 Marras, Marrasse See Marasse  
 Marre, *v* mar, 2015  
 Marters, *s* *pl* martyrs, 1066  
 Martyre, *v* kill, 560  
 Mase, *v* 3 *s* makes, 960  
 Masondewes, *s* *pl* hospitals, 3038  
     *Fr* *maison-dieu*, lit house of God, a name suggested by Matthew xxv  
 Mawgree, 1238, Mawgree, 426, in spite of  
 Maundement, *s* commandment, order, 1587  
 Mawene, *pp* mown, 2507  
 Mawgree See Mawgree  
 Mawncelet Read Mawntelet, *s* mantling, or lambrequin, 3632  
     "*Mantling*, or *Lambrequin* — a small Mantle, generally of crimson velvet or silk and lined with ermine, with tassels, attached to the Basinet or Helm, and hanging down over the shoulders of the wearer"—*Boutell's Heraldry* (3rd edit 1864), p 115 In the present instance the mantelet was of silver mail  
 Mayles, 2250, Maylez, 904, 1487, 1764, *s* *pl* chan or ringed armour  
 Mayne, *s* might, power, 4326  
 Mayne, 427, 434, Man, 4071, *adj* main  
 Maynoyrede, *pp* worked, 2507  
 Mayntene, *v* maintain, 399, *pp* mayntenyde, 4278  
 Mayster See Maister  
 Maysterfulle, *adj* victorious, 3413  
 Mede, *s* meed, reward, 666, 1068  
 Mede, *s* mead, 1290, 2506  
 Medille, *s* middle, waist, 2205, 4168  
 Medille-erthe, 2951, Medillerthe, 3239, *s* world  
 Medillewarde, 2904, Medilwarde, 3766, Medylwarde, 1988, *s* centre of an army  
 Mekille, Mekyille, *adj* great, 1236, *adv* much, greatly, 711, 1314, 1382  
 Mele, *v* speak, talk, 990, 3 *s* meles, 382, 679, 1781, *pl* mellys, 3652, *imp* 2 *pl* melys, 2871.  
 Melhene, *s* million, 3144  
 Melle, *v* mix, join, meddle, deal with, 938, *pl* mellis, 2904  
 Melles, *v* 3 *s* hammers, smites, 2950 See Malle  
 Mellyd, *adj* (?) made like a *mall* or hammer, hammer-headed, 4210  
 Mellys, Melys See Mele

- Mendement, *s* amendment, 989, 1236
- Mendynantez, *s pl* (?) mendicants, beggars, 667
- Mene, *v* speak, tell, 3556, speak of, mention, 2869, 3 *s* menys, talks, 3478, 3653
- Menede, *v pret* meant, 891
- Mengene, *v pl* mungle, join, 4173, *pp* mengede, 3632
- Menske, *s* honour, 126, 399, 433
- Menskes, *v* 3 *s* honours, 1303, 2871
- Mensksfully, *adv* honourably, 631, 940, 1233, 1988
- Mereswyne, *s* dolphin, 1091  
"Hic delfis pis mere-swin" *Ælfric's Grammar*, Cotton MS Julius A n, leaf 31
- Merke, *v* proceed, 351, 427, 4320, assign, 1068, 3 *s* merkes, cuts, 2206, *pl* merkene, 4168, *pp* merked, formed, made, 1304, merkylde, 952
- Merkes, *s pl* bounds, 461, 1147
- Merrede, 1238, 3555, Mernde, 3322, *pp* marred
- Meruaile, Meruayle, *s* marvel, wonder, 2682, 2906
- Meruailles, *v* 3 *s* marvels, 1314
- Meruailous, 260 Meruaylous, 428, Meruaylous, 2287, Meruelyous, 236, *adj* marvellous, wonderful, *superl* meruelyousteste, 129
- Mery, *adj* merry, cheerful, 260, *comp* meriere, 3175, *superl* meryeste, 3239
- Messes, *s pl* masses, 4018, 4333
- Mett, *v pret* dreamed, 3223
- Mette, 2491, *s* meat, food, *pl* metes, 75, metez, 1298
- Mette, *v* meet, 434, *pret* mett, 1175, 3841
- Mette-fulle, *adj* measure-full, in good measure, 2343
- Mette while, *s* measured time, or scanty time, 3903 A S *mdte*, moderate, little
- Meue, *v* move, 2001
- Misdoo, *v* ill-use, wrong, 126
- Mo, 844, 885, Moo, 856, 2500, *adj* more
- Mobles, *s pl* movable goods, 666
- Mode, *s* mind, 3222, 3382, 3454
- Modyr, Modyre, *s* mother, 2, 983, 1211
- Mofes, *v* 3 *s* moves, 3323
- Molde, *s* mould, earth, 129, 952, 975
- Mone, *v* must, shall, 813, 1155, 2186, 2436, 2820
- Monee, *s* money, 2343
- Monethe, *s* month, 318
- Montayngnes, 3238, Mowntayngnes, 4259, *s pl* mountains
- Monte, *s* mountain, 938, 1069, *pl* montez, 874, 1175, mowntes, 3535, 3556
- Mony, *adj* many, 3623, 3671
- Moo *See* Mo
- More, *adj* greater, 1018
- Morne, *s* morning, morrow, 1223
- Morne-while, *s* morning time, 2001, 3223
- Morthires, *v* 2 *s* murderest, 1315, *pl* murtherys, 4259, *pp* morthirede, 976
- Morwene, *s* morning, 3476
- Moste, *v* must, 250, 263, 449, *impers v* 2491
- Moste, *adj* greatest, 3322, 4221
- Mot, 346, Mote, 4104, Mott, 136, 1306, Motte, 227, *v* must, may
- Mourmande, *v p* mourning, 4333
- Mourtherys *See* Morthires
- Mowe, *v suby sg* be able, may, 3812



- Moyllez, *s pl* mules, 2287  
 Muskadelle, *s* a kind of wine, 236  
 Myche, *adj* great, 1166, 1214, 2033, *adv* much, greatly, 1068  
 Myde, *adj* mid, 3841  
 Myddos, 1293, Myddys, 2176, *s* midst  
 Mylde, *adj* mild, 1211  
 Mynde, *s* memory, 1221  
 Mynsters, *s pl* monasteries, 3038  
 Myrthez, *s pl* mirths, 1532  
 Myschefe, *s* trouble, misfortune, 667, 3437  
 Myse-bide, *v* offer injury, 3083  
 Mysese, *s* trouble, grief, and hence, those who are in trouble, 667  
 Myshappene, *v* meet with misfortune, 3454  
 Myskaries, *v* 3 *s* comes to grief, 2872, *pp* myscaiyede, 1778, mys-karyede, 1237  
 Mysse, *s* wrong, injury, 1315, 3057  
 Myste, *s* mist, 2001  
 Myx, *s* vile wretch, lit dung, 989 AS *meor*, dung, muck "Ne myhte be *mures* þo wurse don, Bute a-mong þeones on rode an-hon"  
 Jesus Coll MS 29, leaf 265, back  
 Na, *adj* no, 160, 310, 1644  
 Nakyne, *adj* of no kind, 2350  
 Nane, *adj* no, 213, 565, *pron* none, 657, 2613  
 Nauylle, *s* navel, 979  
 Naye, *s* a naye = an aye, an egg, 3283 Compare *Nerz* in *William of Palerne*, ed Skeat, 1 83  
 Ne, *adv* not, 230, 1117, *conj* nor, 10, 161  
 Nedes, 263, 1266, Nedez, 1329, Nedys, 470, *s pl* business  
 Nedylle, *s* needle (of a compass), 753  
 Neghe, *v* draw nigh, approach, 2133  
 Neghe, *adv* closely, exactly, 2658  
 Neke-bone, *s* neckbone, 2771  
 Nere, *adv* nearly, almost, 805, 1127, 1135  
 Nese, *s* nose, 2248  
 Neuewe, *s* nephew, 689  
 Newzeie, *s* new-year, 78  
 Newzeis daye, *s* new-year's day, 90  
 Nextte, *adj* nearest, 2422  
 Neynesome, nine in all, 523 See *Sam* in Richtofen's *Altfriesches Wörterbuch*  
 Nollle, Nobylle, *adj* noble, 16, 18, 68, *superl* nobleste, 3439, 3935  
 Nobilly, *adv* nobly, 1815  
 Noblay, *s* splendour, 76, 2433  
 Noghte, *pron* naught, 1191, *adv* not, 135, 419, 1174  
 Nokyne, *adj* of no kind, 430  
 Nombirde, 2887, Nowmerde, 2658, *pp* numbered.  
 Nombyre, 2831, 3068, Nowmbre, 2884, Nowmbyre, 2942, 3438, Nowmer, 884, *s* number, *pl* nommers, 591, nowmbirs, 3935  
 Nomene, 1437, Nommene, 1868, 1872, 2477, *pp* taken  
 Nommers See Nombyre.  
 None, *s* the ninth hour of the day (at the equinox, none = 3 P M), 78.  
 Noms, 3297, Nonys, 1927, nonce, for the nonce, for the occasion  
 Nonkyns, *adj* of no kind, 2363  
 Nonne, *adj* no, 3365  
 Nonnes, *s pl* nuns, 3539.  
 Noo, *adj* no, 4149

- No<sup>th</sup>, *v* 1 *s* know not, 977  
 Notez, *v* *pl* make use of, 1815  
     *A S notian*  
 Nother, 2367, Nothyre, 10, Now-  
 thure, 161, 429, *conj* neither  
 Notte, *s* use, hence, business,  
 1816 *A S notu*  
 Nowene, 1806, thi nowene =  
 thine own  
 Nowmburs, Nowmbre, Nowmbyre,  
 Nowmer *See* Nombyre  
 Nowmerde *See* Nombirde  
 Nowthure *See* Nother  
 Noyes, *v* 3 *s* haims, grieves,  
 1816, 2248  
 Nurree, *s* nursling, 689  
 Nyghtgale, *s* nightingale, 929  
 Nyghttes, *v* 2 *s* gettest benight-  
 ed, 151  
 Nynne = nine, 3439  
 O, 656, 1217, 3480, Oo, 3907,  
     *prep* on, in  
 O, *prep* of, from, 3906  
 Occedente, *s* occident, west, 2360  
 Occyane, *s* ocean, 31  
 Oches, *v* 3 *s* hacks, breaks, 2565,  
     *pl* ochene, 3675, *pret* ochede,  
     4245 "*Oscher, ocher, ebrécher,*  
     *entailer, briser*" *Burguy*  
 Ocupyes, *v* 3 *s* holds, occupies,  
 1663, 2360  
 Of = from, 2540  
 Oghte, *pron* aught, 1014, 1269,  
 2802  
 Okene, *adj* oaken, 2722  
 Olawe, *adv* below, down, 1517  
 Olyfaunte, *s* elephant, 2339, *pl*  
     olyfantez, 1286, olyfauntez, 2288  
 Olyfe, *adv* of life, from life, 802,  
 1139, bringe olyfe = kill  
 One = on, *prep* 74, 116, 753  
 One, *adv* alone, only, 826, 937,  
 2519, 2592 *A S dne* Myne one,  
     by myself, 3230, by myne one, by  
     myself, 704, be oure one, by our-  
     selves, 1345, thine one, thyself,  
     466, with hymne one, with him-  
     self, 597, of hymne one, of himself,  
     1793, be thame onc, by them-  
     selves, 3195  
 Ones, 135, 179, Onez, 1109, 1756,  
     *adv* once  
 One-seeande, *i p* looking on,  
 525  
 Onone, *adv* anon, quickly, soon,  
 571, 1178, 1231  
 Ony, *adj* any, 2519, 3489, 4215  
 Oo *See* O  
 Opyne, *adj* open, 2147  
 Or, *prep* ere, before, 1269, 1788,  
     *conj* ere, before, 374, 529, 1680  
 Ordaynede, *v* *met* arranged,  
 1991, *pp* ordande, ordained, 1621  
 Oifraeez, 902, Oifrayes, 2142, *s*  
     gold embroidered work, oi fringe  
     of gold "*Orfayr, étoffe*  
     *brochée d'or, brodeuse en or, frange*  
     *d'or*" *Burguy*  
 Orrible, *adj* horrible, 1240  
 Oryent, 2289, Oryentte, 1904,  
     orient  
 Osay, *s* a kind of drink, 202  
 Oslante, *adv* aslant, 2254, 3923  
 Ostage, *s* *pl* hostages, 3187, 3208  
 Ostayande, *i p* warring, or lead-  
     ing an army, 3502 "*Osteler,*  
     *osteler, osteer, faire la guerre, guer-*  
     *royer, mener ost, attaquer son*  
     *ennemi*" *Burguy*  
 Oste, *s* host, 1624, *pl* ostes,  
 1240, ostez, 2387  
 Other-while, *adv* at another time,  
 1145  
 Othire, *adj* other, 3973, *pron* *pl*  
     others, 3932  
 Ouer-chargede, *pp* overburden-  
     ed, overpowered, 1749  
 Ouer-fallene, *pp* fallen upon,  
 1154

- Oueigylte, *pp* gilded over, 207  
 Ouer-hand, *s* upper hand, master, 1300  
 Oueikeste, *v pret* overthrew, 3932  
 Oueilynge, *s* superior, lord, 289, 520, 710  
 Ouer rane, *v pret* overran, *pp* ouer-ronne, 1206  
 Ouer-reche, *v* reach over, afford, 1508, *pl* oueriechz, reach over, 921  
 Ouer-rydez, *v pl* ride over, *pp* ouer riedyne, 1115, 1521  
 Ouersette, *pp* overthrown, 111, 2815, 4136  
 Ouer-swyngene, *v pl* overthrow, overturn, 1166  
 Ouer-whelme, *v* overturn, 3261  
 Oundyde, 765, Ownde, 193, *adv* way Her *ondee*  
 "Hire *ownded* here, that sonnyssh was of hewe,"  
 She rente  
 Chaucer, *Trilogus & Cyseyde*, bk. iv stanza cii  
 Ovyre-fallys, *v pl* fall over, 3677  
 Ower, *prep* over, 747  
 Ownde See Oundyde  
 Owte-iles, 30, Owtt illes, 2359, *s pl* foreign islands  
 Owte landes, 2607, Owte-londes, 2723, Owte londys, 3697, *s pl* foreign countries.  
 Owte mowntes, *s pl* far off mountains, 3909  
 Owte ouer, 903, Owtt ouere, 2339, *adv* outside, above  
 Owther, 110, 2413, Owthure, 964, *conj* either  
 Owtraye, *v* finish, overcome completely, ruin, do violence against, 642, 1010, 1328, 3 *s* owtrayes, 1664, *pp* owterayed, 1952, owtrayed, 2617, owtrayed, 2840  
 Pacokes, *s pl* peacocks, 182  
 Pale, 503, Palosse, 3913, Palez, 636, 718, *s* palace, *pl* palasez, 1287  
 Pallay, *s* 3113  
 Palle, *s* a kind of rich silk or cloth, 1288, 2178, 3142  
 Palyd, 1287, Palyde, 1375, *pp* paled (Her)  
 Pape, *s* pope, 229, 2327  
 Paie, *v* (?) 4047  
 Pailement, *s* parliament, 146  
 Party, *s* part, 212, *pl* parties, parts, countries, 2596  
 Pas, *s* pace, 3496  
 Passande, *v* passing, more than, 2741, passant, 4181  
 Pastorelles, *s pl* herdmen, 3120  
 Patriarkes, *s pl* 3807  
 Paume, *s* palm, 776  
 Pausone, *s* (?) piece of armour covering the paunch, 3158 "*Pancure, panchure*, la partie de l'armure qui couvre la pausce ou le ventre" *Bugny*  
 Pauys, 3160, properly means a large shield, but it is by no means clear what is meant in this passage  
 Pauysers, *s pl* men who bore the *paus*, a large shield used to cover archers, 2831, 3004  
 Pavelyouns, 2624, Pauyllyons, 2478, *s pl* tents  
 Pawnce, *s* piece of armour for the belly, 2075  
 Pawnche, *s* paunch, 2076  
 Paye, *v* satisfy, please, 4049, 3 *s* payes, 2646, *pp* payede, 230  
 Payganys, *s pl* pagans, 4046  
 Payne, *s* penalty, 2329, *pl* paynez, 1546, 1632  
 Paynyme, *s* pagan, 1377, *pl* paynymes, 2835, paynymmez, 1544

- Payses, *v pl* weight, load, 3037,  
*pret* paysede, overloaded, weighed  
 down, 3042  
 Payvese, *s pl* pavises, 3625  
 Pecez, *s pl* pieces, 1825  
 Pechelyne, *s* (?) 1341  
 Pekille, *s* a kind of sauce made  
 of dipping, wine, mustard, and  
 onions, 1027 See the recipe for  
*Pykulle* in the *Liber Cure Cocorum*,  
 ed Morris, p 31  
 Pelid, *v pret* thrust, drove (?),  
 3042  
 Pelours See Pylours  
 Pendes, *v* 3 *s* belongs, 1612,  
*pl* 2624  
 Penowne, *s* pennon, flag, 2917,  
*pl* penouns, 2460  
 Penselle, *s* small pennon, streamer,  
 2076, 2411, *pl* penselles, 2460,  
 pensels, 1289  
 Percede, *v pret* pierced, 2075  
 Peres, 146, Perez, 637, Peris,  
 1637, *s pl* peers  
 Perfournede, *p p* performed, 672  
 Perrie, 4184, Perye, 2460, 3461,  
*s* precious stones, jewelry  
 Perayfes, *v* 3 *s* perceives, 4224,  
*pret* persayfede, 1631, persayuede,  
 2811  
 Persewes, *v* 3 *s* pursues, 2155,  
*pret* persewede, 1476, persuede,  
 1377  
 Pertily, *adv* openly, 2917  
 Pes, 2411, Pesse, 1542, *s* peace  
 Pesane, *s* (?) 3458  
 Peté, *s* pity, 2812, 3043  
 Payne See Payne  
 Pighte, Pyghte, *pp* pitched,  
 1287, 1290, set (with stones, &c),  
 212, 3354, 3460, adorned (?), 3364  
 Pilgram, *s* pilgrim, 3475  
 Pilgremage, *s* 3496  
 Pillhone hatt, *s* 3460 A kind  
 of hat, at one time worn only by  
 doctors in theology, but afterwards  
 more generally See Peacock's *Re-  
 presso*, ed Babington, pp 88, 89,  
 and Glossary  
 Piloum, *s* robber, 2533  
 Plas, *s* place, 4013  
 Plasche, *s* marshy place, 2798  
 Platers, *s pl* dishes, 182  
 Platez, *s pl* plates, 2075  
 Plattes, *s pl* purple cloths, 2478  
 "Platta, purpura, vel pannus pur-  
 purei coloris" *Ducange* Or more  
 probably *plattes* is a *pl v* meaning,  
 strike, beat AS *plattian*  
 Playne, *adj* level, smooth, 1290  
 Playsterede, *adj* plastered, 3042  
 Plenerly, *adv* fully, 2608, 3498  
 Plenteuous, *adj* abundant, 1028  
 Plesande, *i p* pleasing, pleasant,  
 11, 4019  
 Plesaunce, *s* delight, enjoyment,  
 3140  
 Pleyne, *v* complain, 1217  
 Plumpe, *s* crowd, 2199  
 Plyande, *adj* flexible, 777  
 Plytte, *s* condition, 683  
 Pomarie, *s* fruit-garden, orchard,  
 3364  
 Pome, *s* globe, 3354  
 Pomelle, *s* small globe (probably  
 used as an ornament on a flag-  
 staff), 1289  
 Pontyficalles, *s pl* (?) bishops,  
 4335  
 Pople, 100, 1204, Popule, 11, 52,  
*s* people  
 Porke despyne, *s* porcupine, 183  
 Porkes, *s pl* swine, 3121  
 Porte, *s* port, 2609, (?) 3625,  
*pl* portes, gates, 503, 568, portez,  
 portholes, 749  
 Postles, *s pl* apostles, 2413  
 Potestate, *s* power, potentate,  
 2327

- Poueralle, *v* poor folk, 3120  
 Pouere, *adj* poor, 3510  
 Pouerte, *s* poverty, 1545  
 Poumpoun, *s* purple, 1375  
 Powere, *v* forces, 1635, 1925, 2155  
 Poyne, *v* work upon, toil at, 2624  
 Poyntez, *s* *pl* points, 767  
 Piaye, *s* prey, booty, 3003, 3010  
 Prekande, Piekas, Piekys, Piek-kande, &c. *See* Prike  
 Preker, Prekkers *See* Prikkere  
 Presant, *adj* present, 1257  
 Presante, *s* present, 1021  
 Piese, *v* press, 1583, 3 *v* prescz, 1374, *pret* presede, 2199.  
 Piesone, 1546, Presonne, 1632, *s* prison.  
 Presonere, *s* prisoner, 2536, *pl* presoners, 1583, 1636  
 Presse, *s* crowd, 1477, pressure, difficulty, 1522  
 Preué, *adj* privy, secret, 2005  
 Preuely, 213, 896, 2648, Pieualyo, 1609, *adv* privily, secretly  
 Price, 94, 355, Pris, 500, 569, Pryce, 230, 746, Prys, 2, 718, Pryse, 1636, Prysse, 1545, *adj* precious, worthy, good  
 Prike, *v* prick, ride, 2844, 2 *s*. prykkes, 2533, 3 *s* prekez, 2156, prekys, 718, *pl* prekes, 503, *imp* 2 *pl* prekez, 1609, *s* *p* prekande, 1545, prekkande, 2836, *pp* prykyd, pricked, 2648, prykyde, stitched, 3608.  
 Prikkere, 2649, Preker, 1374, *s*. rider, horseman, *pl* prekers, 355, 1479, pekkers, 2835  
 Pris *See* Price  
 Priste, *adj* ready, 1021, 4106  
 Pristly, *adv*. readily, quickly, 2762  
 Profire, *v* offer battle, 2534, 2 *s* profits, 2533, 3 *s* profcis, 1376, 3111  
 Profire, 2857, Profyre, 1257, *s*  
 Profitabile, *adj* 11  
 Proudely, 1374, Proudliche, 1287, Prowdliche, 3607, *adv* proudly, splendidly  
 Proue, *v* prove, try, test, 1341, 3 *v* proues, 1478, *pl* prouene, 716, proues, 2161, *pp* prouede, 2596  
 Proueste, 1611, 1889, Prouoste, 1632, *s* provost  
 Prowde, *adj* proud, 2536, gay, splendid, 2076  
 Prowesche, *s* advantage, 1958  
 Pryce, *adj* *See* Price  
 Pryce, 1924, 2788, Prys, 2751, Pryse, 2649, *v* praise, prize  
 Prykkes, Prykyde *See* Prike  
 Pryme, *s* the first hour of the day, 93, 4105  
 Prys, Pryse, *s* *See* Pryce  
 Prys, Pryse, Prysse *See* Price  
 Prysonere, 1478, Pryssonere, 1610, *s*.  
 Purchase, *v* gain, acquire, obtain, 3497  
 Purpos, 687, Purposse, 2848, *s*  
 Purple, 4184, Purpur, 3142, Purpure, 1288, Pourpour, 1375, *s* purple  
 Purtrayed, *pp* pourtrayed, 3607  
 Puruayede, *v* *part* provided, furnished, 2832, *pp* puruayede, 1925, 2477  
 Purueaunce, *s* provision, providing, 688  
 Put, *v* 2535, put of = ward off.  
 Pygges, *s* *pl* pigs, 183  
 Pyghte *See* Fichte  
 Pyke, *s* pike, staff, 3475, *pl* pykes, points, claws, 777  
 Pyke, *v* pick, 2 *s* pykes, 2534, pyke vp, 1636

- Pylotes, *s pl* pellets, stones used as missiles, 3037  
 Pylours, 3004, Pelours, 2831, *s pl* (?) archers, or men who worked the engines  
 Pymment, *s* a kind of drink, 1028  
 Pyne, *s* suffering, 3043  
 Pynne, *v* pin, 4047  
 Pypez, *s pl* pipes, fifes, 2030  
  
 Quarte, 552, Qwerte, 3810, *s* health, prosperity  
 Quarterde, *pp* quartered, 1736  
 Quod, *v pret* quoth, said, 140, 259, 1559  
 Quytte, *v* requite, 1788  
 Qwarelles, *s pl* bolts (for the cross-bow), 2103  
 Qwarters, *s pl* 3389  
 Qwaste, *pp* quashed, crushed, 3389  
 Qwat, 3868, Qwate, 4008, *pron* what.  
 Qwayntly, 2103, Qwayntely, 3261, *adv* cunningly  
 Qwen, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 48, Qwhene, 407, *adv* when  
 Qwene, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, *s* queen  
 Qwerte *See* Quarto  
 Qwhene *See* Qwen  
 Qwhilles, 4160, Qwhyle, 553, Qwhylles, 3480, 3651, 3810, Qwylls, 3505, *adv* whilst, while, qwylls, 4047, qwylls, 4007, until  
 Qwyke, 1736, Qwykke, 3810, *adj* alive  
 Qwylls, Qwylls *See* Qwhilles  
 Qwyne, *adv* whence, 3503  
 Qwythene, 4157, properly means *whence*, in this passage it seems to be miswritten for *Qwyne* = O that! Compare "Whyne myghte I" = "O that I might," l 703  
  
 See the preface to Hampolc's *Pricke of Conscience*, ed Morris, pp xxv and xxvi  
  
 Raas, *v* tear, pluck away, 362, *pret* rasede, tore, 2984  
 Racches, *s pl* hounds, 3999  
 Rade, *adv* frightened, 1995, 2881  
 Rade, *s* fear, dread, 3896  
 Rade *See* Ryde  
 Radly, *adv* quickly, 1529, 3815  
     *A S hrædlice*  
 Radnesse, *s* fear, dread, terror, 120, 310  
 Raghte *See* Reche  
 Raake, 1525, Rayke, 2985, course, path  
 Raissede, *pp* raised, 2057  
 Rane *See* Ryne  
 Ranez, *s pl* thickets, brushwood, 923 *See* Ronez in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ed Morris, l 1466  
 Ranke, 2271, Rannke, 1474, 1764, 2188, *adj* rank, strong  
 Rankour, *s* 1666  
 Raply, *adv* swiftly, 1763  
 Rappyd, *v met* rapped, smote, 785  
 Rarede, *v pret* roared, 784, 1124  
 Rasches, *v pl* dash, 2107  
 Rasede *See* Raas  
 Raskaille, *s* rabble, 2881  
 Rathe, *adj* swift, quick, 2550  
 Rathe, *adv* quickly, speedily, 1275, 1332, 1668, 2022  
 Rathly, 237, Raythely, 2880, *adv* quickly  
 Raughte *See* Reche  
 Raunsake, *v* search, 4304, 3 *s* ransakes, 3939, *pl* ransakes, 1884, *imp* 2 *pl* rawnsakes  
 Raunsone, *s* ransom, 1528

- Raunsone, 466, 1276, 1508, Rawn-  
 sone, 3275, *v* ransom, levy ran-  
 som upon, *pret* raunsounde, 293,  
 329, *pp* raunsound, 100, rawn-  
 sonede, 2667  
 Raayschett, *v pret* ravished, 294  
 Rawe, *s* row, on rawe = in a  
 row, in order, one after the other,  
 238, 633, 1292  
 Rawghte *See* Reche  
 Rawmpyde, *v pret* ramped, 794  
 Rawndoune, *s* swiftness, violence,  
 impetuosity, 2985 *See* Randon in  
 Roquefort  
 Rawnsakes *See* Raunsake  
 Rawnsone *See* Raunsone  
 Rayke, *v* proceed, go, 3 *s* raykes,  
 1762, raykez, 889, 1057, *pret* ray-  
 kede, 237, *i p* raykande, 3169  
 Rayke, *s* *See* Raik  
 Rayhde, *pp* clothed, covered,  
 3263  
 Raymede, *pp* (?) 100 Halliwell  
 has, "*Rane* To rob, or plunder"  
 Raythely *See* Rathly  
 Reale, 524, Realle, 179, 221, 411,  
 Rialle, 1993, Ryalle, 53, 74, 2138,  
 Ryealle, 17, *adj* royal, kingly,  
 noble, *superl* realeste, 175, 1410  
 Realtee, *s* royalty, 155, 228, 423,  
*pl* ryalltes, 3214, ryalltez 1665,  
 royaltez, 4005  
 Rebanes, *s pl* ribbons, 3255  
 Rebawde, *s* ribald, rascal, vaga-  
 bond, 1333, *pl* rebawdez, 1416,  
 1705  
 Rebawdous, *adj* ribald, 456  
 Rebelle, *adj* rebellious, 2040  
 Rebuke, *v* 1333, *pp* rebukkede,  
 4283, rebuyked, 1445, rebuykkyde,  
 2234, rebuykyde, 867, 1705, 2153  
 Reche, *v* reach, stretch forth the  
 hand in giving or receiving, hence,  
 hand over, give, take, draw, &c, 3  
*s* reches, 1111, 2252, rechez, 792,  
*pret* raghte, 2766, raughte, 1527,  
 1884, 3352, rawghte, 3156, rechede,  
 1090, 3350, 4218, *pp* raghte,  
 2666, rechide, 1013  
 Reched, *s* (?) richness, 3263  
 Reches, *s* riches, wealth, 2667,  
 3571  
 Recheste, *adj* richest, 155  
 Reconsailliez, *v* 3 *s* reconciles,  
 3130  
 Recicaunt, *adj* recreant, 2334  
 Red, 2932 *See* Rede, *v*  
 Reddour, *s* fear, dread, 109, 485,  
 1418 *Su* Goth *rædde*, fear  
 Reddour, *s* rigour, 1456 *O Fr*  
*redour, reddur*, rigour, severity  
 Rede, 550, 2369, Red, 2932, *v*  
 advise, interpret, 3223, *pp* rede,  
 discerned, 2921  
 Rede, 995, 2144, Reelde, 3457,  
 Reede, 795, 1526, *adj* red  
 Redely, 1472, 2070, Redily, 363,  
 Redyly, 1207, 1526, *adv* readily,  
 quickly  
 Redene *See* Ryde.  
 Redy, *v*. make ready, prepare,  
 4137, *pl* redycs, 1427  
 Redyne *See* Ryde.  
 Reedde *See* Rede  
 Refe, *v* rob, take away, deprive  
 of, *pret* refede, 959, refte, 295,  
 1475, *pp* refede, 1820, refte,  
 1206, 1733, rewede, 3315  
 Regale, *s* regalia, 4207  
 Regestre, *s* register, 113  
 Reghte, *adv* right, 1057, 1668,  
 just, 1301  
 Reghttes, *v* 3 *s* rights, puts to  
 rights, 3815, *pl* reghttez, 1454,  
 ryghttene, 3618  
 Regne, 398, Regnne, 4005,  
 Ryngne, 3214, *v* reign, 3 *s* regnes,  
 310, regnez, 287, ryngnes, 2266,  
*pl* rengnez, 865, *pret* regnède,  
 293, 3273, rengnede, 3272, reynede,  
 175, ryngnede, 228, *i p* regnande,  
 2665

- Rehersene, *v* relate, tell, say, 3229, 3 *s* reheisys, 3206, *pret* rehersede, 1666
- Rehetes, 411, Rehetez, 3198, *v* 3 *s* cheers, *pret* rehetede, 221 O Fr *rehaüter*
- Reke, *s* smoke, 1041
- Rekeneste, *adj* (?) quickest, readiest, 4081 A S *recene*, soon, quickly
- Rekenyng, 1678, Rekkynyng, 102, *s* reckoning, account
- Rekke, *v* reck, care, 995, 2040, *pret* roughte, cared for, 3275
- Rekkene, *v* reckon, 1275, 2334
- Reklesse, *adj* reckless, careless, 922, 1670
- Relayes, *v* *pl* relax, slacken, 1529
- Releus, *v* *pl* rally, 2278, *pret* releuyde, 2234, *pp* releuede, 1207
- Relhkes, *s* *pl* relics, 4207
- Relyes, 4291, Relyez, 1882, *v* *pl* rally, *pret* relyede, 1391
- Relys, *v* 3 *s* reels, 2794
- Remenaunt, *s* remnant, remainder, 1553
- Remmes *See* Rewme
- Remmes, 2197, Remys, 4155, *v* 3 *s* shouts, cries out, *pret* remyd, 3894
- Remowes, *v* 3 *s* removes, 1761
- Renayede, *adj* renegade, having renounced their faith, 2913, 3572, 3892
- Rengnede, Rengnez *See* Regne
- Renke, *s* man, 1057, *pl* renkes, 1410, renkkes, 391, 1994, renkys, 17, 147, renkkez, 2135
- Rennene, *v* *pl* run, 200
- Rente, *s* rent, tribute, 465; *pl* rentez, 103, 995, renttez, 1509, 1667
- Rependez, *v* *pl* hang back, 2107
- Repent, *v* *pret* repented, 3894, repent, *impers* *v* 1392
- Requit, *pp* paid, 1680
- Rere, *v* move, 2810 Cf Dan *rore sig*, to bestir oneself
- Rereage, *s* arneals, 1680
- Rerebrace, *s* 2566 "From the French *arriere-bras* That part of plate armour which covered the arm from the shoulder to the elbow In the reign of Edward II only one plate at fist protected the arm outside, being put on the sleeve of mail, but afterwards the rerebrace became a cylinder, consisting of two halves joined with hinges and clasps" Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*
- Rererys, *v* 3 *s* rears, 4249, *pp* rereryde, 4280
- Rerewarde, *s* rearguard, 1430, 1527, 1762
- Resaywe, *v* receive, 3587
- Rescewe, 1752, Reschewe, 2243, Rescove, 4131, *v* rescue, *pp* reschowede, 363
- Reschewe, 3859, Reschewes, 433, Rescove, 1953, Rescows, 4137, *s* rescue, deliverance
- Resonabillye, *adv* reasonably, 1508
- Resone, 2041, Rescoun, 174, 1668, *s* reason, account
- Restreynede, *pp* restrained, 2041
- Retenewys, 3572, Retenuz, 1334, 1655, 2664, *s* *pl* retainers, followers
- Retournes, *v* *pl* turn back, 1395
- Reuare, 62, 1455, Reyuere, 424, Ryuere, 1292, *s* river.
- Reuaye, 3275, Ryvaye, 3999, *v* hunt by a river "Rivier, riverier, chasser en rivière" *Burguy* under *Rive*
- Reuelle, *s* 1667



- Reuelle, *v* 1969  
 Reuengyde, *pp* avenged, 1204  
 Reuerssede, *v pret* turned down, 2070, *pp* reueisside, turned up, trimmed, 3235  
 Reuertede, *v pret* turned over, 2918  
 Reueste, *pp* dressed, clothed, 4334  
 Rewdly *See* Ruydly  
 Rewe, *v* have pity, 866, cause regret, 1678, 3 *s* rewes, 3272  
 Rewede *See* Refe  
 Rewfulle, *adj* rueful, pitiful, sad, 1019  
 Rewfully, *adv* ruefully, sadly, 1523  
 Rewghe *See* Rewthe.  
 Rewllez, 1672, Rewlys, 509, *v* 3 *s* rules, governs, *pl* rewles, 1455, rewlys, 726, *pp* rewlyde, 52  
 Rewme, *s* realm, 1207, *pl* rewmes, 52, 66, 425, remmes, 49  
 Rewthe, 888, 1430, 2197, Rewghe, 3859, *s* pity, compassion, sorrow, rewthe werkes, sorrowful deeds, 3453, 3894  
 Reynede *See* Regne  
 Reyuere *See* Reuare  
 Rialle *See* Reale  
 Riatours, *s pl* ravagers, 2034  
 Richely, *adv* 173  
 Richeste, *adj* 147.  
 Rigge, *s* back, 800 A.S. *hrycg*.  
 Rightene, *v pl* put right, 1525  
 Rightewisly, *adv* righteously, 1554  
 Rightwis, *adj* righteous, 3989  
 Riotes *See* Ryot  
 Riotous *See* Ryotous  
 Riste, 1969, Ryste, 108, 423, *v* rest, 3 *s* rystez, 2170, *pret* risted, 485, rystede, 53, *pp* riste, 2235, ryste, 1428  
 Rittez, 2138, Ritis, 3753, *v pl* break, tear  
 Roche, *s* rock, 1146, 3601  
 Rochelle, *s* a kind of wine, 203  
 Rode *See* Ryde  
 Rode, *s* rood, cross, 3217, 3559 A.S. *rod*.  
 Rog, *s* (?) crowd, 3272 *See* roge in Ibre  
 Roggede, *v pret* shook, 784  
 Rollede, *pp* enrolled, 2641  
 Romawns, *s pl* romances, 3200  
 Romede, *v pret* roared, 784  
 Romyez, *v* 3 *s* roars, 888, *pret* romycde, 1124  
 Rongene. *See* Rynge  
 Ronnene *See* Rynne  
 Roo, *s* rest, peace, quiet, 1751, 3362, 4304 A.S. *row*  
 Roo, *s* wheel, 3374 Fr. *roue*, Lat. *rota*  
 Roo, *s* roc, 922, 4000 A.S. *rd*  
 Roode *See* Ryde  
 Roselde, 2880, Rosselde, 2793, *adj* (?) brandished, shaken Cf. Sw. *ruskla*, to shake, E. *rattle*  
 Rosers, *s pl* rosetrees, 923  
 Rosse, *s* rose, 3457  
 Rosselde *See* Roselde  
 Rossete, *adj* russet, 237  
 Rostez, *s pl* roasts, 1049  
 Roughte *See* Rekke  
 Roungee *See* Rynge  
 Rowelle, *s* wheel, 3262 "*Roele, rouele, roelle, roue, petite roue, rond, cercle, de roiola.*" *Burguy*  
 Rowm, 1454, Rowme, 391, 432, Rowmme, 3470, *adj* roomy, spacious  
 Rowte, *v* sleep, lit. snore, 108  
 Rowte, 719, 1763, Rowtt, 1656, Rowtte, 390, 456, *s* company, troop

- Rowtte, *s* road, way, 379
- Roy, 411, 1670, Roye, 3200, 3273, *s* king Fr *roi*, Lat *rex*
- Royaltez *See* Realtee
- Rungene *See* Ryngne
- Rusche, *v* rush, fall, cast, hurl, 1339, thrust, 2880, 3 *s* rusches, falls, 2241, 2794, ruschez, rushes, 392, ruysches, 2983, *pl* rusches, 2550, ruysches, hurl, dash, 2913, *pret* ruschede, 2792, 2879, ruschte, 120
- Rusclede, *adj* (?) ruckled, wrinkled, 1096 Cf *ruck* in Wedgwood
- Ruyd, 1096, Ruyde, 1049, 1057, 1332, *adj* rude
- Ruydly, 785, 794, Ruydlyche, 1877, Rewdly, 2810, *adv* rudely
- Ruysches, Ruysches *See* Rusche
- Ryalle *See* Reale
- Ryalltez *See* Realtee
- Ryally, *adv* royally, 1472, 3613
- Rybbez, 1134, Rybbys, 1151, *s* *pl* ribs
- Ryche, *adj* 108, 833
- Rydde, *adj* fierce, 4117 *See* *Rid* in Jamieson
- Ryde, *v* ride, 1876, 3 *s* ryddis, 3540, *pl* ryddez, 2849, rydene, 2809, *pret* rade, 294, 853, rode, 1953, roode, 920, *pret* *pl* redene, 485, *pp* redene, 2598, redyne, 52, 100
- Ryealle *See* Reale
- Ryfe, 362, Rywe, 2439, *v* rive, rend, split, pierce, 3 *s* ryfez, 794, 1474, ryvys, 3824, *pl* ryffes, 2913
- Ryghte, *adv* straight, 889
- Ryghttene *See* Reghttes
- Ryghttez, 894, 1439, Ryghtys, 610, *s* *pl*
- Ryghtwise, *adj* righteous, 866
- Ryndes, 3363, Ryndez, 921, 1884, *s* *pl* trees
- Ryne, *v* run, 109, 3990, 3 *s* ryneze, 1121, rynnys, 31, 62, 540, *pret* rane, 1526, 2881, ryunnyde, 2965, ryynyd, 920, *pret* *pl* ronnene, 922, *i* *p* rynnande, 392, 795
- Rynge, *v* ring, 4332, *pp* rungene, 462, rounge, 1587, rongene, 976
- Ryngne, Ryngnede, Ryngnes *See* Regne
- Rynisch, *adj* either Rhenish, or strange, foreign, 203 *See* *Rumisch* in Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*
- Rynnande, Ryneze, Ryynyde, &c *See* Ryne
- Rynsede, *pp* rnsed, 3375
- Ryot, 456, 785, Ryott, 341, Ryotte, 923, 1883, *v* ravage, (with the reflexive pronoun) run riot, 3 *s* ryottez, 619, ryotes, 3172
- Ryotous, 379, 432, Rioutous, 363, *adj*
- Ryotte, *s* uncontrolled license, riot, 294, 412, *pl* ryotes, 388, ryotes, 3893
- Rype, *v* search, 1877, 3 *s* rypes, 3940
- Rysses, *v* 3 *s* rises, 3660
- Ryste, Rystede, &c *See* Riste
- Ryues, *s* *pl* (?) 1764
- Ryvaye *See* Reuaye
- Ryve (= aryve), *v* land, 3896
- Ryvys, Rywe *See* Ryfe
- Sa, *adv* so, 3796, 3870
- Sabyllle, 771, Sable, 2027, sable, black
- Sadde, *adj* satisfied, 847 *Ger satt*
- Sade, *adj* sad, 3948, *comp* sad-dare, 3289
- Sadilles, 1801, Sadylls, 1855, *s* *pl* saddles
- Sadly, 331, 1685, 2466, Saddly, 1458, *adv*

- Safe, *v* save, 3051  
 Sagge, *adj* sage, wise, 814  
 Saghetylle, *v* become reconciled, 330  
 Saise, *v* 3 *s* says, 1162, *imp* 2  
*pl* saise, 1267  
 Sakles, 3986, 3992, Sakeles, 3399, *adj* innocent  
 Sale, *s* hall, 82, 91, 134, 409  
 Salle, 1364 *Read* Sable  
 Salle, *v* shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152  
 Salue, *v* salute, 3 *s* saluz, 87, *pret* saluzed, 82, saluzede, 933  
 Salue, *s* salve, *pl* saluez, 2691  
 Salue, *v* heal, 932, *pp* saluede, 2907  
 Sandes, 513 Perhaps a mistake for *sandesman*  
 Sandes mane, *s* messenger, 1419, *pl* sandismene, 266  
 Sae, *adv* sore, sorely, 134, 2248  
 Satanase, *s* Satan, 3812  
 Satilles, *v* *pl* settle, descend, 2465  
 Saughte, *s* peace, reconciliation, 1007, 1548, 3052  
 Saule, 666, 1062, Saulle, 2192, Sawle, 1169, *s* soul  
 Saunke, *s* blood, 179  
 Sawghte, *adj* at peace, reconciled, peaceable, 3194, 4042  
 Sawle *See* Saule  
 Sawtere, 3316, Sawture, 3421, *s* psalter  
 Sawturoire, *s* saltire, one of the ordinaries in heraldry, 4182  
 Sayne, *v* bless, cross (oneself), 969, *pret* sayned, 1042, saynned, 966  
 Scathylle *See* Skathelle  
 Schadande, *v* *p* shedding, flowing, 3845  
 Schafte, *s* shaft (of a spear), 2169  
 Schaft-monle, *s* 2546, 3813, 4232 "A measure, from the top of the extended thumb to the utmost part of the palm, which in a tall man is about six inches, or half a foot"—Bosworth's A S Diet under *Scaft mound*  
 Schake, *v* shake, proceed, 1213, 1992  
 Schakke, *s* sudden movement, 1759  
 Schalke = chalk, 1226, 1363  
 Schalke, *s* man, 1098, 2170, *pl* schukes, 1557, schalkez, 2211  
 Schalle, *v* shall, 7, 148, shalt, 102  
 Schalyde, *pp* scaled, 766  
 Schamely, *adv* shamefully, 2616  
 Schamesdede, *s* deed of shame, 3  
 Schanke, *s* shank, leg, 3845, *pl* schankez, 1099  
 Schape, *v* shape, form, prepare, 312, 1321, 2558, 3400, *pret* schoupe, 3599  
 Schappely, *adv* fitly, 2333  
 Schappes, *v* 3 *s* shapes, destines, 1716  
 Schare *See* Schere  
 Scharlette, *s* scarlet, 3459  
 Scharpe, *s* 3841  
 Scharpely, *adv* sharply, smartly, 1212, 2429, 2456  
 Schathe *See* Skathe  
 Schawe, 2406 *Read* Schewe  
 Schawe, *s* wood, 1765, *pl* schawes, 1723, 1760  
 Schaylande, *adj* (?) scaly, 1098  
 Schede, 2922, Schedde 3398, *v* *pret* shed, poured  
 Scheene, 1760, 2457, Schene, 2429, 3747, Schenne, 2676, *adj* fair, beautiful  
 Scheftene, Schoftys *See* Skyfte  
 Schelde, 914, 1110, Schilde, 3714, Schylde, 2984, *s* shield, *pl* scheldez, 595, scheldys, 2545

Schelde, *v* shield, 3  
 Scheldyde, *adj* having shields, 1856  
 Scheltrone, 2106, 2922, Schiltrone, 1856, Sheltrone, 1992, *s* troop, band, *pl* schiltrouns, 1765, schiltrouns, 1813, 2210 The older form is *schultrum* A S *scylð*, shield, *truma*, troop  
 Schenchipe, *s* disgrace, 4299  
 Schende, *v* ruin, disgrace, confound, 2435  
 Schene See Scheene  
 Schepe, *s* sheep, 2922  
 Schere, *v* shear, cut, 2546, 3 *s* scherys, 3600, *pret* schare, 3843, scherde, 1856, 2545  
 Scheienkene See Schrenkys  
 Schethede, *pp* sheathed, 3852  
 Scheuerede, *v* *pret* shivered, split, 1813, *pp* scheueride, 3748  
 Schewe, *v* show, 191, 1183, appear, 1717, *imp* schewene, 2457  
 Schewynge, *s* showing, manifestation, 3401  
 Schifte, Schiftys See Skyfte  
 Schilde See Schelde  
 Schiltrone, Schiltrouns See Scheltrone  
 Schippemene, *s* *pl* shipmen, sailors, 1212  
 Schire, 1760, 2169, Schyre, 1213, 3600, *adj* bright  
 Schirreues, *s*, *pl* sheriffs, 725  
 Scho, *pron* she, 853, 860  
 Schoderede, 3844, Schoderide, 2106, Schodurde, 4234, Schodyrde, 2169, *v* *pret* shuddered, shook, quivered  
 Schokke, *v* shock, jog, move or throw with violence, 4114, 3 *s* schokkes, 3816, 3852, 4235, *pl* schokkes, 1759  
 Scholde, 1031, 1719, Schoulde, 3611, *v* should

Schone, *s* *pl* shoes, 3471  
 Schone, 1717, 1719, Schoune, 314, *v* shun, avoid, get or keep out of the way, 3 *s* schownnes, 3599  
 Schonte, Schontez See Schountes  
 Schore, *s* score, 2344, 3577  
 Schorte, at the, shortly, soon, 1325  
 Schotande See Schotte  
 Schotene, *v* *pl* shut, 749  
 Schotte, *v* shoot, 1992, *pl* schottes, 2426, *pret* schotte, 1765, *i* *p* schotande, 1766  
 Schotte, *s* shot, shooting, 2105, 2428, *pl* schotys, 3627  
 Schotte-mene, *s* *pl* shooters, 2467  
 Schouelle-fotede, *adj* shovel-footed, 1098  
 Schouene, 2333, Schoue, 2335, *v* *pret* *pl* shaved  
 Schoulders, *s* *pl* shoulders, 2546  
 Schoune See Schone  
 Schountes, 3816, Schownntes, 3715, 3842, Schuntes, 1055, *v* 3 *s* turns aside, shinks away, hesitates, delays, *pl* schontez, 1759, *pret* schonte, 2106, 2428, schounte, 736, *imp* 2 *s* schunte, 1324  
 Schoupe See Schape  
 Schove, *v* shove, thrust, 3847  
 Schowande, *v*, *p* (?) shuffling, 1099.  
 Schownnes See Schone  
 Schownntes See Schountes  
 Schragges, *s* *pl* jagged ends, 3473  
 Schrede, *v* *pret* cut, 2211, 4167, *pp* schrede, 2688  
 Schiede, 3991, Schreede, 767, *pp* clothed  
 Schredetz, 905, Schredys, 3473, *s* *pl* shreds  
 Schrenkys, *v* 3 *s* shrinks, 4234; *pl* scherenkene, 2105, *pp*

- schrenkede, wrinkled, 2211, *v p*  
schrenkande, wrinkling, 1857
- Schrewe, *s* wicked person, 2779
- Schrifte, *s* shrit, confession, 2588
- Schrinkande, *v p* shrinking,  
wrinkling, 767
- Schiowde, *s* dress, 3628 *A S*  
*scrūd*, garment
- Schryfe, *v* confess, 3400
- Schrympe, *s* deformed creature,  
monster (applied to a dragon), 767
- Schrynede, *p p* shrined, 3991
- Schulde, *v* should, 3183, 3791
- Schuldrez, 1157, Schuldrys, 3294,  
Shoulders, 2546, *s pl* shoulders
- Schunte, Schuntes *See* Schountes
- Schwede = schewede, showed,  
4233
- Schyfte *See* Skyfte
- Schylde *See* Schelde
- Schynbawde, *s* 3846, seems to  
mean the *greave* or shin-plate, but  
the form of the word leads one to  
think that it originally meant *himbelt*,  
probably a piece of cham-armour  
or other defence bound round  
the leg *See* Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*,  
ed Madden Compare  
Eng *baldrick* and Lat *balteus*  
"He, and his gambesoun, glomede  
als gledys,  
With graynes of rubyes, that gray-  
thede were gaye  
And his schene schynbawdes,  
scharpe for to schrede"  
*The Awtyrs of Arthure*, ed  
Madden, stanza xxxi
- Schyre *See* Schire
- Scoulders, 766 *Read* Shoulders
- Scnppe, *s* 3474
- Seche, Sechis *See* Seke.
- See, *s* seat, 3291, 3350
- See, *s* sea, 490, 1402
- Seegge, *s* seat, proper place,  
2478.
- Seegge *See* Segge
- Seese, *v pl* see, 1405
- Segge, 134, 1043, Seegge, 1574,  
*s* man, *pl* seegcz, 1120, 1422  
*A S* *secg*
- Segge, 355, *s* siege
- Seggede, *v pret* besieged, 3011
- Segnourry, *s* lordship, 528
- Sekadrisses, *s. pl* 2283 There  
is surely some mistake here, per-  
haps we ought to read *cohadrilles*  
= crocodiles (compare Span *coco-  
drillo*) or *cohadisses*, which may  
have the same meaning, since Ro-  
quefort gives, "*Cocutric, cocutric*  
*Crocodile*" Either suits the allit-  
eration, gives some sense, and  
might by a slight mistake of the  
scribe be turned into *schadrisses*,  
which gives no sense at all Croco-  
diles in a Roman camp are not  
more out of place than camels and  
elephants are when crossing the  
Alps with coffins on their backs'  
*See p 64*
- Seke, *adj* sick, 1574
- Seke, 105, 937, 1296, Seche,  
3233, *v* seck, make for, go (to-  
wards), 2 *s* sechis, 3507, *pret*  
soghte, 1041, soughte, 720, 2170,  
*inf* sekene, 898, *p p* soghte, 1171.
- Sekere, 1173, 1458, Sekire, 4313,  
Sekyre, 478, 551, *adj* sure, safe,  
trusty, *comp* sekeare, 3289,  
*superl* sekereste, 1492
- Sekerly, 441, 969, Sekirly, 3499,  
Sekyrlly, 439, 1420, *adv* surely,  
certainly, safely
- Sekire, *v* ensure, 2585, 3804
- Sektour, *s* executor, 665.
- Selcouthe, 75, 1298, 3531, Sel-  
kouthe, 1948, *adj* strange, rare
- Seldene, *adv* seldom, 1163
- Sele, *s* seal, 85
- Selfene, 331, 338, Seluene, 1, 8,  
Seluene, 10, 34, self
- Selkouthe *See* Selcouthe.

- Selkouthely, *adv* strangely, 3252  
 Selkylde, 3356 Perhaps mis-  
 written for 'Serkyilde,' encircled  
 Seluene, Seluyne *See* Selfene  
 Semblant, *s* show, splendour, 75,  
 410  
 Semble, *v* assemble, gather, meet,  
 63, 967, *pl* sembles, 3748, *pret*  
 sembled, 409, 1457, *pp* sem-  
 blyde, 70  
 Semes, 1672, Semez, 133, 1162,  
 Semys, 1418, *impers v* seems,  
*pret* semede, 123, semyde, 193 It  
 is often used with the objective  
 case of the personal pronouns the  
 semes = thou seemest, 1672, them  
 semyde = they seemed, 193  
 Semliche, 3947, Semlyche, 655,  
 Semly, 410, 1949, *adj* seemly,  
 comely, goodly  
 Semliche, 3316, Semlyly, 3787,  
*adv* in a comely manner, well  
 Sen, 127, 142, Sene, 526, 952,  
*adv or conj* since  
 Sendelle, *s* fine linen, 2299  
 Sengely, 2434, Sengilly, 471,  
 2592, Sengly, 3729, *adv* singly,  
 alone  
 Sent, *s* scent, 1040  
 Sent, *s* assent, consent, 1628,  
 2615, 3065  
 Sepulture, *s* burial, 4340  
 Sere, *adj* various, diverse, separ-  
 ate, 192, 607, 1576, 3195  
 Serfe, *v* serve, 1220, *pret* ser-  
 fede, 892  
 Serfede, 1068 *See* Serues  
 Sergeaunt, *s* servant, 632, *pl*  
 sergeantes, 1173  
 Serte, *s* desert, 2926, *pl* sertes,  
 513 Compare *serve* for *deserve*.  
 Seruez, *v pl* serve, 1168.  
 Serues, *v pl* deserve, 1315, *pp*  
 seruade, 2590, serfede, 1068  
 Ses, *v 3 s* sees, 3941  
 Sesez, *v 3 s* seizes, 1500  
 Seside, *v pret* put in possession,  
 3065, *pp* sessede, 2608  
 Sessede, *v pret* ceased, 2132  
 Sesyne, *s* seizin, 3588  
 Sete, 3315, Sette, 1305, *s* seat  
 Seterdaye, *s* Saturday, 1550,  
 3176  
 Sethene *See* Sythene  
 Setille, *s* settle, seat, 3270  
 Seuende, *adj* seventh, 488  
 Seuenschore, seven score, 3788  
 Seuenyghte, *s* week, 153, 380,  
 3182  
 Sewes, *s pl* stews, pottages, 192  
 Sewe, *v* follow, 2927, *pret*  
 sewede, 3288, *i p* sewande, 81  
 Sex, *adj* six, 354, 380, *sex*  
*sum* = six in all, 471  
 Sexte, *adj* sixth, 3316, 3416  
 Sextene, *adj* sixteen, 81, 105  
 Sexti, Sixty, *adj* sixty, 179,  
 210, 601  
 Sexti-faulde, *adj* sixtyfold, 2299  
 Seyne, *s* sign, 2055, 2870  
 Seyne, *pp* seen, 3985  
 Seyne, *adv* afterwards, 188, 192,  
 282, 1591.  
 Seyngnour, 3313, Seynȝowre,  
 2419, *s* lord, *pl* seynowres, 1577  
 Seynt, *s* saint, 1169, *pl* seyntez,  
 1163, 1168  
 Sheltrone *See* Scheltrone  
 Sibb, 3984, Sybb, 645, 3891,  
 Sybbe, 681, *adj* related, akin.  
 Siche. *See* Swylke  
 Siluere, *s* 1165  
 Silueryne, *adj* made of silver,  
 185  
 Singulere, *adj* single, by himself,  
 172  
 Sir, 3288, Syr, 3312, Syre, 3134,  
*s* lord.

- Sittande, *i p* becoming, suitable, 953, 1501  
 Sittandly, *adv* becomingly, 159  
 Sittene, *pp* sat, 3291  
 Skalopis, *s pl* scallop-shells, 3474  
 Skape, *v* escape, 1562  
 Skathe, 1643, 1841, 3119, Schathe, 292, *s* hurt, damage  
 Skathelle, 1642, Scathylle, 32, *adj* hurtful  
 Skathlye, *adj* hurtful, 1562  
 Skayles, *v 3 s* scales, 3034  
 Skayres, *i pl* scare, frighten, 2468  
 Skewe, *v* eschew, escape, 1562  
 Skiftez *See* Skyfte  
 Skilfulle, *adj* reasonable, right, 1561  
 Skomfite, *s* discomfit, 2335  
 Skomfite, *pp* discomfited, 1644  
 Skomfitoure, *s* discomfiter, one who discomfits, 1644  
 Skomfytüre, *s* discomfiture, 1561.  
 Skorne, *v* scorn, 1642, *pret* skornede, 1840  
 Skornefulle, *adj* 1840  
 Skotifers, 3034, Skottefers, 2468, *s pl* shield-bearers Compare Lat *scutiferi*, squares  
 Skouerours, *s pl* explorers, scouts, 3118.  
 Skoulkery, *s* lurking, ambush, 1644  
 Skowtte-waches, *s pl* sentinels, 2468  
 Skrogges, 1641, Skroggez, 1642, *s pl* stunted bushes, shrubs *See sciog*  
 Skulker, *s* 3119  
 Skyfte, 1643, Schifte, 1213, 1325, *v* shift, dispose, manage, *3 s* skiftez, 1561, skyftys, 32, *pl* skyftes, 3117, schiftys, 725, schef-  
 tenc, 3627, scheftys, 2156, schyfte, 3347, *imp 2 s* schyft, 1717  
 Skyllle, *s* reason, skill, 32  
 Skyrmys, *v pl* light, skirmish, 2167  
 Slade, *s* green valley, 2978  
 Slakes, *v 3 s* slackens, loosens, 3220  
 Slakkes, *s pl* (?) pools of water in slack or hollow places, 3719  
 Slale, *adj* (?) 3117  
 Slaughte, *s* slaughter, 2675  
 Slawe, *adj* slow, dull, 4044  
 Slawyne, *s* slavein, pilgrim's mantle, 3174  
 Slayne, *pp* slain, 1824, 2977  
 Sleghe, *adj* sly, cunning, clever, 2978  
 Sleghte, 3220, Sleghte, 3418, 4015, *s* sleight, skill, craft  
 Sleghte, *pp* shipped, 2675  
 Slely, 3855, Sleyghly, 2975, Sleyghely, 1321, *adv* slyly, prudently, cleverly  
 Slepe, *v* sleep, 4044  
 Sleppes, *v 3 s* slaps, 2976, *pret* sleppid, 3851  
 Slewe, *v pret* 3418  
 Slewthe, *s* sloth, 3221.  
 Sleyghly, Sleyghely *See* Slely  
 Sleyghte *See* Sleghte  
 Slode, *v pret* slid, 3854  
 Slomowre, *s* slumber, 3221  
 Slomyre, *v* slumber, 4044  
 Slongene, *pp* slung, 2978, 4321  
 Sloppes, *s pl* pools, 3923  
 Slote, 2254, Slotte, 2975, *s* pit of the stomach  
 Slottede, *pp* stabbed in the pit of the stomach, 3853  
 Slonghe, 23, Slowghe, 4045, Slewe, 3418, *v pret* slew  
 Slowde, *s* slush, sludge, 3719

- Slowghe *See* Sloughe  
 Slydande, *v p* sliding, 2976  
 Slyke, *adj* such, 3719 *See* Swylke  
 Slynge, *v 3 s* slings, throws, 3220, 3855  
 Slytte, *s* slit, 3853  
 Slyttes, *v 3 s* slits, 2254, 2975  
 Smyttes, 2564, Smyttez, 1148, *v 3 s* smites  
 Snelle, *adj* swift, 57.  
 Socoure, *v* succour, 2276  
 Socoure, 2317, Socure, 1438, *s* succour  
 Sodaynly, 80, 599, 1422, Sodaynliche, 3270, Sodaynly, 632, 1930, *adv* suddenly  
 Softe, *adj* softening, melting, 3983  
 Softene, *v* soften, ease, 2691  
 Soghte *See* Seke  
 Soiorne, 4027, Soiourne, 4042, *v* sojourn  
 Solauce, *s* solace, recreation, 239, 659  
 Solemply, 3196, 3805, Solempnely, 1948, Solempnylye, 525, *adv* solemnly  
 Solempnitee, *s* solemnity, 514  
 Som, *adj* some, 3683  
 Somercastelle, *s* wooden tower, 3033  
 Somme, *s* sum, 448, 2347  
 Somond, 1212, Somounde, 525, *v pret* summoned, *pp* somonde, 140, sommonde, 267  
 Somouns, *s* summons, 91, 104  
 Sonde, *s* something sent, 2511.  
 Sonde, *s* sand, 3728, 3745  
 Sondre, 2182, Sondre, 1123, Sondyre, 1388, 1482, *m s.* = asunder  
 Sondirwise, *adv* separately, 3529  
 Sone, *s* son, 1945  
 Sone, 170, 1022, Sonne, 2222, *adv* soon  
 Songene, *v pret pl* sang, 745, 2674  
 Sonne, 1978, 2511, Sone, 4035, *s* sun  
 Sonondaye, *s* Sunday, 501, 2482  
 Soo, *adv* so, 1841  
 Sope, *s* sup, hasty meal, 1890  
 Soppe, *s* crowd, company, troop, band, 1493, 2818, 3729  
 Sore, *s* disease, 932  
 Sore, *adv* sorely, 1173, *comp* sorere, 1163  
 Sorowe, *s* 1138, 2224  
 Sorte, *s* troop, company, band, 63, 410, 1575, *pl* sortes, 606  
 Sothe, *adj* true, 1686, for sothe, truly, 1087  
 Sothe, *s* truth, 3229  
 Sothely, *adv* truly, 172, 239, 319  
 Sott, 1044, Sotte, 847, 1060, *s.* sot  
 Soueraygne, *adj* 1167  
 Soueraygne, 1298, 1330, Soueraygne, 141, *s* sovereign, *pl* souerayngez, 1960  
 Soughte *See* Seke  
 Souppe *See* Sowpe  
 Sowdane, *s* soldan, sultan, 590, 1295, *pl* sowdanes, 593  
 Sowdeours, *s pl* hired warriors, mercenaries, 551, 593, 2925, 2938  
 Sowe, *s* some warlike engine, 3033 *See* Sow in Jamieson  
 Sowmes, *s pl* sums, 1627  
 Sownde, *adj* 1577  
 Sowpe, 1298, Souppe, 3805, *v* sup, *3 s* sowppes, 1025, *pret* sowpped, 409, *v p* sowpande, 1044  
 Sowper, *s* supper, 1022



- Sowre 1041 *Read* Sowrs, source  
 Sowte *See* Soyte  
 Soyte, 81, 3931, Sowte, 3941, *s*  
 suit, company  
 Spakely, *adv* swiftly, quickly,  
 2063  
 Spalddyd, *pp* split, 3699  
 Spanne, *s* span, 2060  
 Spayre, *s* the spare or thin part  
 of the body, the waist, 2060  
 Specyalle, *adj* 999  
 Spede, *v* fare, succeed, 2414,  
 speed, hasten, 2416, *pret* spede,  
 1794, *pp* spede, 3016  
 Speke, *v* speak, 2415, 3 *s*  
 spekes, 2063  
 Spekes, *s* *pl* spokes (of a wheel),  
 3264, 3311.  
 Speltis, *s* *pl* thin streaks or  
 splinters, 3264  
 Spencas, *s* *pl* expenditure, 3163  
 Spendyde, *v* *pret* spent, 235  
 Spere, *s* spear, 1794, *pl* sperys,  
 1898  
 Spere-lenghe, *adj* spearlength, of  
 the length of a spear, 3311  
 Speryt, *s* spirit, 4327  
 Spille, *v* perish, 2415, *pl* spillis,  
 destroy, 3159  
 Spleene, *s* 2061  
 Splent, *s* splint, 2061. "Splents  
 In ancient armour, several little  
 plates that run over each other,  
 and protected the inside of the  
 arm" *Halliwel* They were also  
 worn on the leg (see Jamieson  
 under *Splentis*), and probably on  
 other parts of the body  
 Splentide, *pp* splinted, adorned  
 with splinters, 3264  
 Sponene, *pp* spun, 999.  
 Spoures, 483, Spurres, 2416, *s*.  
*pl* spurs.  
 Spraddene. *See* Sprede  
 Spiangene *See* Sprynges  
 Sprede, *v* spread, 3158, *met*  
 sprede, 2062, *pret* *pl* spraddene,  
 3310  
 Sprente, 2062, 3310, Sprentyde,  
 3700, *v* *pret* sprang, leapt  
 Springande, Sprongene *See*  
 Spiynges  
 Sproulez, *v* 3 *s* sprawls, 2063  
 Sprynges, *v* 3 *s* springs, 3162,  
*pl* spryngene, 3158, *met* *pl*  
 sprangene, 483, *i* *p* springande,  
 3265, *pp* sprongene, 1943, burst,  
 1794, spronngene, 3699  
 Spycerye, *s* 162  
 Spytte, *s* spite, 270  
 Sqwyere, *s* squire, 1179  
 Stale, *pp* set, placed, 1926  
 Stake, *v* put on a stake, 1178  
 Stale, *s* company, troop, 377,  
 1355, 1435, 1932, *pl* stales, 1980  
 Stalkis, *v* 3 *s* 3466  
 Stam, *s* foreship, 3664  
 Stamyne, *s* some part of a ship,  
 3658  
 Standerde, *s* 2080  
 Statte, *s* state, rank, 157  
 Steddo, *pp* beset, 2824, 4133  
 Stede, *s* stead, place, 1748, 2824  
 Stede, *s* steed, horse, 1355, *pl*  
 stedes, 1280, stedys, 1488, 1647  
 Stekes, *v* *pl* stick, stab, 3126,  
 3 *s* stekys, 3322, *pret* stekede,  
 1488  
 Stele, *s* steel, 1371, 1487  
 Stelene, 1488, 2129, Stelyne,  
 1354, *adj* steelen, made of steel  
 Stepes, *v* 3 *s* steps, 1229  
 Sterape, 2692, Sterepe, 916, *s*  
 stirrup, *pl* sterapes, 3823  
 Stere-bourde, 745, Stere-burde,  
 3665, *s* starboard  
 Sterenefulle, 3824, Sterynfulle,  
 2692, *adj* stern, fierce

- Steride, Steris *See* Stire
- Stertez, 1104, Sterttes, 1355, Stirttez, 1932, Styrttez, 1152, *v* 3 *s* starts, *pl* stirttes, 2692, *pret* sterte, 916
- Steryne, 157, 377, 735, Sterynne, 3622, *adj* stern, *superl* sterynneste, 3872
- Sterynly, *adv* sternly, 745, 2130
- Sterys *See* Stire
- Steuën, *s* voice, 2531, 4269
- Stewede, *v* *pret* enclosed, 1489  
 "Estuier Serrer, mettre dans un étui, cacher, enfermer, renfermer, envelopper, emprisonner" —*Roquefort*
- Stire, 2823, Styre, 4038, *v* stir, move, 3 *s* sterys, 917, *pl* steris, 2923, 3658, *pret* steride, 1793, *imp* 2 *pl* stirrez, 1748
- Stirttes, Stirttez *See* Stertez
- Stirttelys, *v* *pl* arrange, 3622
- Stodde, Stode *See* Stondez
- Stokes, *s* *pl* (?) estocs, or stabbing swords, 1436
- Stokes, *v* *pl* stab, 2554 "Estiquer, estiquer Frapper, pousser, casser, rompre, briser" *Roquefort*
- Stokkes, *s* *pl* 3665
- Stonays, *v* *pl* stuns, hits stunning blows, 2118, *pp* stonayede, 1933, 3873
- Stondez, 2090, Stonndys, 3623, *v* *pl* stand, *pret* stode, 1489, 2923, stodde, 4133
- Stotais, 1435, Stotays, 3467, 4271, *v* 3 *s* becomes foolish, mad, dizzy, or stupid "Estouter, estoutoyer Être fou, imprudent, avoir de la témérité, être insensé, stultescere" *Roquefort* Burguy gives the forms "estotuer, estouter, estutuer, estoutoyer, estotuer," but with the meaning "maltraiter."
- Stour, 377, 1747, Stoure, 1488, Stowre, 2086, *s* battle.
- Stownde, *s* tune, 3974, *pl* stowndys, 3888
- Stownntynges, *s* stopping, delay, 491
- Stowre *See* Stour
- Strake *See* Stryke
- Strandez, 598, 883, 947, 1227, 1337, Strandys, 3626, Strondes, 4067, *s* *pl* waters
- Strates, 561, Straytez, 3009, *s* *pl* straits, narrow places
- Strayte, 1933, Straytt, 1230, *adj* strait, narrow
- Streke, *adv* straight, 1792, 3101
- Strekes, Strekyne *See* Stryke
- Strekez, *v* 3 *s* stretches, 1229, 2085
- Streme, *s* stream, 755, *pl* stremes, 1224
- Strenghe, 258, 376, Strenghte, 796, *s* strength, strong place, 1230, 1435, *pl* strengthes, forces, 1475, 2242, strenghez, 1827, strengthesis, 3322.
- Strenghely, *adv* strongly, 4096
- Strette, *s* street, road, 3467
- Streynez, *v* 3 *s* exerts, 917
- Strondes *See* Strandez
- Stroye, 1927, Struye, 561, *v* destroy, *pl* stroyene, 3127, *pp* stroyede, 1933, struyede, 1205
- Stryke, *v* strike, smite, 3 *s* strykez, 1124, strykkkes, 1480, *pl* strykkys, 1411, strekes, 3101, *pret* strake, 2080, 2129, *pret* *pl* strekyne, 755, 3659
- Studyande, *v* *p* studying, 3467
- Stuffe, *v* furnish, 1932, *pl* stuffene, 2369, *pret* stuffede, 3616
- Sturdely, *adv* sturdily, 1104
- Stye, *s* path, 3466
- Styghtylle, *v* order, arrange, 157
- Stynte, *v* cease, 3127
- Styre *See* Stire

- Styrtetz. *See* Stertez  
 Subarbe, *s* subuils, 4043, *pl* subarbis, 3122, subbarbes, 2466  
 Subgettez *See* Sugett  
 Suerddes *See* Swerde  
 Sugett, 87, Sugette, 3138, *s* subject, *pl* subgettez, 2314  
 Suggourne, *v* sojourn, 153, 354, 1335, 3 *s* suggeourns, 54, suggournez, 624  
 Sulayne, *adj* alone, 2592  
 Sulde, *v* *suby* *pret* should, 72, 213, 214  
 Sundrye, *v* part, separate, 7  
 Suppowelle, *v* support, 2818  
 Supprisede, 2616, Supprisede, 1845, Supprysede, 3797, Supprysede, 1951, Suppryside, 1420, *pp* taken unawares, overtaken, surprised  
 Surcott, 3252, Surcotte, 2434, *s* surcoat  
 Surepel, *s* cover, 3317  
 Surgyne, *s* surgeon, 4311  
 Surrawns, *s* assurance, security, 3181  
 Surs, *s* rising, rise, 1978, 2511, 3468  
 Suteleste, *adj* subtlest, 808  
 Suyche *See* Swylke  
 Suyte, 179, 210, 528, Suytte, 3139, *s* suit  
 Swafres, *v* 3 *s* staggers, 3970  
*Sc swaver*, to walk feebly *Jamieson*  
 Swalters, *v* 3 *s* (?) 3924  
 Swange, *s* loins, 1129  
 Swangene, *v* *pret* *pl* swung, 2146  
 Swanke, *v* *pret* toiled, 2961, 3361  
 Swape, *s* blow, stroke, 314  
 Swappes, 4244, Swappez, 1126, 1129, *v* 3 *s* smites, strikes, *pl* swappene, 1464, swappez, 1465, *pret* swappede, 1795  
 Swarthe, *s* swaid, grassy ground, 1126, 1466, 2145, 2960  
 Swathes, *s* *pl* 2508  
 Swayne, *s* 3360  
 Swefene, *s* dream, 812, *pl* swefennys, 3228  
 Swefnynge, *s* dreaming, 759  
 Swelte, *v* die, 716, 813, 3 *s* sweltes, 2961, faints, 3969, *pl* swelltez, 1166, *pret* swelte, 2982, *z* *p* sweltand, 2146, sweltande, 1465  
 Sweperly, *adv* quickly, nimbly, 1129, 1465 *Sc scipper*, quick, swift, nimble *Jamieson*  
 Sweppene, *pp* swept, 2508  
 Swerde, *s* sword, 17, 715, *pl* swerdder, 1253, suerddes, 311  
 Swete, 3703, 4223, Swett, 2145, Swette, 3360, *s* life  
 Sweetly, 3970, Sweetly, 1297, *adv* sweetly  
 Sweyfly, *adv* swiftly, 3703  
 Sweys, *v* 3 *s* sways, 57, *pl* 1467, 3676, 4273  
 Swiche. *See* Swylke  
 Swoghe, *s* swaying motion, 759  
 Swoghe, *s* swoon, 1467  
 Swoughe, *s* whirr, 1127  
 Swounne, *s* swoon, 3969  
 Swounes, *v* 3 *s* swoons, 1127, *z* *p* swounande, 1467, 2960  
 Swowynges, *s* sound, 931  
 Swyer, *s* squire, 2959, 3703  
 Swykede, 1795, Swykkede, 3361, *v* *pret* deceived  
 Swylke, 403, Swiche, 3000, Suyche, 529, Slyke, 3719, Siche, 967, 1031, Syche, 76, 226, *adj* such.  
 Swym, *s* swoon, 4246  
 Swynge, *s* swing, 3360, 3676, 4223

- Swyre-bane, *s* neckbone, 2959  
 Swythe, *adv* quickly, swiftly, 185, 409, 715, very, 1949, as swythe = immediately, 813  
 Sybb, Sybbe *See* Sibb  
 Sybredyne, *s* kindred, 691, 4145  
 Syche *See* Swylke  
 Sydlyngs, *adv* sidelong, side-ways, 1039, 1043  
 Sydys, *s* *pl* sides, 2148  
 Syene *See* Syne  
 Syghande, 3794, Sygheande, 3891, *i* *p* sighing  
 Syland, 1297, Sylande, 3794, 4340, *i* *p* flowing.  
 Syluerene, *adj* silvern, made of silver, 1949  
 Sylure, *s* canopy, 3194  
 Symple, *adj* mean, 684, few, 967  
 Syne, *s* sin, 3315, 3986  
 Syne, 85, 1182, 3216, Syene, 4083, Synne, 3435, *adv* afterwards  
 Synechalle, 1871, Syneschalle, 1910, *s* seneschal  
 Synglere, *s* boar, 3123  
 Syngne, *s* sign, 3075  
 Syngulere, *adj* single, 826  
 Synkande, *i* *p* sinking, 3705  
 Synne *See* Syne  
 Syr, Syre *See* Sir  
 Syte, 1060, Sytte, 1305, *s* grief, sorrow  
 Sythene, 184, 1336, Sythine, 159, Sythyne, 56, 169, Sethene, 1977, *adv* afterwards  
 Sythus, *s* *pl* times, 2216  
 Syttyne, *p* *p* sat, 511  
 Tabyll, *s* table, 53  
 Tachementez, *s* *pl* attachments, 1568  
 Tachesesede (?), 821  
 Tacle, 3679, Takle, 2444, Takelle, 3618, *i* tackle  
 Taghte, 178, Tawghte, 3202, *adj* taught, trained  
 Tak, *v* take, 144, take, 307, proceed, go, 3 *s* tase, 1890, takes, *pl* tas, 3203, *pret* tuke, 328, 1359, 2242, *p* *p* takyne, 73, gone  
 Tale, *s* number, 317, 335, 2933, account, 4094  
 Talmes, *v* 3 *s* falters, 2581 Du *Talmen*, to loiter, linger, haggle, waver, act tediously, be irresolute or in suspense *Sewell's Dictionary*  
 Talounez, *s* *pl* talons, claws, 800  
 Targe, *s* round shield, *pl* targez, 732 The targe was often emblazoned, hence at line 89, targe = arms on a seal  
 Tarsse, *s* kind of cloth, 3189  
 Tarye, *v* tarry, 1703  
 Tas, Tase *See* Tak  
 Tauernez, *s* *pl* taverns, 1568  
 Taulde, *p* *p* told, 2618  
 Tawghte *See* Taghte  
 Temez, *v* 3 *s* empties, 1801  
 Temperalle, *s* 2409  
 Tempeste, *v* 2408  
 Temporaltee, *s* 1570  
 Tende, *adj* heedful, attentive, intent, 1916 *Sc tent*  
 Tende, *adj* tenth, 73  
 Tene = ten, 1421  
 Tene, *s* injury, wrong, grief, vexation, 1396, 1956 *AS teona*  
 Tenefulle, *adj* harmful, grievous, 4280  
 Tenefully, *adv* grievously, 272, 2345  
 Tenes, *v* *pl* harm, vex, annoy, 264 *AS teonan*  
 Tente, *s* heed, attention, 3586, 4094

- Tentyly, *adv* heedfully, attentively, 3618
- Teraunt, *s* tyrant, wicked or cruel man, 842, *pl* terauntez, 583, tirauntez, 1801, tyrauntez, 2408
- Terez, *v* 3 *s* tears, 800, *pl* teicz, 1143
- Teris, 3886, Teys, 3794, *s* *pl* tears
- Tha, 77, 157, 377, Thaa, 1993, *pl* of the
- Thai, 1141, 1144, Thay, 1160, They, 22, *pron n pl*, *gen* thaire, 1143, 1396, theire, 13, 20, thiare, 160, 3191, thire, 19, *obj* thaime, 396, thame, 329, 923, thaym, 2276, 2280, theme, 169, theym, 1886, theyme, 1889
- Than, 1212, 2153, Thane, 64, 196, *adv* then
- Thar, 881, Thara, 60, 102, *adv* there, thare = where, 59, 1185
- Thare, *impers v* 403, hym tharo = he needs
- Thare-aftyre, *adv* thereafter, after that, 1495, 2028
- Thareby, 190, Thar-by, 1186, *adv* thereby, beside
- Thare-fore, *adv* therefore, 2042
- Thare-in, 1242, Thare-ine, 1254, *adv* therein
- Thas, 58, 432, Thase, 236, 434, *adj* those
- Thedyre, *adv* thither, 2488
- Thee, *s* thigh, 1046, *pl* theese, 1100
- Theeffe, *s* thief, 1150
- Thees, Theis, These *See* This
- Then, 315, Thene, 1344, *conj* than
- Ther, *adv* there, 884, where, 1131, 1219, there = where, 476
- Ther-aftyre, *adv* thereafter, 1115, according to it, 339
- Ther-to, *adv* thereto, also, 181.
- Ther-vndyre, *adv* under it, 1156
- Thes *See* This
- Thethene, *adv* thence, 4345
- Thewes, *s* *pl* virtues, good qualities, 21
- Theyne = thine, 3403
- Theys *See* This
- Thie = thee, 104.
- Thiere, Thire *See* Thai
- Thies, These *See* This
- Thukke, *s* thick, dense part of a crowd, 3755, *pl* thykkys, 2216
- Thur, Thure *See* This
- Thurlede, Thurleze *See* Thyrl
- Thys, *pron on adv* 410, *pl* thees, 154, 167, theis, 1604, these, 2044, thes, 48, 1356, theys, 2310, thies, 104, 264, thiese, 2723, thise, 152, 263, thys, 52, thur, 1161, 1164, thure, 993
- Thof *See* Thoghe
- Thoghe, 477, 1329, Thof, 2443, Thofe, 109, 460, Thoffe, 2688, *conj* though
- Thoghte *See* Thynkes
- Thole, *v* suffer, endure, permit, 676, 4022, 4150
- Thoos, 156, 158, Thos, 42, 2200, *pron* those
- Thorowe, Thorughe *See* Thurghe
- Thorowely, *adv* thoroughly, 3294
- Thorowowte, *prep* throughout, right through, 2170, 2986
- Thosande, 1400, Thosannde, 1537, Thowsande, 1421, *s* thousand.
- Thourghe. *See* Thurghe.
- Thourghe-gyde, *pp* smitten through, pierced, 3683
- Thra, 3295, Thraa, 249, *adj* vehement, eager, *superl* thraeste, 3756
- Thrange, *s* throng, 2217
- Thrawe, *s* throe, pang, 1150
- Threpide, 930, Threppede, 2216, *v pret* strove

- Thrette, *v* threaten, 3295, 3 *s* thretys, 249  
 Thretty, *adj* thirty, 3295  
 Thrstis, *v pl* thrust, 3755  
 Thiolv, *adv* vehemently, 1150, 2217, 4332  
 Thronge, *v* press, 3755  
 Throo, *adj* vehement, 3294  
 Throstilles, *s pl* throstles, 930  
 Throwene, *p p* thrown, 3694  
 Throwghe, Thrughe, Thrughte  
*See* Thurghe  
 Thryfty, *adj* 317  
 Thryngez, *v* 3 *s* presses, squeezes, 1150, 2217  
 Thrystet, *v* 3 *s* thrusts, 1151  
 Thryttene, *adj* thnteen, 2216  
 Thurghe, 1, 215, 499, Thourghe, 1792, 2253, Thorughe, 495, Thorowe, 5, 24, Throwghe, 1772, Thrughe, 1413, Thrughte, 390, *prep* through A.S. *purh*  
 Thurghe-girde, *p p* smitten through, 1461  
 Thursse, *s* grant, 1100 A.S. *pyrs*  
 Thykkys *See* Thikke  
 Thynkes, 366, 1335, Thynkys, 350, Thynkkys, 2440, *impers* *v* seems, seems good, 996, *pret* thoghte, 495, 2479, thoughte, 3230  
 Thyrl, *v* pierce, 1413, 3 *s* thirlez, 2167, *pret* thirlede, 1858, 3890, *p p* thyrlede, 2238, 2688  
 Thyzandez *See* Tydandis  
 Tide, *s* time, 3902, *pl* tydez, 753  
 Til, 6, 36, Tille, 10, 130, Tylle, 3608, *prep* to  
 Tiltine, *v pl* tilt, topple, 1144  
 Tite, 3886, 3887, Tyte, 737, 841, Tytt, 744, Tytte, 1891, 2583, *adv* quickly, alls tite = as quickly, at once; immediately  
 Tittez, *v* 3 *s* makes totter, 1801  
 To, *adv* too, 957, 1200  
 To, *conj* till, 3182  
 To-briste, *v* burst asunder, 3982  
 To-geders, 1050, To-gedirs, 1000, To-gedyre, 2718, *adv* together  
 Togens, *s pl* clothes, 178  
 Toges, *s pl* togas, 3189  
 Toile, *s* tussle, broil, 1802 *Sc* *tuilyre*  
 Tolle, *s* customs, 1568  
 Tolowris, *s pl* (?) tool-makers, 3618  
 To-morne, *adv* to-morrow, 1587  
 Tonges, *s pl* tongues (of a dragon's tail), 821  
 Toppe, *s* top, 1144, head, 801  
 Toppe-castelles, *s pl* 3616  
 To-rattys, *v pl* rend asunder, 2235  
 Torfere, 1956, 3451, 3567, Tourfere, 2582, *s* harm, mischief  
 Tornys, 3015, Tournes, 1891, *v* 3 *s* turns, *pret* tornede, 3203, tournede, 1052  
 To-ruscheez, *v pl* dash asunder, 1428  
 To-stonayede, *p p* utterly stunned, 1436  
 Tother, *adj* other, 234, 3283  
 The first *t* is really part of the article, for *the tother* = that other, just as *the tone* = that one  
 Toure, *s* tower, 245, 1890, *pl* toures, 39, towrez, 1569, towres, 3153  
 Tourfere *See* Torfere  
 Towche, *v* touch, 2067, concern, tell, 3 *s* towchez, 800, 1570, 1591, *pret* towchede, 770, towchude, 841; *s p* towchande, 263  
 Towne, *adj* tramed, 178  
 To-wrythes, *v*, 3 *s* writhes, 3920  
 Towwyne, *v pl* draw, haul, 3655

- Toylez, 732, Toy clys, 3616, *s pl*  
 (-) gear, tools  
 Traise, *v* 3 *s* draws, 1629  
 Traistely, 3568, Traystely, 1976,  
*adv* safely, securely  
 Traistez *See* Trayste  
 Trappede, *pp* covered with trap-  
 pings, 1757, 2150  
 Trauallade, *pp* who have toiled,  
 1947  
 Trauavlande, 1684, Trauelande,  
 1630, *i p* travelling  
 Trauayle, *s* labour, 3566  
 Traylede, *pp* 250  
 Trayne, *s* stratagem, 1630, 3901,  
 4192  
 Trayne, *v* entice, deceive, 1683  
 Trays, *s* trace, track, 4055  
 Trayste, *i* trust, 669, 3 *s* traistez,  
 1987, 2870, *pret* traystede, 1933,  
 3569  
 Traystely *See* Traistely  
 Traytoute, *s* traitor, 2173, 4055  
 Trayuelleda, *pp* toiled, laboured,  
 2357  
 Trebuta, 114, 2611, Trebutte,  
 2344, Tribute, 271, Tributite, 2357,  
*s*  
 Tremlande, *i p* trembling, 3899  
 Trenchande, *adv* trenchant, sharp,  
 3856  
 Tresone, *s* treason, treachery,  
 1629, 2017  
 Tresoure, *s* treasure, 668, 886,  
 991  
 Trete, *s* (?) row, 3655  
 Trett, 250, Trette, 263, 878,  
 2932, *v* treat, *pp* trettyd, 407,  
 tretide, 3191  
 Treunt, *v* steal a march, 1976,  
*pret* treuntede, 3900, *pp* treunt,  
 2017  
 Trew, 263, 992, Trewe, 879,  
 2932, *s* truce  
 Trewage, *s* tribute, 2358  
 Trewe, *adv* true, 16  
 Trewghe *See* Trewthe  
 Trowly, *adv* truly, 2610  
 Tiewthe, 3437, Trewghe, 3929,  
*s* truth  
 Treyntis (?), 4056  
 Tyne *See* Tryne  
 Trippe, *v* trip, move lightly, 3713  
 Trisene, *v pl* trice (nautical term),  
 832  
 Tristly, 407, Trystly, 2357, *adv*  
 trustly, faithfully  
 Tristly, 731, 1262, Trystly, 832,  
*adv* confidently, boldly  
 Trofle, 2932, Trofulle, 1702, *v*  
 trifle, *i p* trofelande, 1683  
 Tromc, *v* troop, 3592 *AS*  
*truma*, a troop  
 Trompede, *adv* having trumpets,  
 3713  
 Trompes, 1757, Tromppez, 1484,  
 1947, Troumppe, 4107, Troump-  
 pe, 1702, Trumpe, 832, *s pl*  
 trumpets  
 Trouflynge, *s* trifling, 114  
 Trouthe, 164, 1314, Trowthe,  
 1063, 1807, Trowhe, 3804, *s* troth,  
 fidelity, *pl* trowhes, 2325  
 Trow, 89, Trowe, 250, 887, 1693,  
*v* believe  
 Trowhe *See* Trouthe  
 Trowmpynge, *s* trumpeting, 3191  
 Trufles, *s pl* trifles, 89  
 Trumppede, *v pret* trumpeted,  
 407  
 Trumppiez *See* Trompes  
 Trusse, *v* truss, pack up, 3592,  
*stow*, *inf* trussene, 1976; *pl*  
 trussez, 731, trussene, 3655, *pp*  
 trussede, 1702  
 Trusselle, *s* packs, bundles, 3655  
 Tryede, *v pret* picked out, se-  
 lected, 1947 *Fr trier*

- Trymblyde, *v pret* trembled, 270  
 Tryne, *v go*, proceed, trine, 1757,  
   3 *s* trynes, 3592, trynys, 4055,  
   trynnys, 3901, (*P*) *pret pl* tryne,  
   3192, *i p* trynande, 4189  
 Trystily *See* Tristaly  
 Trystly *See* Tristly  
 Tuke *See* Tak  
 Tumbellez, *v pl* tumble, 1143  
 Tunge, *s* tongue, 1250, 1891  
 Turmenttez, *v 2 s* tormentest,  
   1954, 3 *s* turmentez, 3153  
 Tuskes, 1075, 3234, Tuskez, 791,  
   *s pl* teeth  
 Twa, *adj* two, 171, 335  
 Twys, *adv* twice, 716  
 Tydandis, 3450, 3899, Tythdands,  
   264, Thyzandez, 1567, *s pl* tid-  
   ings  
 Tyde, *v* betide, happen, 879, 3  
   *s* tyddes, 1703, *pp* tydd, 3654,  
   tydde, 3451  
 Tydez *See* Tide  
 Tykes, *s pl* dogs, 3642, 4258  
 Tylle *See* Til  
 Tymbyrde, *pp* built, devised,  
   3742  
 Tymede, *v pret* happened, 3150  
 Tyne, *v* lose, 2933, 2 *s* tynnez,  
   1954, *pp* tynt, 272, 770, tynte,  
   1917, 2345, = perished, 4281  
 Tyrauntly, *adv* like a tyrant, 271  
 Tyseday, *s* Tuesday, 3900  
 Tyte, Tytt *See* Tite  
 Tythdands *See* Tydandis  
 Valyaunt, *adj* valiant, 2093  
 Vassallage, *s* service, 2048  
 Vawewarde, *s* vanguard, 1981  
 Velany, *s* villany, 298, 326  
 Vencows *See* Venquyse  
 Venemus, 299, Venymmos, 4124,  
   *adj* venomous  
 Venge, *v* avenge, 867, *pp*  
   vengede, 298, 2264  
 Venquyse, 1984, Vencows, 4297,  
   *i* vanquish, *pret* venqwiste, 2093,  
   *pp* venqueste, 3765, venquiste,  
   325, venqwyste, 2065  
 Ventelde, *v pret* spread sail to  
   the wind, 737  
 Venymmos *See* Venemus  
 Vernacle, *s* a handkerchief said  
   to have the print of Christ's face  
   upon it, 297, 307  
 Vernage, *s* a kind of drink, 204,  
   3166  
 Verrayely, 3765, Verreilly, 308,  
   *adv* truly  
 Verrede, *pp* spotted, 2573  
 Vertely, *adv* readily, 3168  
 Vertous, Vertouous *See* Vertu-  
   ouse  
 Vertue, *s* virtue, 215, 4297  
 Vertuose, 204, Vertuus, 297,  
   Vertouous, 3055, Vertous, 5, *adj*  
   virtuous  
 Vescounte, Vescownte *See* Vi-  
   counte  
 Vesage, *s* visage, 137, 3055  
 Vesare, 910, Vesere, 3054, *s*  
   visor  
 Vesettez, *v 3 s* visits, 1726  
 Vesselle, *s* 3071  
 Vestoure, *s* clothing, 3071  
 Vetaile, *s* victuals, 3071  
 Vetaile, *v* victual, 353, 3 *s*  
   vetailles, 3165  
 Viage, *s* journey, expedition,  
   2037, 2493  
 Vice, *s* fault, defect, 911.  
 Vicounte, 3167, Viscownte, 2047,  
   Vescounte, 2024, Vescownte, 1984,  
   Vyscownte, 2050, *s*  
 Visez, *v 3 s* purposes, 3167  
 Vmbeclappes, *v. 3 s* embraces,  
   1779



- Vmbegrippys, *v* 3 *s* grasps, 3758, *pret* vmbegrippede, 3911
- Vmbelappes, *v* 3 *s* surrounds, 1819, *pret* vmbylappyde, 3785
- Vmbreie, *s* part of a helmet, the movable part which shelters the face, 913, 2217, 3952
- Vn-abaiste, *adj* unabashed, not cast down, 1378
- Vnblysside, *adj* unblest, not marked with the sign of the cross, 962
- Vnblythely, *adv* sadly, 1434
- Vnbrydilles, *v* *pl* unbundle, 2509
- Vnclede, *p p* unclothed, 4202
- Vncouere, *v* uncover, 2710, *pret* vncouerde, 739
- Vncouthie, 1902, 3449, Vncowthe, 3514, *adj* unknown, strange
- Vncowpylle, *v* uncouple, 3999
- Vndir-takande, *v* *p* enterprising, 2723
- Vndone, *p p* 1722, 3752, 3966
- Vndrone, 2840, 3077, Vndroune, 462, *s*
- Vndyrtakyng, *s* 3187
- Vne-made, *adj* unmade, 2507
- Vnfayre, 303, 779, 1045, Vnfayre, 2171, *adv* badly, ill, unpleasantly
- Vnfaye, *adj* unharmed, sound, 2796
- Vnfers, *adj* unfierce, tame, 4122
- Vnfondyde, *adj* untried, 2485
- Vnfraistede, 2861, Vnfraystede, 2736, *adj* untried
- Vnfrelly, *adv* (?) ignobly, 780
- Vnlordly, *adj* 1313, *adv* 1267
- Vnmete, *adj* unmeet, 4070
- Vnquellyde, *adj* unkilld, 3810
- Vnreken, *adj* (?) unpleasant, 3754
- Vnresonable, *adj* 3452
- Vnryghttwyslye, *adv* unrighteously, 329
- Vnsaughte, 1910, Vnsawghte, 1306, 1437, 4140, *adj*
- Vnsaughtely, 1501, Vnsaughtly, 1817, *adv*
- Vnsekyly, *adv* unsafely, 966
- Vnsemy, *adv* unseemly, 1044
- Vnsene, *adj* unseen, 3114
- Vnscely, *adv* unskillfully, clumsily, 979
- Vnsownde, *adj* 3290, 3931, 3942
- Vnsparely, 3160, Vnsparly, 235, *adv* unsparingly
- Vntenderly, 1144, Vntenduly, 2575, *adv*
- Vntrewe, *adj* untrue, faithless, 4227
- Vntrewely, *adv* dishonestly, 886
- Vnuenquiste, *adj* unvanquished, 2019
- Vnwemnyde, *adj* unspotted, spotless, 3801
- Vnwittily, *adv* unwisely, 3802
- Vnwynly, *adv* unjoyfully, unpleasantly, 955, 1302, 1481, 3562
- Vnwyse, *adj* 3817
- Voide, 309, Voyde, 215, 2049, 2091, *v* pass out, pass away, 3 *s* voydes, retreats, 3764, voydez, withdraws, 1974, *pl* voydez, quit, 3168
- Voute, 137, Vowt, 3054, *s* mien  
Lat *vultus*
- Voyde, *adj* empty, vain, 10, (?) open, 911
- Voyde, Voydes, Voydez *See* Voide
- Vpbrayde, *v* 1930
- Vpcynes, *s* *pl* (?) 3675
- Vpe = up, 1119, 1877
- Vrayllede, *p p* 2568 Perhaps for "*Vervelled*, or *Varvelled* — having small rings attached" *Boutell's Heraldry*, p 88

Vse, *v* practise, 1843

Vtas, *s* 625 "The eighth day,  
or the space of eight days, after  
any festival" *Hallwell*

Vttere, *adv* further out, 2438

Vtters, *v* 3 *s* dismisses, 418

Vttirly, *adv* 3966

Vys, 3617, Vyse, 2424, *s* screw  
Crossbows were drawn back by  
means of a screw

Wache, *v* watch, 547, *inf* wac-  
chene, 613, *pp* wachede, 1613

Wache, *s* watch, 2499, *pl* wac-  
ches, 1356

Wafulle, *adj* woeful, sorrowful,  
950, 955

Wagande, *i* *p* wagging, waving,  
3660

Wage, *s* pay, 302

Wage, 547, Wagge, 333, 1615,  
*v* hue, engage, wage, stake, 2967

Wagene, *v* wager, 2445

Wakkens, 2370, Wakkenyse, 257,  
Waknez, 806, *v* 3 *s* awakes, wak  
kenysse, wakens, 3562, *pret* wak-  
kenyde, awoke, 3392

Walde, *v* *pret* would, 339, 342,  
wouldest, 876, 1035

Wale, *s* gunwale, 740

Wale, *v* choose, 181

Wale, *adj* choice, 2148

Wale, *adj* eddyng, surging, 741,  
763

Walkande, *i* *p* walking, 762,  
3479

Walkyne, *s* welkin, sky, 787

Walle, *s* wave, 493 *Ger welle*

Walopande, *i* *p* galloping, 2147,  
2827

Walowes, *v* *pl* wallow, roll,  
1142, *pret* walewede, 3838

Walsche, *adj* Welsh, 320, 2044

Wandrethe, 323, 2370, Wane-  
drethe, 384, *s* woe, sorrow

Wandsomdly, *adv* (?) sorrow-  
fully, 4012

Wandyis, *v* 3 *s* wanders, 798,  
*i* *p* wanderande, 763

Wane, *adj* wan, dusky, dark,  
492 *AS wan*

Wane *See* Wyne

Wapene, 1106, Wapyne, 1119, *s*  
weapon, *pl* wapynez, 2137, wap-  
yns, 312

War *See* Ware

Warantizez, *s* *pl* guarantees, 1614

Wardane, 3523, Wardayne, 650,  
2494, *s* warden

Warde, *s* ward, 2480, custody,  
1613

Wardede, *pp* guarded, 1614

Wardiop, 4203, Waidrope, 901,  
2622, *s* wardrobe

Ware = where, 1054

Ware, *v* *pret* *pl* were, 18, 177,  
*sub* *pret* 1 *s* warc, 2647, 2 *s*  
ware, 964, 3 *s* ware, 73, war, 976,  
*pl* ware

Ware, 19, Warre, 1973, 2045,  
*adj* wary, cautious, aware *AS*  
*wæðr*

Warely, *adv* cautiously, 4026

Waresche, *v* be healed, recover,  
2186

Warlawe, 948, 958, Warlow,  
1140, Werlaughe, 3771, *s* warlock,  
wizard, also, a wicked man, *pl*  
warlaws, 613

Warnes, *v* 3 *s* refuses, denies,  
700

Warpe, 150, Werpe, 9, *v* throw,  
cast, *pl* warpes, 2746, warpes a-  
waye = make off, *pret* warpe,  
901

Was, *v* *pret* *pl* were, 1415

Wasterinne, *s* desert place, wilder-  
ness, 3233 *See Wasturne in Al-*  
*iterative Poems*, B 1674 *AS*  
*western*

Wate *See* Wiet

- Wathe, *s* way, path, 3233 See  
*Wope* in *Alliterative Poems*, A 151  
 A S *wāðu*  
 Wathe, *s* harm, hurt, 2668 See  
*Wope* in *Alliterative Poems*, B 855  
 Wathely, *adv* badly, 2090, 2186  
 Watte See Wiet  
 Watyre, *s* water, 1299, 1358  
 Watyre-mene, *s pl* mariners, 741  
 Wauerynge, *s* 2224  
 Wawarde, *s* vanguard, 1767 See  
 Avantwarde  
 Wawhte, (?) 3480  
 Waxe, *v* grow, 4322  
 Wayfare, *s* course, 1797  
 Wayfe, *v* wander, stray, 960.  
 Waykly, *also* weakly, 697  
 Wayte, *v* watch, look out for,  
 164, 1807, 3 *s* wayttes, 2979;  
*inf* wayttene, 1973  
 Weches, *s pl* witches, 613  
 Wedde, *pp* wedded, 700  
 Wedes, 1365, Wedez, 168, 500,  
 Wedys, 2129, *s pl* weeds, gar-  
 ments  
 Wedirwyns See Wyderwyne  
 Wedowe, *s* widow, 950, 4285,  
*pl* wedewes, 3154  
 Weende See Wende  
 Weife See Wif  
 Weilde See Welde  
 Weile See Wele.  
 Weisly See Wyesly.  
 Wekyrly, *adv* watchfully, hence,  
 in a lively manner, briskly, 2104  
 A S *wacorlice*, watchfully  
 Welde, 3090, Weilde, 650, *v*  
 rule, possess, 2967  
 Wele, *s* riches, wealth, 401, 653,  
 weal, 4100  
 Wele, 170, 230, 321, Weile,  
 1788, *adv* well  
 Welle, *s* spring, well, 540, 882  
 Welle, *v* spring up, bubble up,  
 boil, 3 *s* wellys, flows, 3819, *pret*  
 wellyde, 3377, *pp* wellyde, boiled,  
 1736  
 Welte, *v pret* overturned, 3152  
 Welters, 1140, Weltcrys, 890, *v*  
 3 *s* rolls, *pl* welters, 1142, *s p*  
 welterande, 2117  
 Welthes, *s pl* 3157  
 Wende See Wene  
 Wende, 302, 1299, Weende,  
 2145, 2193, *v* go, 2 *s* weynder,  
 450, 3 *s* wendes, 614, wendez,  
 701, weyndes, 2185, *pret* went,  
 1301  
 Wene, *v* think, suppose, 2 *s*  
 wenes, 1806, wencz, 963, *pret*  
 wende, 2121  
 Wenges, 768, Wengcz, 819, 926,  
*s pl* wings  
 Wepede, *v. pret* wept, 1920, *i*  
*p* wepand, 2679, 3561  
 Werdes, 3889, Weredes, 385, *s*  
*pl* fates, destinies  
 Weidez. See Weilde  
 Were, *adv* where, 3692  
 Were, 22, 33, 257, Werre, 516,  
 621, *s* war  
 Werdes See Werdes  
 Weres = weers (?), 3054  
 Weries. See Wery, *v*  
 Werke, *s* work, *pl* werkes, 3,  
 19  
 Werkkes, *v* 3 *s* aches, 2689, *i*  
*p* werkand, 1797, 2148  
 Werlaughe See Warlawe  
 Weilde, *s* world, 5, 708, *gen*  
*sg* werdez, 674  
 Werpe See Warpe  
 Werraye, 546, Werreye, 657, *v*  
 make war, war upon, *pl* werraves,  
 3447, *pret* werravede, 2045, 2215,  
*s p* werrayande, 2089, werreyand,  
 2599  
 Werre See Were

- Werryde, *v pret* wore, 3872,  
*pp* werede, worn, 2930  
 Weiry, 699, 3155, Werye, 4286,  
*v* curse, 3 *s* weries, 3888, *pp*  
 weryd, 959  
 Wery, *adj* weary, 492, 3392  
 Weiyede, *pp* wearied, 796  
 Wesche, *v pret* washed, 231,  
*pp* weschene, 1301  
 Wetene, Wette *See* Wiet  
 Wette, *v pret* wetted, 2332  
 Weyffe *See* Wif  
 Weyndes, Weyndez *See* Wende  
 Weyne = wine, *s* 161  
 Weysse *See* Wiese  
 Whame, 1202, Whayme, 770,  
*pron* whom  
 Whanne *See* Wyne  
 Whare, *adv* where, 107, 302  
 Whare = were, 174, 529  
 Whas = was, 76, 634  
 Whayme *See* Whame  
 Whedire, 3231, Whedyr, 2533,  
 Whedyre, 962, *adv* whither  
 Whedyre, *conj* whether, 1717.  
 Whene, 2044, Whenne, 63, *adv*  
 when  
 Whethire, *pron* which (of two),  
 350  
 Wilde = wild, *adj* 3232, 3446  
 Wilke, *pron* which, 4194  
 Whilles, 1335, 1570, Whills,  
 1705, Whils, 1737, Whylez, 1597,  
*conj* whilst, whilles, 1197, whills,  
 3908, whylles, 2132, 2511, until  
 Whilome, *adv* sometimes, 1145  
 Whitte = white, *adj* 3260  
 Whoo = who, 1322  
 Whydyrewyns *See* Wyderwyne  
 Whyeseste *See* Wiese  
 Whyne, why—not, 703 Whyne  
 myghte I dye = O that I might  
 die!  
 Wieffe *See* Wif  
 Wielde, *s* (?) 2689  
 Wiese, 3035, Weyssse, 2514,  
 Wyes, 149, Wyese, 1972, Wyesse,  
 2745, *adj* wise, *superl* wyseste,  
 290, whyeseste, 532  
 Wiet, 420, Wette, 948, Wyt,  
 958, *v* know, know of, 1 *s* wate,  
 4203, watie, 533, 2224, 2 *s* wate,  
 3393, watie, 692, 3549, *pl* wotte  
 (*properly a sg form*), 4100, *pret*  
 wiste, 3231, wist, 4204, wyste,  
 339, 891, *pp* wetene, 2966,  
 wytene, 869  
 Wif, 993, Weife, 652, Weyffe,  
 674, Wieffe, 3550, Wyefe, 3575,  
 Wyf, 986, Wyfe, 955, Wyfe, 3082,  
*s* woman, wife, *pl* wyfes, 294  
 Wightenez *See* Wyghtnesse  
 Wile, *v* get away by stealth, 3908  
 Wilfully, *adv* 151, 3835  
 Wille, *s* wildness, madness, 3836  
 Willed, *pp* strayed, astray, 3230  
 Wilne, *v* desire, 2 *s* willnez,  
 2224, wilnez, 3479, wylnez, 961,  
 3 *s* wylnez, 384 *AS* *wilman*  
 Wirche *See* Wirke  
 Wirchiipe, 2187, Wyrchiip, 10,  
 Wyrchiipe, 150, *s* honour, *pl* wyr-  
 chippis, 22  
 Wirchiipe, Wyrchiipe, 397, *v*  
 honour, 3 *s* wyrscuppez, 1059,  
*pp* wirchipid, 320, wyrchipide,  
 257, 685  
 Wirchipfulle, 1356, 2231, Wyr-  
 chipfulle, 333, 650, *adj* worship-  
 ful, honourable  
 Wirke, 339, 2187, Wyrke, 149,  
 Wirche, 3008, Wyrche, 130, 1030,  
 1384, *v* work, perform, do, 2 *s*  
 wirrkkes, 2432, 3 *s* wyrkez, 1267,  
 wyrkkes, 1468, *pl* wyrkes, 663,  
*pret* wroghte, 1796, *pret pl*  
 wroghtene, 2137, *pp* wroghte,  
 2622, 3495  
 Wist, Wiste *See* Wiet  
 Wit, *v* depart, 708 *AS* *witan*

- With-owtenc, 997, With-owtтыne, 114, 139, Wythowtтыne, 225, 491, *prep* without, except, 819  
 Withstondene, *v pl* withstand, 1717, *pp* 1926  
 With-thy, *conj* provided, on condition, 2557, 2591.  
 Witter, *v* certify, assure, 1239  
 Witterly, 3549, Wytterly, 324, *adv* plainly, clearly, certainly  
 Wlonke, *adj* proud, splendid, gay, 3154, 3338 A S *wlonc*, *wlonc*  
 Wode, 1266, 1281, Wodde, 1359, 2219, *v* wood, *pl* woddez, 1974 A S *wudu*.  
 Wode, *adj* mad, raging, 3837 A S *wod*  
 Wodely, *adv* madly, 2827  
 Wodewyse, *adv* madly, 3817  
 Wokes, *s. pl* weeks, 354. A S. *wuce*  
 Wold, 3835, Wolde, 1282, *v pret* would. See Walde  
 Wolfes, 3446, Woluez, 3232, *s pl.* wolves  
 Wolf-heuede, *s* wolf's head, 1093  
 Wombe, *s* belly, 768 A S. *wamb*  
 Wonde, 3494, Woonde, 1615, *v* hesitate, 3 *s* wondis, 3833 A S *wandian*, to fear, be awe struck  
 Wonde, *s* wound, *pl* wondes, 1469, 2148  
 Wonde, *v* wound, 3 *s* wondes, 2090, *pret* wondide, 2231, *pp* wondede, 1853, wonddede, 1558, wondyde, 1415, 1434  
 Wondirliche, 3377, Wondyrlyche, 1357, *adv* wonderfully  
 Wondsome, *s* misery, 3836  
 Wondyre, *s* 1166, 1342, *adv* 2515  
 Wone, *s* dwelling, abode, 1300, 2472, 4204  
 Wonene. See Wyne  
 Wonne, *v* dwell, 3910, 3 wonnys, 3551  
 Wonne, Wonnene, Wonnynne See Wyne  
 Wonnynge, *s pl* dwellings, habitations, 3157  
 Wonrydez, *s pl* sorrow, grief, 707 See Wandiethe  
 Woo, *s* woe, 2684, 3393  
 Woonde See Wonde  
 Worde, *v* 3393.  
 Worme, *s* reptile, 796, 798  
 Worows, *v* 3 *s* worries, kills, 958  
 Worth, *v* become, be, 959 992, 1306  
 Wortheliche, 2669, Worthlyche, 695, Worthly, 2191, *adj* worthy  
 Worthethy = worthy, 1302  
 Worthly, 2231, Worthlye, 2547, *adv*  
 Wotto See Wiet  
 Wraite, *v pret* wrote, 3904  
 Wrakfulle, *adj* vengeful, 3818  
 Wrange, *adj* wrong, left, 1480  
 Wraythe See Wrythe  
 Wreche, 1273, Wriche, 1064, Wryche, 2778, *s* wretch, *pl* wreches, 1446  
 Wrechyde, *adj* wretched, 5  
 Wreke, *s* vengeance, 3839.  
 Wreke, *v* avenge, 321, 385, 3 *s* wrekes, 2213, *inf* wrekene, 151, *pp* wrokene, 2968, wrokyne, 2225  
 Wrethe, *s* wrath, 151, 321, 385  
 Wrethe, *s* fold, wreath, 1093  
 Wrethide, *v pret* angered, 2191.  
 Wriche. See Wreche.  
 Wristsles. See Wrystille  
 Wroghte, Wroghtene. See Wirke  
 Wrokene, Wrokyne See Wreke.  
 Wrothely, *adv* fiercely, 1141, 1480, 2214.

- Wiotherayle, *s* misery, wretchedness, ruin, 3154
- Wiyche *See* Wreche
- Wryngene, *v* *pl* wring, 3155, *pp* wryngande, 950, 2679
- Wrystille, *v* wrestle, 1141, 3 *s* wristeles, 890
- Wrythe, *v* twist, writhe, turn about, 4322, wrythes, 1920, wrythis, 2214, *pl* wrythyne, 1141, *pret* wraythe, 1093
- Wy, 164, 695, Wye, 2669, *s* man, person, *pl* wyes, 56, 336, wyese, 1300, 2656, wysse, 685 A S *wiga*, warrior, *wig*, war
- Wyderwyne, *s* adversary, 2045, *pl* wedirwyns, 3818, wedirwynes, 3834, whydyrewyns, 2215. A S *wiðerwuna*
- Wye, *v* weigh (anchor), 740
- Wyefe, Wyf, Wyfe, Wyffe *See* Wif
- Wyes, Wyese *See* Wy
- Wyes, Wyese, Wyesse *See* Wiese
- Wyesly, 1974, Weisely, 1613, 2599, *adv* wisely
- Wyghte, *s* wight, man, person, 959
- Wyghte, *adv* vigorous, strong, 1140, *comp* wyghttere, 964, *superl* wyghteste, 290, 336, 532
- Wyghtly, *adv* vigorously, 553, 740
- Wyghtnesse, 258, 516, 796, Wightenez, 1806, *s* vigour, strength
- Wykkylde, *adv* evil, 3232
- Wylde, *s* wild animals, 181, 657
- Wylde fyre, *s* 797
- Wylez, *s* *pl* wiles, 1504
- Wylily, *adv* in a wily manner, craftily, cunningly, 2746
- Wylnez *See* Wilne
- Wynche, *v* wink, wince, 2104
- Wyndowes, *s* *pl* some part of a helmet, probably the *windhole* or *aventail*, 911
- Wyne, *v* win, gain, conquer, wyne, 516, wyne to hir speche, get to speak to her, 3908, wyne awaye, get away, 468, *pret* wane, 33, 115, whanne, 22, *pp* wonene, 1214, wonnyne, 26, 618, wonene, 3001, wonne, 887, 1805
- Wynly, *adv* pleasantly, 671, 2185, 3338
- Wynlyche, *adv* pleasant, 181
- Wyrche *See* Wirke
- Wyrchip, Wyrchipfulle, &c *See* Wirchiye, &c
- Wyrke, Wykkes *See* Wirke
- Wysse, *v* direct, guide, teach, 9, 813, 3 *s* wysse, governs, 671
- Wysse *See* Wy
- Wyste, Wyt, Wytene *See* Wiet
- Wythowttyne *See* With-owtene
- Wythsytt, *v* resist, 104
- Wytt, 741, Wytte, 149, *s* wit
- Wytterly *See* Witterly
- Yare, 1901 *Read Thare*
- Yche, Ylke *See* Ilke
- Ynewe, Ynowe *See* Inowe
- Yryne *See* Irene
- Yschewes, *v* 3 *s* issues, 610
- Ythez, *s* *pl* waves, 741, 747, 763
- 3a, *adv* yea, 993, 1033
- 3aldsones, *s* *pl* (?) 3809
- 3alowere, *adv* *comp* yellower, 3283
- 3apely, *adv* quickly, 1502
- 3ates, 2471, 3atez, 2039, *s* *pl* gates
- 3e, *pron* ye, 12, 226
- 3ee, 3911 Perhaps a mistake for *3ees*, sobs A S *giscian*, to sob

- 3effe, *conj* if, 2859  
 3elde, *v* to yield, 1502, 3 s  
   3eldes, 3809, *pp* 3oldene, 2334,  
   2482  
 3eldene, *pp* 1870. Probably a  
   mistake for '3oldene.'  
 3eme, *v* keep, guard, 3 s 3emes,  
   430, 3emez, 938, *pl* 3emes, 647  
 3erde, *s* yard, 3254, 3280  
 3ere, *s* year, 522, 552.  
 3ermys, (?) laments, 3911. A.S  
   *gyrman*, to roar  
 3erne, *v* yearn, desire, lust after,  
   2 s 3ernez, 1502, 3 s 3ernes,  
   1032, *pp* 3ernede, 2343  
 3erne, *adv* earnestly, eagerly,  
   1794, 3325, 4189  
 3if, 340, 3ife, 1502, 3iff, 104, 3iffe,  
   4153, *conj* if  
 3if, 1567, 3ife, 1668, 3iffe, 2323,  
   *v* give.  
 3is, 2324, 3ise, 2585, *adv* yes  
 3it, 1128, 3itt, 1140, 3itte, 2109,  
   yet  
 3ofe, 1938, 2854 *Read* 'thofe,'  
   though  
 3oldene *See* 3elde.  
 3ole, *s* Yule, 2628  
 3olke, *s* yolk, 3283  
 3omane, *s* yeoman, 2628  
 3on, 2935, 3one, 299, 336, 341,  
   *adv* yon  
 3ondire, 3809, 3ondyr, 2720, *adv*  
   yonder  
 3our, 95, 153, 222, 3owre, 630,  
   683, *pron* your  
 3ow, 15, 16, 3owe, 1266, *pron.* you.